LATIN FOR BEGINNERS

BY

BENJAMIN L. D'OOGÉ, Ph.D.

PROFESSOR IN THE MICHIGAN STATE NORMAL COLLEGE

GINN AND COMPANY

BOSTON • NEW YORK • CHICAGO • LONDON
ATLANTA • DALLAS • COLUMBUS • SAN FRANCISCO
FILIOLO · MEO
QUI · ME · NON · SOLUM · DICENDA
SED · ETIAM · TACENDA · DOCUIT
HOC · OPUSCULUM · EST
DEDICATUM
PREFACE

To make the course preparatory to Cæsar at the same time systematic, thorough, clear, and interesting is the purpose of this series of lessons.

The first pages are devoted to a brief discussion of the Latin language, its history, and its educational value. The body of the book, consisting of seventy-nine lessons, is divided into three parts.

Part I is devoted to pronunciation, quantity, accent, and kindred introductory essentials.

Part II carries the work through the first sixty lessons, and is devoted to the study of forms and vocabulary, together with some elementary constructions, a knowledge of which is necessary for the translation of the exercises and reading matter. The first few lessons have been made unusually simple, to meet the wants of pupils not well grounded in English grammar.

Part III contains nineteen lessons, and is concerned primarily with the study of syntax and of subjunctive and irregular verb forms. The last three of these lessons constitute a review of all the constructions presented in the book. There is abundant easy reading matter; and, in order to secure proper concentration of effort upon syntax and translation, no new vocabularies are introduced, but the vocabularies in Part II are reviewed.

It is hoped that the following features will commend themselves to teachers:

The forms are presented in their natural sequence, and are given, for the most part, in the body of the book as well as in a grammatical appendix. The work on the verb is intensive in character, work in other directions being reduced to a minimum while this is going on. The forms of the subjunctive are studied in correlation with the subjunctive constructions.
The vocabulary has been selected with the greatest care, using Lodge's "Dictionary of Secondary Latin" and Browne's "Latin Word List" as a basis. There are about six hundred words, exclusive of proper names, in the special vocabularies, and these are among the simplest and commonest words in the language. More than ninety-five per cent of those chosen are Cæsarian, and of these more than ninety per cent are used in Cæsar five or more times. The few words not Cæsarian are of such frequent occurrence in Cicero, Vergil, and other authors as to justify their appearance here. But teachers desiring to confine word study to Cæsar can easily do so, as the Cæsarian words are printed in the vocabularies in distinctive type. Concrete nouns have been preferred to abstract, root words to compounds and derivatives, even when the latter were of more frequent occurrence in Cæsar. To assist the memory, related English words are added in each special vocabulary. To insure more careful preparation, the special vocabularies have been removed from their respective lessons and placed by themselves. The general vocabulary contains about twelve hundred words, and of these above eighty-five per cent are found in Cæsar.

The syntax has been limited to those essentials which recent investigations, such as those of Dr. Lee Byrne and his collaborators, have shown to belong properly to the work of the first year. The constructions are presented, as far as possible, from the standpoint of English, the English usage being given first and the Latin compared or contrasted with it. Special attention has been given to the constructions of participles, the gerund and gerundive, and the infinitive in indirect statements. Constructions having a logical connection are not separated but are treated together.

Exercises for translation occur throughout, those for translation into Latin being, as a rule, only half as long as those for translation into English. In Part III a few of the commoner idioms in Cæsar are introduced and the sentences are drawn mainly from that author. From first to last a consistent effort is made to instill a proper regard for Latin word order, the first principles of which are laid down early in the course.
Selections for reading are unusually abundant and are introduced from the earliest possible moment. These increase in number and length as the book progresses, and, for the most part, are made an integral part of the lessons instead of being massed at the end of the book. This arrangement insures a more constant and thorough drill in forms and vocabulary, promotes reading power, and affords a breathing spell between succeeding subjects. The material is drawn from historical and mythological sources, and the vocabulary employed includes but few words not already learned. The book closes with a continued story which recounts the chief incidents in the life of a Roman boy. The last chapters record his experiences in Cæsar's army, and contain much information that will facilitate the interpretation of the Commentaries. The early emphasis placed on word order and sentence structure, the simplicity of the syntax, and the familiarity of the vocabulary, make the reading selections especially useful for work in sight translation.

Reviews are called for at frequent intervals, and to facilitate this branch of the work an Appendix of Reviews has been prepared, covering both the vocabulary and the grammar.

The illustrations are numerous, and will, it is hoped, do much to stimulate interest in the ancient world and to create true and lasting impressions of Roman life and times.

A consistent effort has been made to use simple language and clear explanation throughout.

As an aid to teachers using this book a "Teacher's Manual" has been prepared, which contains, in addition to general suggestions, notes on each lesson.

The author wishes to express his gratitude to the numerous teachers who tested the advance pages in their classes, and, as a result of their experience, have given much valuable aid by criticism and suggestion. Particular acknowledgments are due to Miss A. Susan Jones of the Central High School, Grand Rapids, Michigan; to Miss Clara Allison of the High School at Hastings, Michigan; and to Miss Helen B. Muir and Mr. Orland O. Norris, teachers of Latin in this institution.

BENJAMIN L. D'OOGE

MICHIGAN STATE NORMAL COLLEGE
### CONTENTS

**Lesson**

To the Student — By way of Introduction ........................................... 1–4

**PART I. THE PRONUNCIATION OF LATIN**

Alphabet, Sounds of the Letters, Syllables, Quantity, Accent, How to Read Latin .......................................................... 5–11

**PART II. WORDS AND FORMS**

I–VI. First Principles — Subject and Predicate, Inflection, Number, Nominative Subject, Possessive Genitive, Agreement of Verb, Direct Object, Indirect Object, etc.—Dialogue ........................................ 12–24

VII–VIII. First or A–Declension — Gender, Agreement of Adjectives, Word Order ........................................................................ 25–30


XI. Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions ................................ 36–37

XII. Nouns in -ius and -ium — Germania ........................................ 38–39

XIII. Second Declension (Continued) — Nouns in -er and -ir — Italia — Dialogue ................................................................. 39–41

XIV. Possessive Adjective Pronouns ..................................................... 42–43

XV. Ablative denoting With — Cause, Means, Accompaniment, Manner — The Romans Prepare for War ........................................... 44–46

XVI. The Nine Irregular Adjectives ..................................................... 46–47

XVII. The Demonstrative is, ea, id — Dialogue .................................... 48–50

XVIII. Conjugation — Present, Imperfect, and Future of sum — Dialogue ................................................................. 51–53

XIX. Present Active Indicative of amō and moneō ................................ 54–56

XX. Imperfect Active Indicative of amō and moneō — Meaning of the Imperfect — Niobe and her Children .......................... 56–57

XXI. Future Active Indicative of amō and moneō — Niobe and her Children (Concluded) .......................................................... 58–59

XXII. Review of Verbs — The Dative with Adjectives — Cornelia and her Jewels ............................................................. 59–61
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lesson</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>XXIII.</td>
<td>Present Active Indicative of <strong>regō</strong> and <strong>audiō</strong> —</td>
<td>61-63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cornelia and her Jewels (Concluded)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXIV.</td>
<td>Imperfect Active Indicative of <strong>regō</strong> and <strong>audiō</strong> —</td>
<td>63-65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Dative with Special Intransitive Verbs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXV.</td>
<td>Future Active Indicative of <strong>regō</strong> and <strong>audiō</strong> —</td>
<td>65-66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXVI.</td>
<td>Verbs in -iō — Present, Imperfect, and Future Active Indicative of</td>
<td>66-68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>capīō</strong> — The Imperative</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXVII.</td>
<td>Passive Voice — Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative of <strong>amō</strong></td>
<td>68-72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>and <strong>moneō</strong> — Perseus and Andromeda</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXVIII.</td>
<td>Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative Passive of <strong>regō</strong> and</td>
<td>72-73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>audiō</strong> — Perseus and Andromeda (Continued)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXIX.</td>
<td>Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative Passive of -iō Verbs —</td>
<td>73-75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Present Passive Infinitive and Imperative</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXX.</td>
<td>Synopses in the Four Conjugations — The Ablative denoting From —</td>
<td>75-78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Place from Which, Separation, Personal Agent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXXI.</td>
<td>Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect of <strong>sum</strong> — Dialogue</td>
<td>79-81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXXII.</td>
<td>Perfect Active Indicative of the Four Regular Conjugations —</td>
<td>81-83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Meanings of the Perfect — Perseus and Andromeda (Continued)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXXIII.</td>
<td>Pluperfect and Future Perfect Active Indicative — Perfect Active</td>
<td>84-85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Infinitive</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXXIV.</td>
<td>Review of the Active Voice — Perseus and Andromeda (Concluded)</td>
<td>86-87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXXV.</td>
<td>Passive Perfects of the Indicative — Perfect Passive and Future</td>
<td>88-90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Active Infinitive</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXXVI.</td>
<td>Review of Principal Parts — Prepositions, Yes-or-No Questions</td>
<td>90-93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXXVII.</td>
<td>Conjugation of <strong>possōm</strong> — The Infinitive used as in English —</td>
<td>93-96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Accusative Subject of an Infinitive — The Faithless Tarpeia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXXVIII.</td>
<td>The Relative Pronoun and the Interrogative Pronoun — Agreement of</td>
<td>97-101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>the Relative — The Faithless Tarpeia (Concluded)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXXIX-XLI.</td>
<td>The Third Declension — Consonant Stems</td>
<td>101-106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XLII.</td>
<td>Review Lesson — Terror Cimbricus</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XLIII.</td>
<td>Third Declension — -i-Stems</td>
<td>108-110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LESSON</td>
<td>PAGE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XLIV. Irregular Nouns of the Third Declension — Gender in the Third Declension — The First Bridge over the Rhine</td>
<td>111-112</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XLV. Adjectives of the Third Declension — The Romans Invade the Enemy's Country</td>
<td>113-115</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XLVI. The Fourth or U-Decension</td>
<td>116-117</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XLVII. Expressions of Place — Place to Which, Place from Which, Place at or in Which, the Locative — Declension of domus — Daedalus and Icarus</td>
<td>117-121</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XLVIII. The Fifth or Æ-Decension — Ablative of Time — Daedalus and Icarus (Continued)</td>
<td>121-123</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XLIX. Pronouns — Personal and Reflexive Pronouns — Daedalus and Icarus (Concluded)</td>
<td>123-126</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I. The Intensive Pronoun ipse and the Demonstrative idem — How Horatius Held the Bridge</td>
<td>126-127</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II. The Demonstratives hic, iste, ille — A German Chief-tain Addresses his Followers — How Horatius Held the Bridge (Continued)</td>
<td>128-130</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III. The Indefinite Pronouns — How Horatius Held the Bridge (Concluded)</td>
<td>130-132</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV. Regular Comparison of Adjectives</td>
<td>133-135</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LV. Irregular Comparison of Adjectives — Ablative with Comparatives</td>
<td>135-136</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LI. Irregular Comparison of Adjectives (Continued) — Declension of plus</td>
<td>137-138</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LVI. Irregular Comparison of Adjectives (Concluded) — Ablative of the Measure of Difference</td>
<td>138-139</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LVII. Formation and Comparison of Adverbs</td>
<td>140-142</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LVIII. Numerals — Partitive Genitive</td>
<td>142-144</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIX. Numerals (Continued) — Accusative of Extent — Caesar in Gaul</td>
<td>144-146</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LX. Deponent Verbs — Prepositions with the Accusative</td>
<td>146-147</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PART III. CONSTRUCTIONS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LESSON</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LXI. The Subjunctive Mood — Inflection of the Present — Indicative and Subjunctive Compared</td>
<td>148-151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LXII. The Subjunctive of Purpose</td>
<td>151-153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LXIII. Inflection of the Imperfect Subjunctive — Sequence of Tenses</td>
<td>153-155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LXIV. Inflection of the Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive — Substantive Clauses of Purpose</td>
<td>156-159</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CONTENTS

LESSON     PAGE
LXV. Subjunctive of possum — Verbs of Fearing .... 160-161
LXVI. The Participles — Tenses and Declension .... 161-164
LXVII. The Irregular Verbs volō, nōlō, mālō — Ablative Absolute .... 164-166
LXVIII. The Irregular Verb fīō — Subjunctive of Result .... 167-168
LXIX. Subjunctive of Characteristic — Predicate Accusative .... 169-171
LXX. Constructions with cum — Ablative of Specification .... 171-173
LXXI. Vocabulary Review — Gerund and Gerundive — Predicate Genitive .... 173-177
LXXII. The Irregular Verb eō — Indirect Statements .... 177-180
LXXIII. Vocabulary Review — The Irregular Verb ferō — Dative with Compounds .... 181-183
LXXIV. Vocabulary Review — Subjunctive in Indirect Questions .... 183-185
LXXV. Vocabulary Review — Dative of Purpose or End for Which .... 185-186
LXXVI. Vocabulary Review — Genitive and Ablative of Quality or Description .... 186-188
LXXVII. Review of Agreement — Review of the Genitive, Dative, and Accusative .... 189-190
LXXVIII. Review of the Ablative .... 191-192
LXXIX. Review of the Syntax of Verbs .... 192-193

READING MATTER

Introductory Suggestions .... 194-195
The Labors of Hercules .... 196-203
P. Cornelius Lentulus: The Story of a Roman Boy .... 204-225

APPENDIXES AND VOCABULARIES

Appendix I. Tables of Declensions, Conjugations, Numerals, etc. .... 226-260
Appendix II. Rules of Syntax .... 261-264
Appendix III. Reviews .... 265-282
Special Vocabularies .... 283-298
Latin-English Vocabulary .... 299-331
English-Latin Vocabulary .... 332-343
INDEX .... 344-348
ILLUSTRATIONS IN COLOR

PLATE I

"LENTULUS AD VILLAM SUAM PROPERAVIT" . . . Frontispiece
By E. Forti, Rome. From a facsimile colored under the direction of the artist.

PLATE II

"STABIANA PORTA URBEM INGRESSI SUNT" . . . . 52
By E. Forti, Rome. From a facsimile colored under the direction of the artist.

PLATE III

CAPTIVI INTERROGANTUR . . . . . . . . . 148
By Edmund H. Garrett, Boston. From an original painting in oil.

PLATE IV

"ECCE CAESAR NUNC TRIUMPHAT" . . . . . . . 212
By Edmund H. Garrett, Boston. From an original painting in oil.

MAP

ITALIA ANTIQUA . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 1
LATIN FOR BEGINNERS

TO THE STUDENT—BY WAY OF INTRODUCTION

What is Latin? If you will look at the map of Italy on the opposite page, you will find near the middle of the peninsula and facing the west coast a district called Latium,¹ and Rome its capital. The Latin language, meaning the language of Latium, was spoken by the ancient Romans and other inhabitants of Latium, and Latin was the name applied to it after the armies of Rome had carried the knowledge of her language far beyond its original boundaries. As the English of to-day is not quite the same as that spoken two or three hundred years ago, so Latin was not always the same at all times, but changed more or less in the course of centuries. The sort of Latin you are going to learn was in use about two thousand years ago. And that period has been selected because the language was then at its best and the greatest works of Roman literature were being produced. This period, because of its supreme excellence, is called the Golden Age of Roman letters.

The Spread of Latin. For some centuries after Rome was founded, the Romans were a feeble and insignificant people, their territory was limited to Latium, and their existence constantly threatened by warlike neighbors. But after the third century before Christ, Rome's power grew rapidly. She conquered all Italy, then reached out for the lands across the sea and beyond the Alps, and finally ruled over the whole ancient world. The empire thus established lasted for more than four

¹ Pronounce Lä'shē-äm.
hundred years. The importance of Latin increased with the growth of Roman power, and what had been a dialect spoken by a single tribe became the universal language. Gradually the language changed somewhat, developing differently in different countries. In Italy it has become Italian, in Spain Spanish, and in France French. All these nations, therefore, are speaking a modernized form of Latin.

The Romans and the Greeks. In their career of conquest the Romans came into conflict with the Greeks. The Greeks were inferior to the Romans in military power, but far superior to them in culture. They excelled in art, literature, music, science, and philosophy. Of all these pursuits the Romans were ignorant until contact with Greece revealed to them the value of education and filled them with the thirst for knowledge. And so it came about that while Rome conquered Greece by force of arms, "Greece conquered Rome by force of her intellectual superiority and became her schoolmaster. It was soon the established custom for young Romans to go to Athens and to other centers of Greek learning to finish their training, and the knowledge of the Greek language among the educated classes became universal. At the same time many cultured Greeks — poets, artists, orators, and philosophers — flocked to Rome, opened schools, and taught their arts. Indeed, the preëminence of Greek culture became so great that Rome almost lost her ambition to be original, and her writers vied with each other in their efforts to reproduce in Latin what was choicest in Greek literature. As a consequence of all this, the civilization and national life of Rome became largely Grecian, and to Greece she owed her literature and her art.

Rome and the Modern World. After conquering the world, Rome impressed her language, laws, customs of living, and modes of thinking upon the subject nations, and they became Roman; and the world has remained largely Roman ever since. Latin continued to live, and the knowledge of Latin was the only light of learning that burned steadily through the dark ages that followed the downfall of the Roman Empire. Latin was the common language of scholars and remained so even down to the days of Shakespeare. Even yet it is
more nearly than any other tongue the universal language of the learned. The life of to-day is much nearer the life of ancient Rome than the lapse of centuries would lead one to suppose. You and I are Romans still in many ways, and if Cæsar and Cicero should appear among us, we should not find them, except for dress and language, much unlike men of to-day.

**Latin and English.** Do you know that more than half of the words in the English dictionary are Latin, and that you are speaking more or less Latin every day? How has this come about? In the year 1066 William the Conqueror invaded England with an army of Normans. The Normans spoke French—which, you remember, is descended from Latin—and spread their language to a considerable extent over England, and so Norman-French played an important part in the formation of English and forms a large proportion of our vocabulary. Furthermore, great numbers of almost pure Latin words have been brought into English through the writings of scholars, and every new scientific discovery is marked by the addition of new terms of Latin derivation. Hence, while the simpler and commoner words of our mother tongue are Anglo-Saxon, and Anglo-Saxon forms the staple of our colloquial language, yet in the realms of literature, and especially in poetry, words of Latin derivation are very abundant. Also in the learned professions, as in law, medicine, and engineering, a knowledge of Latin is necessary for the successful interpretation of technical and scientific terms.

**Why study Latin?** The foregoing paragraphs make it clear why Latin forms so important a part of modern education. We have seen that our civilization rests upon that of Greece and Rome, and that we must look to the past if we would understand the present. It is obvious, too, that the knowledge of Latin not only leads to a more exact and effective use of our own language, but that it is of vital importance and of great practical value to any one preparing for a literary or professional career. To this it may be added that the study of Latin throws a flood of light upon the structure of language in general and lays an excellent foundation for all grammatical study.
Finally, it has been abundantly proved that there is no more effective means of strengthening the mind than by the earnest pursuit of this branch of learning.

**Review Questions.** Whence does Latin get its name? Where is Latium? Where is Rome? Was Latin always the same? What sort of Latin are we to study? Describe the growth of Rome's power and the spread of Latin. What can you say of the origin of Italian, French, and Spanish? How did the ancient Greeks and Romans compare? How did Greece influence Rome? How did Rome influence the world? In what sense are we Romans still? What did Latin have to do with the formation of English? What proportion of English words are of Latin origin, and what kind of words are they? Why should we study Latin?
PART I
THE PRONUNCIATION OF LATIN

THE ALPHABET

1. The Latin alphabet contains the same letters as the English except that it has no w and no j.

2. The vowels, as in English, are a, e, i, o, u, y. The other letters are consonants.

3. I is used both as a vowel and as a consonant. Before a vowel in the same syllable it has the value of a consonant and is called I consonant.

Thus in Iu-li-us the first i is a consonant, the second a vowel.

SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS

4. Latin was not pronounced like English. The Romans at the beginning of the Christian era pronounced their language substantially as described below.

5. The vowels have the following sounds:

VOWELS

\[
\begin{array}{ll}
\text{ā as in father} & \text{hāc, stās} \\
\text{ā like the first a in aha}, never as in hat & \text{ā'-māt, cā'-nās} \\
\text{ē as in they} & \text{tē'-lā, mē'-tā} \\
\text{ē as in met} & \text{tē'-nēt, mēr'-cēs} \\
\text{i as in machine} & \text{sēr'-tī, prā'-tī} \\
\end{array}
\]

LATIN EXAMPLES

1. N.B. The sounds of the letters are best learned by hearing them correctly pronounced. The matter in this section is, therefore, intended for reference rather than for assignment as a lesson. As a first step it is suggested that the teacher pronounce the examples in class, the pupils following.

2. Long vowels are marked –, short ones –.
Vowels

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ɛ́-tús, bí-bí</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rō'-mā, ō'-rīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mō'-dō, bō'-nōś</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ū'-mōr, tū'-bēr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ūt, tū'-tūś</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note. It is to be observed that there is a decided difference in sound, except in the case of a, between the long and the short vowels. It is not merely a matter of quantity but also of quality.

6. In diphthongs (two-vowel sounds) both vowels are heard in a single syllable.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Diphthongs</th>
<th>Latin Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ae as ai in aisle</td>
<td>tae'-dae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>au as ou in out</td>
<td>gau'-dēt'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ei as ei in eight</td>
<td>hei</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eu as e̞o (a short e followed by a short u in one syllable)</td>
<td>seu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oe like oi in toil</td>
<td>foe'-dūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ui like o̞i (a short u followed by a short i in one syllable. Cf. English we)</td>
<td>cui, huic</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note. Give all the vowels and diphthongs their proper sounds and do not slur over them in unaccented syllables, as is done in English.

7. Consonants are pronounced as in English, except that

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Consonants</th>
<th>Latin Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>c is always like c in cat, never as in cent</td>
<td>cā'-dō, cī'-būs, cē'-nā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g is always like g in get, never as in gem</td>
<td>gē'-mō, gīg'-nō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i consonant is always like y in yes</td>
<td>iām, iō'-cūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m before c, qu, or g is like ng in sing (compare the sound of n in anchor)</td>
<td>ān'-cō-rā (ang'-ko-ra)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qu, gu, and sometimes su before a vowel have the sound of qw, gw, and sw. Here u has the value of consonant v and is not counted a vowel</td>
<td>īn'-quit, quī, īn'-guā, sān'-guīs, suā'-dē-ō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s is like s in sea, never as in ease</td>
<td>rō'-sā, īs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t is always like t in native, never as in nation</td>
<td>rā'-tī-ō, nā'-tī-ō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Consonants

v is like w in wine, never as in vine
x has the value of two consonants (cs or gs)
and is like x in extract, not as in exact
bs is like ps and bt like pt
ch, ph, and th are like c, p, t

Latin Examples

vi'num, vir
ex'-trâ, ex-âc'-tûs
ôrbs, ob-tî'-nô-ô
pûl'-chër, Phoe'-bê, thê-ä'-trûm

a. In combinations of consonants give each its distinct sound. Doubled consonants should be pronounced with a slight pause between the two sounds. Thus pronounce tt as in rat-trap, not as in rattle; pp as in hop-pole, not as in upper. Examples, mit'-tô, Ap'pi-ûs, bêl'-lâm.

SY LLABLES

8. A Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs. Thus aes-tâ'-tê has three syllables, au-di-ên'-dûs has four.

a. Two vowels with a consonant between them never make one syllable, as is so often the case in English. Compare English inside with Latin in-sî'-dê.

9. Words are divided into syllables as follows:

1. A single consonant between two vowels goes with the second. Thus â-mâ'-bî-lis, mé-mo'-rî-ä, in-tê'-rê-ä, â'-bêst, pê-rê'-gît.¹

2. Combinations of two or more consonants:

a. A consonant followed by l or r goes with the l or r. Thus pû'-bli-cûs, â'-grî.

Exception. Prepositional compounds of this nature, as also ll and rr, follow rule b. Thus âb'-lû-ô, âb-rûm'-pô, îl'-lê, fêr'-rûm.

b. In all other combinations of consonants the first consonant goes with the preceding vowel.² Thus màg'-nûs, è-gës'-tâs, vic-tô'-rî-ä, hôs'-pës, ân'-nûs, sù-bàc'-tûs.

3. The last syllable of a word is called the ul'-ti-ma; the one next to the last, the pe-null'; the one before the penult, the an'-te-pe-null'.

¹ In writing and printing it is customary to divide the parts of a compound, as inter-ëa, ab-ëst, sub-actus, per-ëgît, contrary to the correct phonetic rule.
² The combination qct is divided nc-t, as func-tûs, sànc-tûs.
EXERCISE

Divide the words in the following passage into syllables and pronounce them, placing the accent as indicated:

Vádě ād förmícăm, Ō pígēr, ēt cōnsíđērā víás ēius ēt dīscē sāpīěn-ťiām: quae cūm nōn hābēāt dūcēm nēc praečēptōrēm nēc pīncīpēm, pārāt ēn āestātē cībūm sībī ēt cōŋrēgāt ēn mēsśe quōd cōmēdāt.

[Go to the ant, thou sluggard; consider her ways, and be wise: which, having no guide, overseer, or ruler, provideth her meat in the summer and gathereth her food in the harvest.]

QUANTITY

11. The quantity of a vowel or a syllable is the time it takes to pronounce it. Correct pronunciation and accent depend upon the proper observance of quantity.

12. **Quantity of Vowels.** Vowels are either long (⁻) or short (⁻). In this book the long vowels are marked. Unmarked vowels are to be considered short.

1. A vowel is short before another vowel or h; as pō-ĕ'-ta, trā'-hō.
2. A vowel is short before nt and nd, before final m or t, and, except in words of one syllable, before final l or r. Thus a'-mānt, a-mān'-dus, a-mā'-bām, a-mā'-bāt, a'-ni-māl, a'-mōr.
3. A vowel is long before nf, ns, nx, and nct. Thus in'-fe-rō, re'-gēns, sān'-xī, sānc'-tus.
4. Diphthongs are always long, and are not marked.

13. **Quantity of Syllables.** Syllables are either long or short, and their quantity must be carefully distinguished from that of vowels.

1. A syllable is short,
2. If it ends in a short vowel; as ā'-mō, pī'-grī.

**Note.** In final syllables the short vowel may be followed by a final consonant. Thus the word mē-mō'-rī-ām contains four short syllables. In the first three a short vowel ends the syllable, in the last the short vowel is followed by a final consonant.
2. A syllable is long,
   a. If it contains a long vowel or a diphthong, as cu'-rō, poe'-nae, aes-tā'-te.
   b. If it ends in a consonant which is followed by another consonant, as cor'-pus, mag'-nus.

   Note. The vowel in a long syllable may be either long or short, and should be pronounced accordingly. Thus in ter'-ra, in'-ter, the first syllable is long, but the vowel in each case is short and should be given the short sound. In words like saxum the first syllable is long because x has the value of two consonants (cs or gs).

3. In determining quantity h is not counted a consonant.

   Note. Give about twice as much time to the long syllables as to the short ones. It takes about as long to pronounce a short vowel plus a consonant as it does to pronounce a long vowel or a diphthong, and so these quantities are considered equally long. For example, it takes about as long to say cū'-rō as it does cu'-rō, and so each of these first syllables is long. Compare mō'-lis and mō'-lis, ā-mī'-sī and ā-mī'-sī.

ACCENT

14. Words of two syllables are accented on the first, as mēn'-sa, Cae'-sar.

15. Words of more than two syllables are accented on the penult if the penult is long. If the penult is short, accent the antepenult. Thus mo-nē'-mus, re'-gi-tur, a-grī'-co-la, a-man'-dus.

   Note. Observe that the position of the accent is determined by the length of the syllable and not by the length of the vowel in the syllable. (Cf. § 13. 2, Note.)

16. Certain little words called enclitis,¹ which have no separate existence, are added to and pronounced with a preceding word. The most common are -que, and; -ve, or; and -ne, the question sign. The syllable before an enclitic takes the accent, regardless of its quantity. Thus populus'que, dea'que, rēgna've, audit'ne.

¹ Enclitic means leaning back, and that is, as you see, just what these little words do. They cannot stand alone and so they lean back for support upon the preceding word.
HOW TO READ LATIN

17. To read Latin well is not so difficult, if you begin right. Correct habits of reading should be formed now. Notice the quantities carefully, especially the quantity of the penult, to insure your getting the accent on the right syllable. (Cf. § 15.) Give every vowel its proper sound and every syllable its proper length. Then bear in mind that we should read Latin as we read English, in phrases rather than in separate words. Group together words that are closely connected in thought. No good reader halts at the end of each word.

18. Read the stanzas of the following poem by Longfellow, one at a time, first the English and then the Latin version. The syllables inclosed in parentheses are to be slurred or omitted to secure smoothness of meter.

EXCELSIOR [HIGHER]!

The shades of night were falling fast,  
As through an Alpine village passed  
A youth, who bore, ’mid snow and ice,  
A banner with the strange device,  
Excelsior!

His brow was sad; his eye beneath,  
Flashed like a falchion from its sheath,  
And like a silver clarion rung  
The accents of that unknown tongue,  
Excelsior!

In happy homes he saw the light  
Of household fires gleam warm and bright;  
Above, the spectral glaciers shone,  
And from his lips escaped a groan,  
Excelsior!

"Try not the Pass!" the old man said;  
"Dark lowers the tempest overhead,

1 Translation by C. W. Goodchild in Praeco Latinus, October, 1898.
The roaring torrent is deep and wide!"
And loud that clarion voice replied, Excelsior!

At break of day, as heavenward
The pious monks of Saint Bernard
Uttered the oft-repeated prayer,
A voice cried through the startled air, Excelsior!

A traveler, by the faithful hound,
Half-buried in the snow was found,
Still grasping in his hand of ice
That banner with the strange device, Excelsior!

There in the twilight cold and gray,
Lifeless, but beautiful, he lay,
And from the sky, serene and far,
A voice fell, like a falling star, Excelsior!
PART II

WORDS AND FORMS

LESSON I

FIRST PRINCIPLES

19. Subject and Predicate. 1. Latin, like English, expresses thoughts by means of sentences. A sentence is a combination of words that expresses a thought, and in its simplest form is the statement of a single fact. Thus,

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Galba is a farmer} & \quad \text{The sailor fights} \\
\text{Galba est agricola} & \quad \text{Nauta pugnat}
\end{align*}
\]

In each of these sentences there are two parts:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Subject} & \quad \text{Predicate} \\
\text{Galba} & \quad \text{is a farmer} \\
\text{Galba est agricola} & \quad \text{est agricola} \\
\text{The sailor} & \quad \text{fights} \\
\text{Nauta} & \quad \text{pugnat}
\end{align*}
\]

2. The subject is that person, place, or thing about which something is said, and is therefore a noun or some word which can serve the same purpose.

a. Pronouns, as their name implies (\textit{pro}, "instead of," and \textit{noun}), often take the place of nouns, usually to save repeating the same noun, as, \textit{Galba is a farmer; he is a sturdy fellow}.

3. The predicate is that which is said about the subject, and consists of a verb with or without modifiers.

a. A verb is a word which asserts something (usually an act) concerning a person, place, or thing.
20. The Object. In the two sentences, The boy hit the ball and The ball hit the boy, the same words are used, but the meaning is different, and depends upon the order of the words. The doer of the act, that about which something is said, is, as we have seen above, the subject. That to which something is done is the direct object of the verb. The boy hit the ball is therefore analyzed as follows:

Subject: The boy
Predicate: hit the ball

(verb) (direct object)

a. A verb whose action passes over to the object directly, as in the sentence above, is called a transitive verb. A verb which does not admit of a direct object is called intransitive, as, I walk, he comes.

21. The Copula. The verb to be in its different forms — are, is, was, etc. — does not tell us anything about the subject; neither does it govern an object. It simply connects the subject with the word or words in the predicate that possess a distinct meaning. Hence it is called the copula, that is, the joiner or link.

22. In the following sentences pronounce the Latin and name the nouns, verbs, subjects, objects, predicates, copulas:

1. America est patria mea  
   America is fatherland

2. Agricola filiam amat  
   (The) farmer (his) daughter loves

3. Filia est Iulia  
   (His) daughter is Julia

4. Iulia et agricola sunt in insula  
   Julia and (the) farmer are on (the) island

5. Iulia aquam portat  
   Julia water carries

6. Rosam in comis habet  
   (A) rose in (her) hair (she) has

7. Iulia est puella pulchra  
   Julia is (a) girl pretty

8. Domina filiam pulchram habet  
   (The) lady (a) daughter beautiful has

a. The sentences above show that Latin does not express some words which are necessary in English. First of all, Latin has no article the or a; thus agricola may mean the farmer, a farmer, or simply farmer. Then, too, the personal pronouns, I, you, he, she, etc., and the possessive pronouns, my, your, his, her, etc., are not expressed if the meaning of the sentence is clear without them.
23. Inflection. Words may change their forms to indicate some change in sense or use, as, is, are; was, were; who, whose, whom; farmer, farmer’s; woman, women. This is called inflection. The inflection of a noun, adjective, or pronoun is called its declension, that of a verb its conjugation.

24. Number. Latin, like English, has two numbers, singular and plural. In English we usually form the plural by adding -s or -es to the singular. So Latin changes the singular to the plural by changing the ending of the word. Compare

Naut-a pugnat  The sailor fights
Naut-ae pugnant The sailors fight

25. Rule. Nouns that end in -a in the singular end in -ae in the plural.

26. Learn the following nouns so that you can give the English for the Latin or the Latin for the English. Write the plural of each.

agri’cola, farmer (agriculture)  fuga, flight (fugitive)
aqua, water (aquarium)  iniü’ria, wrong, injury
causa, cause, reason  lüna, moon (lunar)
do’mina, lady of the house,  nauta, sailor (nautical)
mistress (dominate)  puel’la, girl
filia, daughter (filial)  silva, forest (silvan)
fortü’na, fortune  terra, land (terrace)

27. Compare again the sentences

Nauta pugna-t  The sailor fights
Nautae pugna-nt The sailors fight

In the first sentence the verb pugna-t is in the third person singular, in the second sentence pugna-nt is in the third person plural.

1 The words in parentheses are English words related to the Latin. When the words are practically identical, as causa, cause, no comparison is needed.
28. **Rule. Agreement of Verb.** A finite verb must always be in the same person and number as its subject.

29. **Rule.** In the conjugation of the Latin verb the third person singular active ends in -t, the third person plural in -nt. The endings which show the person and number of the verb are called **personal endings.**

30. Learn the following verbs and write the plural of each. The personal pronouns he, she, it, etc., which are necessary in the inflection of the English verb, are not needed in the Latin, because the personal endings take their place. Of course, if the verb's subject is expressed we do not translate the personal ending by a pronoun; thus *nauta pugnat* is translated the sailor fights, not the sailor he fights.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ama-t</td>
<td>he (she, it) loves, is loving, does love (amity, amiable)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>labō'ra-t</td>
<td>&quot; &quot; &quot; labors, is laboring, does labor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nūntia-t</td>
<td>&quot; &quot; &quot; announces, is announcing, does announce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>porta-t</td>
<td>&quot; &quot; &quot; carries, is carrying, does carry (porter)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pugna-t</td>
<td>&quot; &quot; &quot; fights, is fighting, does fight (pugnacious)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

31. **EXERCISES**

**I.** 1. The daughter loves, the daughters love. 2. The sailor is carrying, the sailors carry. 3. The farmer does labor, the farmers labor. 4. The girl is announcing, the girls do announce. 5. The ladies are carrying, the lady carries.


1 The *u* in nūntiō is long by exception. (Cf. § 12.2.)
32. Declension of Nouns. We learned above (§§ 19, 20) the difference between the subject and object, and that in English they may be distinguished by the order of the words. Sometimes, however, the order is such that we are left in doubt. For example, the sentence The lady her daughter loves might mean either that the lady loves her daughter, or that the daughter loves the lady.

1. If the sentence were in Latin, no doubt could arise, because the subject and the object are distinguished, not by the order of the words, but by the endings of the words themselves. Compare the following sentences:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Domina filiam amat} & \quad \text{Filia dominam amat} \\
\text{Filiam domina amat} & \quad \text{Dominam filia amat} \\
\text{Amat filiam domina} & \quad \text{Amat dominam filia} \\
\text{Domina amat filiam} & \quad \text{Filia amat dominam}
\end{align*}
\]

\text{The lady loves her daughter} \quad \text{The daughter loves the lady}

\(a\). Observe that in each case the subject of the sentence ends in -a and the object in -am. The form of the noun shows how it is used in the sentence, and the order of the words has no effect on the essential meaning.

2. As stated above (§ 23), this change of ending is called declension, and each different ending produces what is called a case. When we decline a noun, we give all its different cases, or changes of endings. In English we have three cases, — nominative, possessive, and objective; but, in nouns, the nominative and objective have the same form, and only the possessive case shows a change of ending, by adding 's or the apostrophe. The interrogative pronoun, however, has the fuller declension, who? whose? whom?
33. The following table shows a comparison between English and Latin declension forms, and should be thoroughly memorized:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English Cases</th>
<th>Latin Cases</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Declension of who?</strong></td>
<td><strong>Name of case and use</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Who?</td>
<td>Nominative — case of the subject</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Whose?</td>
<td>Possessive — case of the possessor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Whom?</td>
<td>Objective — case of the object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Who?</td>
<td>Nominative — case of the subject</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Whose?</td>
<td>Possessive — case of the possessor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Whom?</td>
<td>Objective — case of the object</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When the nominative singular of a noun ends in -a, observe that

a. The nominative plural ends in -ae.
b. The genitive singular ends in -ae and the genitive plural in -ąrum.
c. The accusative singular ends in -am and the accusative plural in -ąs.
d. The genitive singular and the nominative plural have the same ending.

34. **EXERCISE**

Pronounce the following words and give their general meaning. Then give the number and case, and the use of each form. Where the same form stands for more than one case, give all the possible cases and uses.

35. We learned from the table (§ 33) that the Latin nominative, genitive, and accusative correspond, in general, to the nominative, possessive, and objective in English, and that they are used in the same way. This will be made even clearer by the following sentence:

Filia agricola nautam amat, the farmer's daughter (or the daughter of the farmer) loves the sailor

What is the subject? the direct object? What case is used for the subject? for the direct object? What word denotes the possessor? In what case is it?

36. Rule. Nominative Subject. The subject of a finite verb is in the Nominative and answers the question Who? or What?

37. Rule. Accusative Object. The direct object of a transitive verb is in the Accusative and answers the question Whom? or What?

38. Rule. Genitive of the Possessor. The word denoting the owner or possessor of something is in the Genitive and answers the question Whose?
39. **EXERCISES**

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 283.


For the order of words imitate the Latin above.

II. 1. The daughter of Latona does love the forests. 2. Latona’s daughter carries arrows. 3. The farmers’ daughters do labor. 4. The farmer’s daughter loves the waters of the forest. 5. The sailor is announcing the girls’ flight. 6. The girls announce the sailors’ wrongs. 7. The farmer’s daughter labors. 8. Diana’s arrows are killing the wild beasts of the land.

40. **CONVERSATION**

Translate the questions and answer them in Latin. The answers may be found in the exercises preceding.

1. Quis est Diāna? 4. Quis silvam amat?
2. Cuius filia est Diāna? 5. Quis sagittās portat?

**LESSON V**

**FIRST PRINCIPLES (Continued)**

41. The **Dative Case.** In addition to the relationships between words expressed by the nominative, genitive (possessive), and accusative (objective) cases, there are other relationships, to express which in English we use such words as from, with, by, to, for, in, at.¹

Latin, too, makes frequent use of such prepositions; but often it expresses these relations without them by means of case forms which

¹ Words like to, for, by, from, in, etc., which define the relationship between words, are called prepositions.
English does not possess. One of the cases found in the Latin declension and lacking in English is called the *dative*.

42. When the nominative singular ends in -a, the dative singular ends in -ae and the dative plural in -is.

**Note.** Observe that the genitive singular, the dative singular, and the nominative plural all have the same ending, -ae; but the uses of the three cases are entirely different. The general meaning of the sentence usually makes clear which case is intended.

a. Form the dative singular and plural of the following nouns: *fuga, causa, fortūna, terra, aqua, puella, agricola, nauta, domina*.

43. The Dative Relation. The dative case is used to express the relations conveyed in English by the prepositions *to, towards, for*.

These prepositions are often used in English in expressions of motion, such as *She went to town, He ran towards the horse, Columbus sailed for America*. In such cases the dative is not used in Latin, as *motion through space* is foreign to the dative relation. But the dative is used to denote that *to or towards which* a benefit, injury, purpose, feeling, or quality is directed, or that *for which* something serves or exists.

a. What dative relations do you discover in the following?

The teacher gave a prize to John because he replied so promptly to all her questions — a good example for the rest of us. It is a pleasure to us to hear him recite. Latin is easy for him, but it is very hard for me. Some are fitted for one thing and others for another.

44. The Indirect Object. Examine the sentence

*Nauta fugam nūntiat, the sailor announces the flight*

Here the verb, *nūntiat*, governs the direct object, *fugam*, in the accusative case. If, however, we wish to mention the persons to whom the sailor announces the flight, as, *The sailor announces the flight to the farmers*, the verb will have two objects:

1. Its direct object, *flight (fugam)*
2. Its indirect object, *farmers*

According to the preceding section, *to the farmers* is a relation covered by the dative case, and we are prepared for the following rule:
45. **Rule. Dative Indirect Object.** *The indirect object of a word is in the Dative.*

a. The indirect object usually stands before the direct object.

46. We may now complete the translation of the sentence *The sailor announces the flight to the farmers,* and we have

**Nauta agricolis fugam nuntiat**

47. **EXERCISES**

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 283.

Point out the direct and indirect objects and the genitive of the possessor.


Imitate the word order of the preceding exercise.

II. 1. To whom do the girls give a wreath? 2. The girls give a wreath to Julia, because Julia loves wreaths. 3. The sailors tell the ladies a story, because the ladies love stories. 4. The farmer gives his (§ 22. a) daughter water. 5. Galba announces the cause of the battle to the sailor. 6. The goddess of the moon loves the waters of the forest. 7. Whose wreath is Latona carrying? Diana’s.

1 Observe that in English the indirect object often stands without a preposition *to* to mark it, especially when it precedes the direct object.
LESSON VI

FIRST PRINCIPLES (Continued)

48. The Ablative Case. Another case, lacking in English but found in the fuller Latin declension, is the *ablative*.

49. When the nominative singular ends in -a, the ablative singular ends in -ā and the ablative plural in -īs.

a. Observe that the final -ā of the nominative is short, while the final -ā of the ablative is long, as,

Nom. filiā Abl. filiā

b. Observe that the ablative plural is like the dative plural.

c. Form the ablative singular and plural of the following nouns: fuga, causa, fortūna, terra, aqua, puella, agricola, nauta, domina.

50. The Ablative Relation. The ablative case is used to express the relations conveyed in English by the prepositions *from*, *with*, *by*, *at*, *in*. It denotes

1. That from which something is separated, from which it starts, or of which it is deprived — generally translated by *from*.

2. That with which something is associated or by means of which it is done — translated by *with* or *by*.

3. The place where or the time when something happens — translated by *in* or *at*.

a. What ablative relations do you discover in the following?

In our class there are twenty boys and girls. Daily at eight o'clock they come from home with their books, and while they are at school they study Latin with great zeal. In a short time they will be able to read with ease the books written by the Romans. By patience and perseverance all things in this world can be overcome.

51. Prepositions. While, as stated above (§ 41), many relations expressed in English by prepositions are in Latin expressed by case forms, still prepositions are of frequent occurrence, but only with the accusative or ablative.
52. **Rule. Object of a Preposition.** *A noun governed by a preposition must be in the Accusative or Ablative case.*

53. Prepositions denoting the ablative relations *from, with, in, on,* are naturally followed by the ablative case. Among these are

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{ā} & \text{ or } \text{ab, from, away from} \\
\text{dē, from, down from} & \text{ cum, with} \\
\text{ē} & \text{ or } \text{ex, from, out from, out of} \\
\text{in, in, on}
\end{align*}
\]

1. **Translate into Latin, using prepositions.** In the water, on the land, down from the forest, with the fortune, out of the forests, from the victory, out of the waters, with the sailors, down from the moon.

54. **Adjectives.** Examine the sentence

**Puella parva bonam deam amat,** *the little girl loves the good goddess*

In this sentence *parva* (*little*) and *bonam* (*good*) are not nouns, but are descriptive words expressing quality. Such words are called *adjectives,* and they are said to belong to the noun which they describe.

You can tell by its ending to which noun an adjective belongs. The ending of *parva* shows that it belongs to *puella,* and the ending of *bonam* that it belongs to *deam.* Words that belong together are said to agree, and the belonging-together is called *agreement.* Observe that *the adjective and its noun agree in number and case.*

55. Examine the sentences

**Puella est parva,** *the girl is little*

**Puella parva bonam deam amat,** *the little girl loves the good goddess*

In the first sentence the adjective *parva* is separated from its noun by the verb and stands in the predicate. It is therefore called a *predicate adjective.* In the second sentence the adjectives *parva* and

1. *ā* and *ē* are used only before words beginning with a consonant; *ab* and *ex* are used before either vowels or consonants.

2. *Pick out the adjectives in the following:* "When I was a little boy, I remember that one cold winter's morning I was accosted by a smiling man with an ax on his shoulder. 'My pretty boy,' said he, 'has your father a grindstone?'—'Yes, sir,' said I.—'You are a fine little fellow,' said he. 'Will you let me grind my ax on it?""
bonam are closely attached to the nouns puella and deam respectively, and are called attributive adjectives.

a. Pick out the attributive and the predicate adjectives in the following:

Do you think Latin is hard? Hard studies make strong brains. Lazy students dislike hard studies. We are not lazy.

56. DIALOGUE

Julia and Galba

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 283.

I. Quis, Galba, est Diāna?
G. Diāna, Iūlia, est pulchra dea lūnae et silvārum.
I. Cuius filia, Galba, est Diāna?
G. Lātōnae filia, Iūlia, est Diāna.
I. Quid Diāna portat?
G. Sagittās Diāna portat.
I. Cūr Diāna sagittās portat?
G. Diāna sagittās portat, Iūlia, quod malās ferās silvae magnae necat.
I. Amatne Lātōna filiam?
G. Amat, et filia Lātōnam amat.
I. Quid filia tua parva portat?
G. Corōnās pulchrās filia mea parva portat.
I. Cui filia tua corōnās pulchrās dat?
G. Diānae corōnās dat.
I. Quis est cum filiā tua? Estne sōla?
G. Sōla nōn est; filia mea parva est cum ancillā meā.

a. When a person is called or addressed, the case used is called the vocative (Latin vocāre, "to call"). In form the vocative is regularly like the nominative. In English the name of the person addressed usually stands first in the sentence. The Latin vocative rarely stands first. Point out five examples of the vocative in this dialogue.

b. Observe that questions answered by yes or no in English are answered in Latin by repeating the verb. Thus, if you wished to answer in Latin the question Is the sailor fighting? Pugnatne nauta? you would say Pugnat, he is fighting, or Nōn pugnat, he is not fighting.
57. In the preceding lessons we have now gone over all the cases, singular and plural, of nouns whose nominative singular ends in -a. All Latin nouns whose nominative singular ends in -a belong to the First Declension. It is also called the A-Declension because of the prominent part which the vowel a plays in the formation of the cases. We have also learned what relations are expressed by each case. These results are summarized in the following table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Translation</th>
<th>Use and General Meaning of Each Case</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>do'min-a</td>
<td>the lady</td>
<td>The subject</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>domin-ae</td>
<td>of the lady, or the lady's</td>
<td>The possessor of something</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>domin-ae</td>
<td>to or for the lady</td>
<td>Expressing the relation to or for, especially the indirect object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>domin-am</td>
<td>the lady</td>
<td>The direct object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>domin-ā</td>
<td>from, with, by, in, the lady</td>
<td>Separation (from), association or means (with, by), place where or time when (in, at)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The same as the singular</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

58. The Base. That part of a word which remains unchanged in inflection and to which the terminations are added is called the base. Thus, in the declension above, domin- is the base and -a is the termination of the nominative singular.
59. Write the declension of the following nouns, separating the base from the termination by a hyphen. Also give them orally.

pugna, terra, lūna, ancil'la, corō'na, īn'sula, silva

60. Gender. In English, names of living beings are either masculine or feminine, and names of things without life are neuter. This is called natural gender. Yet in English there are some names of things to which we refer as if they were feminine; as, "Have you seen my yacht? She is a beauty." And there are some names of living beings to which we refer as if they were neuter; as, "Is the baby here? No, the nurse has taken it home." Some words, then, have a gender quite apart from sex or real gender, and this is called grammatical gender.

Latin, like English, has three genders. Names of males are usually masculine and of females feminine, but names of things have grammatical gender and may be either masculine, feminine, or neuter. Thus we have in Latin the three words, lapis, a stone; rūpēs, a cliff; and saxum, a rock. Lapis is masculine, rūpēs feminine, and saxum neuter. The gender can usually be determined by the ending of the word, and must always be learned, for without knowing the gender it is impossible to write correct Latin.

61. Gender of First-Declension Nouns. Nouns of the first declension are feminine unless they denote males. Thus silva is feminine, but nauta, sailor, and agricola, farmer, are masculine.

62. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 284.


1 Note that the relation expressed by the dative case covers that to which a feeling is directed. (Cf. § 43.)
II. 1. Where does the farmer live? 2. The farmer lives in the small cottage. 3. Who lives with the farmer? 4. (His) little daughter lives with the farmer. 5. (His) daughter is getting (parat) a good dinner for the farmer. 6. The farmer praises the good dinner. 7. The daughter’s good dinner is pleasing to the farmer.

What Latin words are suggested by this picture?

63. CONVERSATION

Answer the questions in Latin.

1. Quis cum agricolā in casā habitat?
2. Quid-bona filia agricolae parat?
3. Quem agricola laudat?
4. Vocatne filia agricolae gallinās ad cēnam?
5. Cuius filia est grāta dominae?
6. Cuii domina pecūniam dat?
LESSON VIII

FIRST DECLENSION (Continued)

64. We have for some time now been using adjectives and nouns together, and you have noticed an agreement between them in case and in number (§ 54). They agree also in gender. In the phrase silva magna, we have a feminine adjective in -a agreeing with a feminine noun in -a.


66. Feminine adjectives in -a are declined like feminine nouns in -a, and you should learn to decline them together as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOUN</th>
<th>ADJECTIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>domina (base domin-), f., lady</td>
<td>bona (base bon-), good</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SINGULAR**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>do'mina</th>
<th>bona</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>dominae</td>
<td>bona</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>dominae</td>
<td>bona</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>dominam</td>
<td>bonam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>dominā</td>
<td>bonā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PLURAL**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>dominae</th>
<th>bonae</th>
<th>-ae</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>dominā'rum</td>
<td>bonā'rum</td>
<td>-ārum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>dominis</td>
<td>bonis</td>
<td>-īs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>dominās</td>
<td>bonās</td>
<td>-ās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>dominīs</td>
<td>bonīs</td>
<td>-īs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. In the same way decline together puella mala, the bad girl; ancil'la parya, the little maid; fortū'na magna, great fortune.

67. The words dea, goddess, and filia, daughter, take the ending -ābus instead of -īs in the dative and ablative plural. Note the dative and ablative plural in the following declension:
ORDER OF WORDS IN LATIN

dea bona (bases de- bon-)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th></th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>dea bona</td>
<td></td>
<td>deae bonae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>deae bonae</td>
<td></td>
<td>deae bonae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>deae bonae</td>
<td></td>
<td>dea'rum bona'rum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>deam bonam</td>
<td></td>
<td>deas bonas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>dea bona</td>
<td></td>
<td>dea'bus bonis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. In the same way decline together filia parva.

68. Latin Word Order. The order of words in English and in Latin sentences is not the same.

In English we arrange words in a fairly fixed order. Thus, in the sentence *My daughter is getting dinner for the farmers*, we cannot alter the order of the words without spoiling the sentence. We can, however, throw emphasis on different words by speaking them with more force. Try the effect of reading the sentence by putting special force on *my, daughter, dinner, farmers*.

In Latin, where the office of the word in the sentence is shown by its *ending* (cf. § 32. 1), and not by its *position*, the order of words is more free, and position is used to secure the same effect that in English is secured by emphasis of voice. To a limited extent we can alter the order of words in English, too, for the same purpose. Compare the sentences

_I saw a game of football at Chicago last November* (normal order)
_Last November I saw a game of football at Chicago_
_At Chicago, last November, I saw a game of football_

1. In a Latin sentence the most emphatic place is the _first_; next in importance is the _last_; the weakest point is the _middle_. Generally the _subject_ is the most important word, and is placed _first_; usually the _verb_ is the next in importance, and is placed _last_. The other words of the sentence stand between these two in the order of their importance. Hence the normal order of words — that is, where no unusual emphasis is expressed — is as follows:

_subject_ — _modifiers of the subject_ — _indirect object_ — _direct object_ — _adverb_ — _verb_

Changes from the normal order are frequent, and are due to the desire for throwing emphasis upon some word or phrase. _Notice the order of the_
ORDER OF WORDS IN LATIN

Latin words when you are translating, and imitate it when you are turning English into Latin.

2. Possessive pronouns and modifying genitives normally stand after their nouns. When placed before their nouns they are emphatic, as *filia mea*, *my daughter*; *mea filia*, *my daughter*; *casa Galbae*, *Galba’s cottage*; *Galbae casa*, *Galba’s cottage*.

Notice the variety of emphasis produced by writing the following sentence in different ways:

*Filia mea agricolis cēnam parat* (normal order)
*Mea filia agricolis parat cēnam* (mea and cēnam emphatic)
*Agricolis filia mea cēnam parat* (agricolis emphatic)

3. An adjective placed before its noun is more emphatic than when it follows. When great emphasis is desired, the adjective is separated from its noun by other words.

*Filia mea casam parvam nōn amat* (parvam not emphatic)
*Filia mea parvam casam nōn amat* (parvam more emphatic)
*Parvam filia mea casam nōn amat* (parvam very emphatic)

4. Interrogative words usually stand first, the same as in English.

5. The copula (as *est*, *sunt*) is of so little importance that it frequently does not stand last, but may be placed wherever it sounds well.

69.

EXERCISE

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 284.

*Note the order of the words in these sentences and pick out those that are not normal in position and hence are unusually emphatic.*

THE SECOND DECLENSION

First Review of Vocabulary and Grammar, §§ 502–505

LESSON IX

THE SECOND OR O-DECLENSION

70. Latin nouns are divided into five declensions.

The declension to which a noun belongs is shown by the ending of the genitive singular. This should always be learned along with the nominative and the gender.

71. The nominative singular of nouns of the Second or O-Decle- sion ends in -us, -er, -ir, or -um. The genitive singular ends in -i.

72. Gender. Nouns in -um are neuter. The others are regularly masculine.

73. Declension of nouns in -us and -um. Masculines in -us and neuters in -um are declined as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>TERMINATIONS</th>
<th>TERMINATIONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong> do'minus</td>
<td>-us</td>
<td>pīlum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gen.</strong> dominī</td>
<td>-ī</td>
<td>pīlī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dat.</strong> dominō</td>
<td>-ō</td>
<td>pīlō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acc.</strong> dominum</td>
<td>-um</td>
<td>pīlum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abl.</strong> dominō</td>
<td>-ō</td>
<td>pīlō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Voc.</strong> domine</td>
<td>-e</td>
<td>pīlum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PLURAL</th>
<th>TERMINATIONS</th>
<th>TERMINATIONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong> dominī</td>
<td>-ī</td>
<td>pīla</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gen.</strong> dominō'rum</td>
<td>-ōrum</td>
<td>pīlō’rum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dat.</strong> dominīs</td>
<td>-īs</td>
<td>pīlīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acc.</strong> dominōs</td>
<td>-ōs</td>
<td>pīla</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abl.</strong> dominīs</td>
<td>-īs</td>
<td>pīlīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Compare the declension of domina and of dominus.
THE PREDICATE NOUN

a. Observe that the masculines and the neuters have the same terminations excepting in the nominative singular and the nominative and accusative plural.

b. The vocative singular of words of the second declension in -us ends in -ē, as domine, O master; serve, O slave. This is the most important exception to the rule in § 56. a.

74. Write side by side the declension of domina, dominus, and pilum. A comparison of the forms will lead to the following rules, which are of great importance because they apply to all five declensions:

a. The vocative, with a single exception (see § 73. b), is like the nominative. That is, the vocative singular is like the nominative singular, and the vocative plural is like the nominative plural.

b. The nominative, accusative, and vocative of neuter nouns are alike, and in the plural end in -a.

c. The accusative singular of masculines and feminines ends in -m and the accusative plural in -s.

d. The dative and ablative plural are always alike.

e. Final -i and -o are always long; final -a is short, except in the ablative singular of the first declension.

75. Observe the sentences

Lesbia est bona, Lesbia is good
Lesbia est ancilla, Lesbia is a maidservant

We have learned (§ 55) that bona, when used, as here, in the predicate to describe the subject, is called a predicate adjective. Similarly a noun, as ancilla, used in the predicate to define the subject is called a predicate noun.

76. Rule. Predicate Noun. A predicate noun agrees in case with the subject of the verb.
First learn the special vocabulary, p. 285.

G. Quis, Mārce, est lēgātus gerēns (bearing) pilum et tubam?
M. Lēgātus, Galba, est Sextus.
G. Ubi Sextushabitat?¹
M. In oppidō Sextus cum filiābus habitat.
G. Amantne oppidānī Sextum?
M. Amant oppidānī Sextum et laudant, quod magnā cum cōnstantiā pugnat.
G. Ubi, Mārce, est ancilla tua? Cūr nōn cēnam parat?
M. Ancilla mea, Galba, equō lēgātī aquam et frūmentum dat.
G. Cūr nōn servus Sexti equum domini cūrat?
M. Sextus et servus ad mūrum oppidī properant. Oppidānī bellum parant.²

¹ habitat is here translated does live. Note the three possible translations of the Latin present tense:

\[
\text{habitat} \begin{cases} 
\text{he lives} \\
\text{he is living} \\
\text{he does live}
\end{cases}
\]

Always choose the translation which makes the best sense.

² Observe that the verb parō means not only to prepare but also to prepare for, and governs the accusative case.
CONVERSATION

Translate the questions and answer them in Latin.

1. Ubi filiae Sexti habitant?
2. Quem oppidāni amant et laudant?
3. Quid ancilla equō légāti dat?
4. Cuius equum ancilla curat?
5. Quis ad mūrum cum Sextō properat?
6. Quid oppidāni parant?

LESSON X
SECOND DECLENSION (Continued)

79. We have been freely using feminine adjectives, like bona, in agreement with feminine nouns of the first declension and declined like them. *Masculine* adjectives of this class are declined like dominus, and *neuters* like pilum. The adjective and noun, masculine and neuter, are therefore declined as follows:

**Masculine Noun and Adjective**  
*dominus bonus, the good master*

**Bases** domin- bon-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular Terminations</th>
<th>Plural Terminations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>dominus bonus -us</td>
<td>pilum bonum -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>dominī bonī -ī</td>
<td>pilī bonī -ī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>dominō bonō -ō</td>
<td>pilō bonō -ō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>dominum bonum -um</td>
<td>pilum bonum -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>dominō bonō -ō</td>
<td>pilō bonō -ō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>domine bone -e</td>
<td>pilum bonum -um</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Neuter Noun and Adjective**  
*pilum bonum, the good spear*

**Bases** pil- bon-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular Terminations</th>
<th>Plural Terminations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>domini bonī -ī</td>
<td>pila bona -a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>dominō’rum bonō’rum -ōrum</td>
<td>pilō’rum bonō’rum -ōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>dominīs bonīs -īs</td>
<td>pilīs bonīs -īs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>dominōs bonōs -ōs</td>
<td>pilā bona -a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>dominīs bonīs -īs</td>
<td>pilīs bonīs -īs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Decline together *bellum longum, equus parvus, servus malus, mūrus altus, frūmentum novum.*

80. Observe the sentences

Lesbia ancilla est bona, *Lesbia, the maidservant, is good*

Filia Lesbiae ancillae est bona, *the daughter of Lesbia, the maidservant, is good*

Servus Lesbiam ancillam amat, *the slave loves Lesbia, the maidservant*

In these sentences *ancilla, ancillae,* and *ancillam* denote the class of persons to which *Lesbia* belongs and explain who she is. Nouns so related that the second is only another name for the first and explains it are said to be in apposition, and are always in the same case.

81. **Rule. Apposition.** *An appositive agrees in case with the noun which it explains.*

82. **EXERCISES**

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 285.

I. 1. Patria servī bonī, vicus servōrum bonōrum, bone popule.

2. Populus oppidi magni, in oppidō magnō, in oppidis magnīs.

3. Cum pilis longis, ad pila longa, ad mūros lātōs.

4. Lēgāte male, amīci lēgāti mali, cēna grāta dominō bonō.

5. Frũmentum equōrum parvōrum, domine bone, ad lēgātos clāros.

6. Rhēnus est in Germāniā, patriā meā.

7. Sextus lēgātus pilum longum portat.

8. Oppidānī bonī Sextō lēgātō clāro pecūniam dant.


10. Galba agricola et Iūlia filia bona labōrant.

II. 1. Wicked slave, who is your friend? Why does he not praise Galba, your master? 2. My friend is from (ex) a village of Germany, my fatherland. 3. My friend does not love the people of Italy. 4. Who is caring for the good horse of Galba, the farmer? 5. Mark, where is Lesbia, the maidservant? 6. She is hastening to the little cottage of Julia, the farmer’s daughter.

1 See footnote 1, p. 33. Remember that *cūrat* is transitive and governs a direct object.

2 Not the dative. (Cf. § 43.)
LESSON XI

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECscriptions

83. Adjectives of the first and second declensions are declined in the three genders as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>bonus</td>
<td>bona</td>
<td>bonum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>boni</td>
<td>bonae</td>
<td>boni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>bonō</td>
<td>bonae</td>
<td>bonō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>bonum</td>
<td>bonam</td>
<td>bonum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>bonō</td>
<td>bonā</td>
<td>bonō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>bone</td>
<td>bona</td>
<td>bonum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>boni</td>
<td>bonae</td>
<td>bona</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>bonorum</td>
<td>bonarum</td>
<td>bonorum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>bonis</td>
<td>bonis</td>
<td>bonis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>bonōs</td>
<td>bonās</td>
<td>bona</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>bonis</td>
<td>bonis</td>
<td>bonis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. Write the declension and give it orally across the page, thus giving the three genders for each case.

b. Decline gratus, -a, -um; malus, -a, -um; altus, -a, -um; parvus, -a, -um.

84. Thus far the adjectives have had the same terminations as the nouns. However, the agreement between the adjective and its noun does not mean that they must have the same termination. If the adjective and the noun belong to different declensions, the terminations will, in many cases, not be the same. For example, nauta, sailor, is masculine and belongs to the first declension. The masculine form of the adjective bonus is of the second declension. Consequently, a good sailor is nauta bonus. So, the wicked farmer is agricola malus. Learn the following declensions:
85. *nauta bonus* (bases *naut- bon-*), *m.*, *the good sailor*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>nauta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>nautae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>nautae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>nautam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>nautā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>nauta</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nautēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nautārum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nautās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nautēs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

86. **EXERCISES**

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 285.


II. 1. The wicked farmer is hastening to the village with (his) booty. 2. The reputation of the wicked farmer is not good. 3. Why does Galba’s daughter give arms and weapons to the wicked farmer? 4. Lesbia invites the good sailor to dinner. 5. Why is Lesbia with the good sailor hastening from the cottage? 6. Sextus, where is my helmet? 7. The good sailors are hastening to the toilsome battle. 8. The horses of the wicked farmers are small. 9. The Roman people give money to the good sailors. 10. Friends care for the good sailors. 11. Whose friends are fighting with the wicked farmers?

\(^1\) *Est*, beginning a declarative sentence, *there is.*
LESSEN XII

NOUNS IN -IUS AND -IUM

87. Nouns of the second declension in -ius and -ium end in -i in the genitive singular, not in -ii, and the accent rests on the penult; as, fili from filius (son), praesidi from praesidium (garrison).

88. Proper names of persons in -ius, and filius, end in -i in the vocative singular, not in -e, and the accent rests on the penult; as, Vergil'i, O Vergil; fili, O son.

a. Observe that in these words the vocative and the genitive are alike.

89. praesidium (base praesidi-), n., garrison filius (base fili-), m., son

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>praesidium</td>
<td>praesidium</td>
<td>praesi'di</td>
<td>praesidiō</td>
<td>praesidium</td>
<td>praesidiō</td>
<td>praesidium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>filius</td>
<td>filius</td>
<td>fili</td>
<td>filiō</td>
<td>filium</td>
<td>filiō</td>
<td>fili</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The plural is regular. Note that the -i- of the base is lost only in the genitive singular, and in the vocative of words like filius.

Decline together praesidium parvum; filius bonus; fluvius longus, the long river; proelium clārum, the famous battle.

90. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 285.

LESSON XIII
SECOND DECLENSION (Continued)

91. Declension of Nouns in -er and -ir. In early Latin all the masculine nouns of the second declension ended in -os. This -os later became -us in words like servus, and was dropped entirely in words with bases ending in -r, like puer, boy; ager, field; and vir, man. These words are therefore declined as follows:

| Base  | puer- | Base  | agr- | Base  | vir-
|-------|-------|-------|------|-------|------
| Nom.  | puer  | ager  | vir  |       |      |
| Gen.  | puerī | agrī  | virī | -ī    |      |
| Dat.  | puerō | agrō  | virō | -ō    |      |
| Acc.  | puerum| agrum | virum| -um   |      |
| Abl.  | puerō | agrō  | virō | -ō    |      |

Plural

| Nom.  | puerī | agrī  | virī | -ī    |
| Gen.  | puerōrum | agrōrum | virōrum | -ōrum |
| Dat.  | puerīs | agrīs | virīs | -īs   |
| Acc.  | puerōs | agrōs | virōs | -ōs   |
| Abl.  | puerīs | agrīs | virīs | -īs   |

1 Dative with finitimus. (See § 43.)
ADJECTIVES IN –ER

a. The vocative case of these words is like the nominative, following the general rule (§ 74. a).

b. The declension differs from that of servus only in the nominative and vocative singular.

c. Note that in puer the e remains all the way through, while in ager it is present only in the nominative. In puer the e belongs to the base, but in ager (base agr-) it does not, and was inserted in the nominative to make it easier to pronounce. Most words in –er are declined like ager. The genitive shows whether you are to follow puer or ager.

93. Masculine adjectives in –er of the second declension are declined like nouns in –er. A few of them are declined like puer, but most of them like ager. The feminine and neuter nominatives show which form to follow, thus,

MASC.  FEM.  NEUT.
liber  libera  liberum  (free)  is like puer
pulcher  pulchra  pulchrum  (pretty)  is like ager

For the full declension in the three genders, see § 469. b. c.

94. Decline together the words vir liber, terra libera, frumentum liberum, puer pulcher, puella pulchra, oppidum pulchrum.

95. Italia

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 286.


1 In this selection note especially the emphasis as shown by the order of the words.  
2 orbis terrārum, of the world.  
3 Tiberim, the Tiber, accusative case.
96.

DIALOGUE

Marcus and Cornelius

C. Ubi est, Mārce, filius tuus? Estne in pulchrā terrā Italiā?
C. Est filius tuus cōpiārum Rōmānārum lēgātus?
M. Lēgātus nōn est, sed est apud legiōnāriōs.
C. Quae arma portat?
M. Scūtum magnum et lōri-cam dūram et galeam pulchram portat.
C. Quae tēla portat?
M. Gladium et pilum longum portat.
C. Amatne lēgātus filium tuum?
M. Amat, et saepe filiō meō praemia pulchra et praedam multam dat.
C. Ubi est terrā Germānōrum?
M. Terrā Germānōrum, Cornēli, est fīnitima Rhēnō, fluvīō magnō et altō.

1 est, before its subject, there is; so sunt, there are. Quae, what kind of, an interrogative adjective pronoun. What are the three possible translations of the present tense?
LESSON XIV

THE POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS

97. Observe the sentences

This is my shield
This shield is mine

In the first sentence my is a possessive adjective; in the second mine is a possessive pronoun, for it takes the place of a noun, this shield is mine being equivalent to this shield is my shield. Similarly, in Latin the possessives are sometimes adjectives and sometimes pronouns.

98. The possessives my, mine, your, yours, etc. are declined like adjectives of the first and second declensions.

Singular

1st Pers. meus, mea, meum
2d Pers. tuus, tua, tuum
3d Pers. suus, sua, suum

my, mine
your, yours
his (own), her (own), its (own)

Plural

1st Pers. noster, nostra, nostrum
2d Pers. vester, vestra, vestrum
3d Pers. suus, sua, suum

our, ours
your, yours
their (own), theirs

Note. Meus has the irregular vocative singular masculine mi, as mi fili, O my son.

a. The possessives agree with the name of the thing possessed in gender, number, and case. Compare the English and Latin in

Sextus is calling his boy
Julia is calling her boy

Sextus
Iulia

suum puerum vocat

Observe that suum agrees with puerum, and is unaffected by the gender of Sextus or Julia.

b. When your, yours, refers to one person, use tuus; when to more than one, vester; as,

Lesbia, your wreaths are pretty
Girls, your wreaths are pretty

Corōnae tuae, Lesbia, sunt pulchrael
Corōnae vestrae, puellae, sunt pulchrae
c. **Suus** is a reflexive possessive, that is, it usually stands in the predicate and regularly refers back to the subject. Thus, *Vir suōs servōs vocat* means *The man calls his (own) slaves*. Here *his* (suōs) refers to man (*vir*), and could not refer to any one else.

d. Possessives are used much less frequently than in English, being omitted whenever the meaning is clear without them. (Cf. § 22. a.) This is especially true of suus, -a, -um, which, when inserted, is more or less emphatic, like our *his own, her own*, etc.

99. **EXERCISES**

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 286.


II. 1. Our teacher praises Mark's industry. 2. My son Sextus is carrying his booty to the Roman camp. 3. Your good girls are giving aid to the sick and wretched. 4. There are frequent battles in our villages. 5. My son, where is the lieutenant's food? 6. The camp is mine, but the weapons are yours.

1 Not the dative. Why? 2 Here the adjectives *sick* and *wretched* are used like nouns. 3 Where should sunt stand? Cf. I. 2 above.
OF THE ABLATIVE DENOTING WITH

LESSON XV

THE ABLATIVE DENOTING WITH

100. Of the various relations denoted by the ablative case (§ 50) there is none more important than that expressed in English by the preposition with. This little word is not so simple as it looks. It does not always convey the same meaning, nor is it always to be translated by cum. This will become clear from the following sentences:

a. Mark is feeble with (for or because of) want of food
b. Diana kills the beasts with (or by) her arrows
c. Julia is with Sextus
d. The men fight with great steadiness

a. In sentence a, with want (of food) gives the cause of Mark’s feebleness. This idea is expressed in Latin by the ablative without a preposition, and the construction is called the ablative of cause:

Marcus est infirmus inopia cibi

b. In sentence b, with (or by) her arrows tells by means of what Diana kills the beasts. This idea is expressed in Latin by the ablative without a preposition, and the construction is called the ablative of means:

Diāna sagittis suis ferās necat

c. In sentence c we are told that Julia is not alone, but in company with Sextus. This idea is expressed in Latin by the ablative with the preposition cum, and the construction is called the ablative of accompaniment:

Iūlia est cum Sextō

d. In sentence d we are told how the men fight. The idea is one of manner. This is expressed in Latin by the ablative with cum, unless there is a modifying adjective present, in which case cum may be omitted. This construction is called the ablative of manner:

Virī (cum) cōnstantiā magnā pugnant

101. You are now able to form four important rules for the ablative denoting with:
102. **Rule. Ablative of Cause.** Cause is denoted by the ablative without a preposition. This answers the question Because of what?

103. **Rule. Ablative of Means.** Means is denoted by the ablative without a preposition. This answers the question By means of what? With what?

N.B. *Cum* must never be used with the ablative expressing cause or means.

104. **Rule. Ablative of Accompaniment.** Accompaniment is denoted by the ablative with *cum*. This answers the question With whom?

105. **Rule. Ablative of Manner.** The ablative with *cum* is used to denote the manner of an action. *Cum* may be omitted, if an adjective is used with the ablative. This answers the question How? In what manner?

106. What uses of the ablative do you discover in the following passage, and what question does each answer?

The soldiers marched to the fort with great speed and broke down the gate with blows of their muskets. The inhabitants, terrified by the din, attempted to cross the river with their wives and children, but the stream was swollen with (or by) the rain. Because of this many were swept away by the waters and only a few, almost overcome with fatigue, with great difficulty succeeded in gaining the farther shore.

107. **EXERCISES**

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 286.

I. *The Romans prepare for War.* Rōmānī, clārus Italiae populus, bellum parant. Ex agrīs suīs, vīcis, oppidisque magnō studiō virī validī ad arma properant. Iam lēgātī cum legionāriīs ex Italīā ad Rhēnum, fluvium Germānīae altum et lātum, properant, et servī equīs et carrīs cibum fūmentumque ad castra Rōmāna portant. Inopia bonōrum 5 telōrum īnfirmī sunt Germānī, sed Rōmānī armātī galeīs, lōricīs, scūtīs, gladiīs, pilīisque sunt validī.
II. 1. The sturdy farmers of Italy labor in the fields with great diligence. 2. Sextus, the lieutenant, and (his) son Mark are fighting with the Germans. 3. The Roman legionaries are armed with long spears. 4. Where is Lesbia, your maid, Sextus? Lesbia is with my friends in Galba's cottage. 5. Many are sick because of bad water and for lack of food. 6. The Germans, with (their) sons and daughters, are hastening with horses and wagons.

LESSON XVI

THE NINE IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

108. There are nine irregular adjectives of the first and second declensions which have a peculiar termination in the genitive and dative singular of all genders:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>masc.</th>
<th>fem.</th>
<th>neut.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nom.</td>
<td>nullus</td>
<td>nulla</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>nullī'us</td>
<td>nullī'us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>nūlī</td>
<td>nūlī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>nūllum</td>
<td>nūllam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abl.</td>
<td>nūllō</td>
<td>nūllā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Otherwise they are declined like bonus, -a, -um. Learn the list and the meaning of each:

- alius, alia, aliud, other, another (of several)
- alter, altera, alterum, the one, the other (of two)
- unus, -a, -um, one, alone; (in the plural) only
- ullus, -a, -um, any

109. PARADIGMS

SINGULAR

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>masc.</th>
<th>fem.</th>
<th>neut.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nom.</td>
<td>nullus</td>
<td>nulla</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>nullī'us</td>
<td>nullī'us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>nūlī</td>
<td>nūlī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>nūllum</td>
<td>nūllam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abl.</td>
<td>nūllō</td>
<td>nūllā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The plural is regular
a. Note the peculiar neuter singular ending in -d of alius. The genitive alius is rare. Instead of it use alterius, the genitive of alter.

b. These peculiar case endings are found also in the declension of pronouns (see §114). For this reason these adjectives are sometimes called the pronominal adjectives.

110. Learn the following idioms:

alter, -era, -erum . . . alter, -era, -erum, the one . . . the other (of two)
alis, -a, -ud . . . alius, -a, -ud, one . . . another (of any number)
aliī, -ae, -a . . . aliī, -ae, -a, some . . . others

EXAMPLES

1. Alterum oppidum est magnum, alterum parvum, the one town is large, the other small (of two towns).
2. Aliud oppidum est validum, aliud infirmum, one town is strong, another weak (of towns in general).
3. Aliī gladiōs, aliī scūta portant, some carry swords, others shields.

111. EXERCISES


Note. The pronominal adjectives, as you observe, regularly stand before and not after their nouns.

II. 1. The men of all Germany are preparing for war. 2. Some towns are great and others are small. 3. One boy likes chickens, another horses. 4. Already the booty of one town is in our fort. 5. Our whole village is suffering for (i.e. weak because of) lack of food. 6. The people are already hastening to the other town. 7. Among the Romans (there) is no lack of grain.
LESSON XVII

THE DEMONSTRATIVE IS, EA, ID

112. A demonstrative is a word that points out an object definitely, as this, that, these, those. Sometimes these words are pronouns, as, Do you hear these? and sometimes adjectives, as, Do you hear these men? In the former case they are called demonstrative pronouns, in the latter demonstrative adjectives.

113. Demonstratives are similarly used in Latin both as pronouns and as adjectives. The one used most is

is, masculine; ea, feminine; id, neuter

Singular \{ this that \}  Plural \{ these those \}

114. Is is declined as follows. Compare its declension with that of alius, § 109.

| Base e- | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| MASC. | FEM. | NEUT. | -MASC. | FEM. | NEUT. |
| Nom. | is | ea | id | ei (or iī) | eae | ea |
| Gen. | eius | eius | eius | eōrum | eārum | eōrum |
| Dat. | ei | ei | ei | eīs (or iīs) | eīs (or iīs) | eīs (or iīs) |
| Acc. | eum | eam | id | eōs | eās | ea |
| Abl. | eō | ea | eō | eīs (or iīs) | eīs (or iīs) | eīs (or iīs) |

Note that the base e- changes to i- in a few cases. The genitive singular eius is pronounced ehy'us. In the plural the forms with two i’s are preferred and the two i’s are pronounced as one. Hence, pronounce iī as i and iīs as is.

115. Besides being used as demonstrative pronouns and adjectives the Latin demonstratives are regularly used for the personal pronoun he, she, it. As a personal pronoun, then, is would have the following meanings:
116. Comparison between suus and is. We learned above (§ 98. c) that suus is a reflexive possessive. When his, her (poss.), its, their, do not refer to the subject of the sentence, we express his, her, its by eius, the genitive singular of is, ea, id; and their by the genitive plural, using eorum to refer to a masculine or neuter antecedent noun and earum to refer to a feminine one.

EXAMPLES

Galba calls his (own) son, Galba suum filium vocat
Galba calls his son (not his own, but another's), Galba eius filium vocat
Julia calls her (own) children, Iúlia suós liberós vocat
Julia calls her children (not her own, but another's), Iúlia eius liberós vocat
The men praise their (own) boys, virí suós puerós laudant
The men praise their boys (not their own, but others'), virí eorum puerós laudant

117. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 287.

1. He praises her, him, it, them. 2. This cart, that report, these teachers, those women, that abode, these abodes. 3. That strong garrison, among those weak and sick women, that want of firmness, those frequent plans.

4. The other woman is calling her chickens (her own). 5. Another woman is calling her chickens (not her own). 6. The Gaul praises
EXERCISES

his arms (*his own*). 7. The Gaul praises his arms (*not his own*). 8. This farmer often plows their fields. 9. Those wretched slaves long for their master (*their own*). 10. Those wretched slaves long for their master (*not their own*). 11. Free men love their own fatherland. 12. They love its villages and towns.

118. 

**DIALOGUE**

**CORNELIUS AND MARCUS**

M. *Quis est vir, Cornêli, cum puerō parvō? Estne Rōmānus et liber?*
C. *Rōmānus nōn est, Mārce. Is vir est servus et eius domicilium est in silvis Galliae.*

M. *Estne puer filius eius servi an alterīus?*
C. *Neutrius filius est puer. Is est filius lēgāti Sextī.*
M. *Quō puer cum eō servō properat?*
C. *Is cum servō properat ad lātōs Sextī agrōs.*

M. *Agricolaene sunt Gallī et patriae suae agrōs arant?*
C. *Nōn agricolae sunt. Bellum amant Gallī, nōn agrī cultūram.*

M. *Magister noster puerīs puellīisque grātās Gallōrum fābulās saepe narrat et laudat eōs saepe.*
C. *Mala est fortūna eōrum et saepe miserī servi multis cum lacrimis patriam suam désiderant.*

There are a number of departures from the normal order in this dialogue. Find them, and give the reason. When a noun is modified by both a genitive and an adjective, a favorite order of words is *adjective, genitive, noun*. A modifying genitive often stands between a preposition and its object.

Second Review, Lessons IX-XVII, §§ 506-509
LESSON XVIII

CONJUGATION

THE PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE TENSES OF SUM

119. The inflection of a verb is called its *conjugation* (cf. § 23). In English the verb has but few changes in form, the different meanings being expressed by the use of personal pronouns and auxiliaries, as, *I am carried, we have carried, they shall have carried*, etc. In Latin, on the other hand, instead of using personal pronouns and auxiliary verbs, the form changes with the meaning. In this way the Romans expressed differences in tense, mood, voice, person, and number.

120. The Tenses. The different forms of a verb referring to different times are called its *tenses*. The chief distinctions of time are present, past, and future:

1. The **present**, that is, *what is happening now, or what usually happens*, is expressed by

2. The **past**, that is, *what was happening, used to happen, happened, has happened, or had happened*, is expressed by

3. The **future**, that is, *what is going to happen*, is expressed by

121. The Moods. Verbs have inflection of *mood* to indicate the manner in which they express action. The moods of the Latin verb are the *indicative, subjunctive, imperative*, and *infinitive*.

a. A verb is in the *indicative* mood when it makes a statement or asks a question about something assumed as a fact. All the verbs we have used thus far are in the present indicative.

122. The Persons. There are three persons, as in English. The first person is the person speaking (*I sing*); the second person the person spoken to (*you sing*); the third person the person spoken of
(he sings). Instead of using personal pronouns for the different persons in the two numbers, singular and plural, the Latin verb uses the personal endings (cf. § 22a; 29). We have already learned that -t is the ending of the third person singular in the active voice and -nt of the third person plural. The complete list of personal endings of the active voice is as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st Pers.</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2d Pers.</td>
<td>thou or you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3d Pers.</td>
<td>he, she, it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>they</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

123. Most verbs form their moods and tenses after a regular plan and are called regular verbs. Verbs that depart from this plan are called irregular. The verb to be is irregular in Latin as in English. The present, imperfect, and future tenses of the indicative are inflected as follows:

Present Indicative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st Pers.</td>
<td>su-m, I am</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2d Pers.</td>
<td>e-s, you¹ are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3d Pers.</td>
<td>es-t, he, she, or it is</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Imperfect Indicative

| 1st Pers.      | er-a-m, I was | er-a'-mus, we were |
| 2d Pers.       | er-a-s, you were | er-a'-tis, you were |
| 3d Pers.       | er-a-t, he, she, or it was | er-a-nt, they were |

Future Indicative

| 1st Pers.      | er-ö, I shall be | er'-i-mus, we shall be |
| 2d Pers.       | er-i-s, you will be | er'-i-tis, you will be |
| 3d Pers.       | er-i-t, he will be | er-u-nt, they will be |

a. Be careful about vowel quantity and accent in these forms, and consult §§ 12.2; 14; 15.

¹ Observe that in English you are, you were, etc. may be either singular or plural. In Latin the singular and plural forms are never the same.
"STABIANA PORTA URBEM INGRESSI SUNT"
(See page 208)
124. **DIALOGUE**

**THE BOYS SEXTUS AND MARCUS**

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 287.

S. *Ubi es, Märce? Ubi est Quīntus? Ubi estis, amīci?*
M. *Cum Quīntō, Sexte, in silvā sum. Nōn sōlī sumus; sunt in silvā multī alī puerī.*

S. *Nunc laetus es, sed nūper nōn laetus erās. Cūr miser erās?*
M. *Miser eram quia amīci meī erant in aliō vīcō et eram sōlus.*

*Nunc sum apud sociōs meōs. Nunc laeti sumus et erimus.*

S. *Erātisne in lūdō hodiē?*
M. *Hodiē nōn erāmus in lūdō, quod magister erat aeger.*

S. *Eritisne mox in lūdō?*
M. *Amīci meī ibi erunt, sed ego (I) nōn erō.*

S. *Cūr nōn ibi eris? Magister, saepe īrātus, inopiam tuam studi diligentiaeque nōn laudat.*

M. *Nūper aeger eram et nunc īnfirmus sum.*

125. **EXERCISE**

1. *You are, you were, you will be, (sing. and plur.).* 2. I am, I was, I shall be. 3. He is, he was, he will be. 4. We are, we were, we shall be. 5. They are, they were, they will be.

6. *Why were you not in school to-day? I was sick.* 7. Lately he was a sailor, now he is a farmer, soon he will be a teacher. 8. To-day I am happy, but lately I was wretched. 9. The teachers were happy because of the boys’ industry.
LESSON XIX

THE FOUR REGULAR CONJUGATIONS • PRESENT ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF AMÔ AND MONEÔ

126. There are four conjugations of the regular verbs. These conjugations are distinguished from each other by the final vowel of the present conjugation-stem. This vowel is called the distinguishing vowel, and is best seen in the present infinitive.

Below is given the present infinitive of a verb of each conjugation, the present stem, and the distinguishing vowel.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conjugation</th>
<th>Pres. Infin.</th>
<th>Pres. Stem</th>
<th>Distinguishing Vowel</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I.</td>
<td>amā're, to love</td>
<td>amā-</td>
<td>ā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II.</td>
<td>mone're, to advise</td>
<td>monē-</td>
<td>ē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III.</td>
<td>re'gēre, to rule</td>
<td>regē-</td>
<td>ē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV.</td>
<td>audī're, to hear</td>
<td>audī-</td>
<td>ĩ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. Note that the present stem of each conjugation is found by dropping -re, the ending of the present infinitive.

Note. The present infinitive of sum is esse, and es- is the present stem.

127. From the present stem are formed the present, imperfect, and future tenses.

128. The inflection of the Present Active Indicative of the first and of the second conjugation is as follows:

\[
\begin{align*}
| & a'mō, amā're (love) & & mo'neō, monē're (advise) & \\
\text{Pres. Stem} & amā- & & monē- & \\
\text{Sing.} & \begin{align*}
1. & a'mō, I love & & mo'neō, I advise & -ō \\
2. & a'mās, you love & & mo'nēs, you advise & -s \\
3. & a'mat, he (she, it) loves & & mo'nēt, he (she, it) advises & -t \\
\end{align*} \\
\text{Plur.} & \begin{align*}
1. & amā'mus, we love & & monē'mus, we advise & -mus \\
2. & amā'tis, you love & & monē'tis, you advise & -tis \\
3. & amā'nt, they love & & mo'nent, they advise & -nt \\
\end{align*}
\end{align*}
\]

\[1\] The stem is the body of a word to which the terminations are attached. It is often identical with the base (cf. § 58). If, however, the stem ends in a vowel, the latter does not appear in the base, but is variously combined with the inflectional terminations. This point is further explained in § 230.
1. The present tense is inflected by adding the personal endings to the present stem, and its first person uses -ō and not -m. The form amō is for amā-ō, the two vowels ā-ō contracting to ō. In moneō there is no contraction. Nearly all regular verbs ending in -eō belong to the second conjugation.

2. Note that the long final vowel of the stem is shortened before another vowel (monē-ō = mo’neō), and before final -t (amāt, monēt) and -nt (amānt, monēnt). Compare § 12. 2.

129. Like amō and moneō inflect the present active indicative of the following verbs:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicative Present</th>
<th>Infinitive Present</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a’rō, I plow</td>
<td>arā’re, to plow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cu’rō, I care for</td>
<td>cūrā’re, to care for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*dē’leō, I destroy</td>
<td>dēlē’re, to destroy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēsī’derō, I long for</td>
<td>dēsiderā’re, to long for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dō,2 I give</td>
<td>da’re, to give</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*ha’beō, I have</td>
<td>habē’re, to have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ha’bitō, I live, I dwell</td>
<td>habitā’re, to live, to dwell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*iu’beō, I order</td>
<td>iubē’re, to order</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>labō’rō, I labor</td>
<td>labōrā’re, to labor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lau’dō, I praise</td>
<td>laudā’re, to praise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mātū’rō, I hasten</td>
<td>māturā’re, to hasten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*mo’veō, I move</td>
<td>movē’re, to move</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nār’rō, I tell</td>
<td>nārra’re, to tell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ne’cō, I kill</td>
<td>necā’re, to kill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nūn’tiō, I announce</td>
<td>nūntiā’re, to announce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pa’rō, I prepare</td>
<td>parā’re, to prepare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>por’tō, I carry</td>
<td>portā’re, to carry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro’perō, I hasten</td>
<td>properā’re, to hasten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pug’nō, I fight</td>
<td>pugnā’re, to fight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*vi’deō, I see</td>
<td>vidē’re, to see</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vo’cō, I call</td>
<td>vocā’re, to call</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

130. The Translation of the Present. In English there are three ways of expressing present action. We may say, for example, I live, I am living, or I do live. In Latin the one expression habitō covers all three of these expressions.

1 The only new verbs in this list are the five of the second conjugation which are starred. Learn their meanings. 2 Observe that in dō, dāre, the a is short, and that the present stem is dā- and not dā-. The only forms of dō that have a long are dās (pres. indic.), dā (pres. inv.), and dāns (pres. part.).
131. **EXERCISES**

Give the **voice**, **mood**, **tense**, **person**, and **number** of each form.


N.B. Observe that the personal ending is of prime importance in translating a Latin verb form. Give that your first attention.

II. 1. We plow, we are plowing, we do plow. 2. They care for, they are caring for, they do care for. 3. You give, you are having, you do have (sing.). 4. We destroy, I do long for, they are living. 5. He calls, they see, we are telling. 6. We do fight, we order, he is moving, he prepares. 7. They are laboring, we kill, you announce.

**LESSON XX**

**IMPERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF AMŌ AND MONEŌ**

132. **Tense Signs.** Instead of using auxiliary verbs to express differences in tense, like *was, shall, will*, etc., Latin adds to the verb stem certain elements that have the force of auxiliary verbs. These are called **tense signs.**

133. **Formation and Inflection of the Imperfect.** The tense sign of the imperfect is -bā-, which is added to the present stem. The imperfect consists, therefore, of three parts:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Stem</th>
<th>Tense Sign</th>
<th>Personal Ending</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amā-</td>
<td>ba-</td>
<td>m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loving</td>
<td>was</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The inflection is as follows:

**Conjugation I**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Conjugation II</th>
<th>Personal Endings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. amā'bam, I was loving</td>
<td>monē'bam, I was advising</td>
<td>-m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. amā'bas, you were loving</td>
<td>monē'bas, you were advising</td>
<td>-s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. amā'bat, he was loving</td>
<td>monē'bat, he was advising</td>
<td>-t</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
IMPERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PLURAL</th>
<th>PERSONAL ENDINGS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amābā’mus, we were loving</td>
<td>monēbā’mus, we were advising</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amābā’tis, you were loving</td>
<td>monēbā’tis, you were advising</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amā’bant, they were loving</td>
<td>monē’bant, they were advising</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. amaba’mus, we were loving
2. amaba’tis, you were loving
3. amab’bant, they were loving

a. Note that the ā of the tense sign -bā- is shortened before -nt, and before m and t when final. (Cf. § 12. 2.)

In a similar manner inflect the verbs given in § 129.

134. Meaning of the Imperfect. The Latin imperfect describes an act as going on or progressing in past time, like the English past-progressive tense (as, I was walking). It is the regular tense used to describe a past situation or condition of affairs.

135. EXERCISES


II. i. You were having (sing. and plur.), we were killing, they were laboring. 2. He was moving, we were ordering, we were fighting. 3. We were telling, they were seeing, he was calling. 4. They were living, I was longing for, we were destroying. 5. You were giving, you were moving, you were announcing, (sing. and plur.). 6. They were caring for, he was plowing, we were praising.

136. Ni’obe and Her Children

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 287.


Note. The words Niōbē, Thēbānōrum, and marītī will be found in the general vocabulary. Translate the selection without looking up any other words.

1 Ablative of cause. 2 Translate had; it denotes a past situation. (See § 134.) 3 Dative, cf. § 43.
LESSON XXI

FUTURE ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF *AMŌ* AND *MONEŌ*

137. The tense sign of the Future Indicative in the first and second conjugations is -bi-. This is joined to the present stem of the verb and followed by the personal ending, as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Stem</th>
<th>Tense Sign</th>
<th>Personal Ending</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amā-</td>
<td>bi-</td>
<td>s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>love</td>
<td>will</td>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

138. The Future Active Indicative is inflected as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conjugation I</th>
<th>Conjugation II</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Singular</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. amāˈbō, <em>I shall love</em></td>
<td>monēˈbō, <em>I shall advise</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. amāˈbis, <em>you will love</em></td>
<td>monēˈbis, <em>you will advise</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. amāˈbit, <em>he will love</em></td>
<td>monēˈbit, <em>he will advise</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLURAL</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. amāˈbimus, <em>we shall love</em></td>
<td>monēˈbimus, <em>we shall advise</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. amāˈbitis, <em>you will love</em></td>
<td>monēˈbitis, <em>you will advise</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. amāˈbunt, <em>they will love</em></td>
<td>monēˈbunt, <em>they will advise</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. The personal endings are as in the present. The ending -bō in the first person singular is contracted from -bi-o. The -bi- appears as -bu- in the third person plural. Note that the inflection is like that of erō, the future of sum. *Pay especial attention to the accent.*

In a similar manner inflect the verbs given in § 129.

139. **EXERCISES**


II. 1. We shall announce, we shall see, I shall hasten. 2. I shall carry, he will plow, they will care for. 3. You will announce, you will
move, you will give, *(sing. and plur.)*. 4. We shall fight, we shall destroy, I shall long for. 5. He will call, they will see, you will tell *(plur.)*. 6. They will dwell, we shall order, he will praise. 7. They will labor, we shall kill, you will have *(sing. and plur.)*, he will destroy.

140. **Ni'obe and her Children (Concluded)**

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 288.


**Note.** Consult the general vocabulary for Apollō, inquit, duōs, and quattuordecim. Try to remember the meaning of all the other words.

**Lesson XXII**

**Review of Verbs • The Dative with Adjectives**

141. Review the present, imperfect, and future active indicative, both orally and in writing, of *sum* and the verbs in § 129.

142. We learned in § 43 for what sort of expressions we may expect the dative, and in § 44 that one of its commonest uses is with *verbs* to express the indirect object. It is also very common with *adjectives* to express the object toward which the quality denoted by the adjective is directed. We have already had a number of cases

---

1 Observe the force of the imperfect here, *used to prepare, were in the habit of preparing; so amābant denotes a past situation of affairs. (See § 134.)* 2 Ablative of cause. 3 Ablative of means. 4 This may be either manner or accompaniment. It is often impossible to draw a sharp line between means, manner, and accompaniment. The Romans themselves drew no sharp distinction. It was enough for them if the general idea demanded the ablative case.
where grātus, agreeable to, was so followed by a dative; and in the last lesson we had molestus, annoying to, followed by that case. The usage may be more explicitly stated by the following rule:

143. Rule. Dative with Adjectives. The dative is used with adjectives to denote the object toward which the given quality is directed. Such are, especially, those meaning near, also fit, friendly, pleasing, like, and their opposites.

144. Among such adjectives memorize the following:

- idōneus, -a, -um, fit, suitable (for)
- amīcus, -a, -um, friendly (to)
- inimīcus, -a, -um, hostile (to)
- grātus, -a, -um, pleasing (to), agreeable (to)
- molestus, -a, -um, annoying (to), troublesome (to)
- finitimus, -a, -um, neighboring (to)
- proximus, -a, -um, nearest, next (to)

145. EXERCISES


II. 1. The sacrifices of the people will be annoying to the haughty queen. 2. The sacrifices were pleasing not only to Latona but also to Diana. 3. Diana will destroy those hostile to Latona. 4. The punishment of the haughty queen was pleasing to the goddess Diana. 5. The Romans will move their forces to a large field 1 suitable for a camp. 6. Some of the allies were friendly to the Romans, others to the Gauls.

1 Why not the dative?
146. Cornelia and her Jewels

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 288.


Note. Can you translate the paragraph above? There are no new words.

LESSON XXIII

PRESENT ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF REGŌ AND AUDIŌ

147. As we learned in §126, the present stem of the third conjugation ends in -ē, and of the fourth in -ī. The inflection of the Present Indicative is as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conjugation III</th>
<th>Conjugation IV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>re'gō, re'gere (rule)</td>
<td>au'diō, au'di're (hear)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pres. Stem regē-</td>
<td>Pres. Stem audī-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SINGULAR**

1. re'gō, I rule
2. re'gis, you rule
3. re'git, he (she, it) rules

**PLURAL**

1. re'gimus, we rule
2. re'gitis, you rule
3. re'gunt, they rule

1. The personal endings are the same as before.
2. The final short -e- of the stem rege- combines with the -ō in the first person, becomes -u- in the third person plural, and becomes -i- elsewhere. The inflection is like that of erō, the future of sum.

1 Observe that all the imperfects denote continued or progressive action, or describe a state of affairs. (Cf. §134.)
3. In audiō the personal endings are added regularly to the stem audi-. In the third person plural -u- is inserted between the stem and the personal ending, as audi-u-nt. Note that the long vowel of the stem is shortened before final -t just as in amō and moneō. (Cf. § 12. 2.)

Note that -i- is always short in the third conjugation and long in the fourth, excepting where long vowels are regularly shortened. (Cf. § 12. 1, 2.)

148. Like regō and audiō inflect the present active indicative of the following verbs:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicative Present</th>
<th>Infinitive Present</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>agō, I drive</td>
<td>agere, to drive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dīcō, I say</td>
<td>dīcere, to say</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dūcō, I lead</td>
<td>dūcere, to lead</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mittō, I send</td>
<td>mittere, to send</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mūniō, I fortify</td>
<td>mūnire, to fortify</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reperīō, I find</td>
<td>reperīre, to find</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>venīō, I come</td>
<td>venire, to come</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

149. EXERCISES


II. 1. What do they find? Whom do they hear? Why does he come? 2. Whose camp are we fortifying? To whom does he say? What are we saying? 3. I am driving, you are leading, they are hearing. 4. You send, he says, you fortify (sing. and plur.). 5. I am coming, we find, they send. 6. They lead, you drive, he does fortify. 7. You lead, you find, you rule, (all plur.).

150. CORNELIA AND HER JEWELS (Concluded)

Proximum domiciliō Cornēliae erat pulchrae Campānae domicilium. Campāna erat superba nōn sōlum fōrmā suā sed maxīmē ērnāmentis suis. Ea laudābat semper. "Habēsē tu ūlla ērnāmenta, Cornēlia?"

Note. The only new words here are campāna, semper, and tū.

**"PUERI MEI SUNT MEA ORNAMENTA"**

**LESSON XXIV**

**IMPERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF REGŌ AND AUDĪO • THE DATIVE WITH SPECIAL INTRANSITIVE VERBS**

151. **PARADIGMS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Conjugation III</strong></th>
<th><strong>Conjugation IV</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>SINGULAR</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. regē’bam, I was ruling</td>
<td>audiē’bam, I was hearing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. regē’bās, you were ruling</td>
<td>audiē’bās, you were hearing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. regē’bat, he was ruling</td>
<td>audiē’bat, he was hearing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PLURAL</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. regēbā’mus, we were ruling</td>
<td>audiēbā’mus, we were hearing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. regēbā’tis, you were ruling</td>
<td>audiēbā’tis, you were hearing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. regē’bant, they were ruling</td>
<td>audiē’bant, they were hearing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. The tense sign is -bā-, as in the first two conjugations.
2. Observe that the final -ē- of the stem is lengthened before the tense sign -bā-. This makes the imperfect of the third conjugation just like the imperfect of the second (cf. monēbam and regebam).
3. In the fourth conjugation -ē- is inserted between the stem and the tense sign -bā- (audi-ē-ba-m).
4. In a similar manner inflect the verbs given in § 148.

152. EXERCISES


II. 1. They were leading, you were driving (sing. and plur.), he was fortifying. 2. They were sending, we were finding, I was coming. 3. You were sending, you were fortifying, (sing. and plur.), he was saying. 4. They were hearing, you were leading (sing. and plur.), I was driving. 5. We were saying, he was sending, I was fortifying. 6. They were coming, he was hearing, I was finding. 7. You were ruling (sing. and plur.), we were coming, they were ruling.

153. The Dative with Special Intransitive Verbs. We learned above (§ 20. a) that a verb which does not admit of a direct object is called an intransitive verb. Many such verbs, however, are of such meaning that they can govern an indirect object, which will, of course, be in the dative case (§ 45). Learn the following list of intransitive verbs with their meanings. In each case the dative indirect object is the person or thing to which a benefit, injury, or feeling is directed. (Cf. § 43.)

creōdo, credere, believe (give belief to)  
faveō, favēre, favor (show favor to)  
noceō, nocēre, injure (do harm to)  
pāreō, pāre, obey (give obedience to)  
persuādeō, persuādere, persuade (offer persuasion to)  
resistō, resistere, resist (offer resistance to)  
studēō, studēre, be eager for (give attention to)
154. **Rule. Dative with Intransitive Verbs.** The dative of the indirect object is used with the intransitive verbs crēdō, faveō, noceō, pāreō, persuādeō, resistō, studeō, and others of like meaning.

155. **Exercise**


**Lesson XXV**

**Future Active Indicative of Regō and Audiō**

156. In the future tense of the third and fourth conjugations we meet with a new tense sign. Instead of using -bi-, as in the first and second conjugations, we use -ā- in the first person singular and -ē- in the rest of the tense. In the third conjugation the final -ē- of the stem is dropped before this tense sign; in the fourth conjugation the final -ī- of the stem is retained.

157. **Paradigms**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conjugation III</th>
<th>Conjugation IV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>SINGULAR</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. re'gam, I shall rule</td>
<td>au'diam, I shall hear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. re'gēs, you will rule</td>
<td>au'diēs, you will hear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. re'get, he will rule</td>
<td>au'diet, he will hear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PLURAL</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. regē'mus, we shall rule</td>
<td>audiē'mus, we shall hear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. regē'tis, you will rule</td>
<td>audiē'tis, you will hear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. re'gent, they will rule</td>
<td>au'dient, they will hear</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 The -ā- is shortened before -m final, and -ē- before -t final and before -nt. (Cf. § 12. 2.)
2 The -ī- is, of course, shortened, being before another vowel. (Cf. § 12. 1.)
1. Observe that the future of the third conjugation is like the present of the second, excepting in the first person singular.
2. In the same manner inflect the verbs given in § 148.

158. **EXERCISES**


II. 1. I shall find, he will hear, they will come. 2. I shall fortify, he will send, we shall say. 3. I shall drive, you will lead, they will hear. 4. You will send, you will fortify, (sing. and plur.), he will say. 5. I shall come, we shall find, they will send.

6. Who will believe the story? I shall believe the story. 7. Whose friends do you favor? We favor our friends. 8. Who will resist our weapons? Sextus will resist your weapons. 9. Who will persuade him? They will persuade him. 10. Why were you injuring my horse? I was not injuring your horse. 11. Whom does a good slave obey? A good slave obeys his master. 12. Our men were eager for another battle.

**LESSON XXVI**

**VERBS IN -IŌ OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION • THE IMPERATIVE MOOD**

159. There are a few common verbs ending in -iō which do not belong to the fourth conjugation, as you might infer, but to the third. The fact that they belong to the third conjugation is shown by the ending of the infinitive. (Cf. § 126.) Compare

- audiō, audi're (hear), fourth conjugation
- capiō, ca'pere (take), third conjugation

1 Remember that quis, who, is singular in number. 2 Express by ego, because it is emphatic.
160. The present, imperfect, and future active indicative of *capiō* are inflected as follows:

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\text{PRESENT} & \text{IMPERFECT} & \text{FUTURE} \\
\hline
\text{SINGULAR} & & \\
1. ca'pio & capiē'bam & ca'piam \\
2. ca'pis & capiē'bās & ca'piēs \\
3. ca'pit & capiē'bat & ca'piet \\
\text{PLURAL} & & \\
1. ca'pimus & capiēbā'mus & capiē'mus \\
2. ca'pitis & capiēbā'tis & capiē'tis \\
3. ca'piunt & capiē'bat & ca'pient \\
\end{array}
\]

1. Observe that *capiō* and the other -īō verbs follow the fourth conjugation wherever in the fourth conjugation *two vowels occur in succession*. (Cf. *capiō*, *audiō*; *capiunt*, *audiunt*; and all the imperfect and future.) All other forms are like the third conjugation. (Cf. *capis*, *regis*; *capit*, *regit*; etc.)

2. Like *capiō*, inflect

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\text{faciō, facere, make, do} & \text{iaciō, iacere, hurl} \\
\text{fugiō, fugere, flee} & \text{rapiō, rapere, seize} \\
\end{array}
\]

161. The Imperative Mood. The imperative mood expresses a command; as, *come! send!* The present tense of the imperative is used only in the second person, singular and plural. The singular in the active voice is regularly the same in form as the present stem. The plural is formed by adding *-te* to the singular.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conjugation</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I.</td>
<td>amā, love thou</td>
<td>amā'te, love ye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II.</td>
<td>monē, advise thou</td>
<td>monē'te, advise ye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III.</td>
<td>(a) rege, rule thou</td>
<td>re'gite, rule ye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(b) cape, take thou</td>
<td>ca'pite, take ye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV.</td>
<td>audī, hear thou</td>
<td>audi'te, hear ye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sum (irregular)</td>
<td>es, be thou</td>
<td>este, be ye</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. In the third conjugation the final *-ē* of the stem becomes *-ī* in the plural.
2. The verbs dícō, say; dúcō, lead; and faciō, make, have the irregular forms dic, dúc, and fac in the singular.

3. Give the present active imperative, singular and plural, of veniō, dúcō, vocō, doceō, laudō, dícō, sedeō, agō, faciō, mūniō, mittō; rapiō.

162. EXERCISES


II. 1. The goddess will seize her arms and will hurl her weapons. 2. With her weapons she will destroy many beasts. 3. She will give aid to the weak. 4. She will fly to many lands and the beasts will flee. 5. Romans, tell the famous story to your children.

Third Review, Lessons XVIII-XXVI, §§ 510-512

LESSON XXVII

THE PASSIVE VOICE • PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE OF AMÔ AND MONEÔ

163. The Voices. Thus far the verb forms have been in the active voice; that is, they have represented the subject as performing an action; as,

The lion — killed — the hunter

A verb is said to be in the passive voice when it represents its subject as receiving an action; as,

The lion — was killed — by the hunter

Note the direction of the arrows.

1 Plural. An adjective used as a noun. (Cf. § 99. II. 3.) 2 Imperative. The imperative generally stands first, as in English.
164. Passive Personal Endings. In the passive voice we use a different set of personal endings. They are as follows:

**Passive Personal Endings**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Sing.</th>
<th>Plur.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>-r, I</td>
<td>1. -mur, we</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>-ris, -re, you</td>
<td>2. -mini, you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>-tur, he, she, it</td>
<td>3. -ntur, they</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*a.* Observe that the letter -r appears somewhere in all but one of the endings. This is sometimes called the passive sign.

### PARADIGMS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>amō, amāre</th>
<th>moneō, monēre</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres. Stem</td>
<td>amā-</td>
<td>monē-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Present Indicative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>a'mor, I am loved</th>
<th>mo'neor, I am advised</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sing.</td>
<td>amā'ris or amā're, you are loved</td>
<td>monē'ris or monē're, you are advised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amā'tur, he is loved</td>
<td>monē'tur, he is advised</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amā'mur, we are loved</td>
<td>monē'mur, we are advised</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amā'mini, you are loved</td>
<td>monē'mini, you are advised</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a'mbur, they are loved</td>
<td>monen'bur, they are advised</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Imperfect Indicative (Tense Sign -bā-)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>amā'bar, I was being loved</th>
<th>monē'bar, I was being advised</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sing.</td>
<td>amābā'ris or amābā're, you were being loved</td>
<td>monēbā'ris or monēbā're, you were being advised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amābā'tur, he was being loved</td>
<td>monēbā'tur, he was being advised</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amābā'mur, we were being loved</td>
<td>monēbā'mur, we were being advised</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amābā'mini, you were being loved</td>
<td>monēbā'mini, you were being advised</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāban'tur, they were being loved</td>
<td>monēban'tur, they were being advised</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

1 In the present the personal ending of the first person singular is -or.
EXERCISES

FUTURE (TENSE SIGN -bi-)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>Plur.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amā'bor, I shall be loved</td>
<td>monē'bor, I shall be advised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amā'beris or amā'bere, you will be loved</td>
<td>monē'beris or monē'-bere, you will be advised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amā'bitur, he will be loved</td>
<td>monē'bitur, he will be advised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amā'bimur, we shall be loved</td>
<td>monē'bimur, we shall be advised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amābi'mini, you will be loved</td>
<td>monēbi'mini, you will be advised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amābun'tur, they will be loved</td>
<td>monēbun'tur, they will be advised</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. The tense sign and the personal endings are added as in the active.
2. In the future the tense sign -bi- appears as -bo- in the first person, -be- in the second, singular number, and as -bu- in the third person plural.
3. Inflect laudō, necō, portō, moveō, dēleō, iubeō, in the present, imperfect, and future indicative, active and passive.

166. Intransitive verbs, such as māturō, I hasten; habitō, I dwell, do not have a passive voice with a personal subject.

167. EXERCISES

I. 1. Laudāris or laudāre, laudās, datur, dat. 2. Dabitur, dabit, vidēmini, vidētis. 3. Vocābat, vocābatur, dēlebitis, dēlebimini. 4. Parābātur, parābat, cūrās, cūrāris or cūrāre. 5. Portābantur, portābant, vidēbimur, vidēbimus. 6. Iubēris or iubēre, iubēs, laudābāris or laudābāre, laudābās. 7. Movēberis or movēbere, movēbis, dabantur, dabant. 8. Dēlentur, dēlent, parābāmur, parābāmus.

II. 1. We prepare, we are prepared, I shall be called, I shall call, you were carrying, you were being carried. 2. I see, I am seen, it was being announced, he was announcing, they will order, they will be ordered. 3. You will be killed, you will kill, you move, you are moved, we are praising, we are being praised. 4. I am called, I call,
EXERCISES

you will have, you are cared for. 5. They are seen, they see, we were
teaching, we were being taught, they will move, they will be moved.

168. Per' seus and Androm'eda

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 288.

Perseus filius erat Iovis,\(^1\) maximi\(^2\) deorum. De eo multas fābulās
narrant poētae. Eī fāvant dei, eī magica arma et ālās dant. Eīs tēlīs
armātus et ālīs frētus ad multās terrās volābat et mōnstra saevā
dēlēbat et miserīs īnfirmisque auxilium dabat.

\(^1\) Iovis, the genitive of Iuppiter. \(^2\) Used substantively, the greatest. So
below, l. 4, miserīs and īnfirmīs are used substantively.

**LESSON XXVIII**

**PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF REGŌ AND AUDĪŌ**

169. Review the present, imperfect, and future indicative active of regō and audīō, and learn the passive of the same tenses (§§ 490, 491).

a. Observe that the tense signs of the imperfect and future are the same as in the active voice, and that the passive personal endings (§ 164) are added instead of the active ones.

b. Note the slight irregularity in the second person singular present of the third conjugation. There the final -ē of the stem is not changed to -i-, as it is in the active. We therefore have re'geris or re'gere, not re'giris, re'gire.

c. Inflect agō, dico, dūcō, mūniō, reperīō, in the present, imperfect, and future indicative, active and passive.

170. **EXERCISES**

I. 1. Agebat, agebātur, mittēbat, mittēbātur, dūcēbat. 2. Agunt, aguntur, mittuntur, mittunt, mūniunt. 3. Mittor, mittar, mittam, dūcēre, dūcere. 4. Dicēmur, dicimus, dīcemus, dicimur, mūniēbāmini. 5. Dūcitur, dūcimīnī, reperīmur, reperiar, agitur. 6. Agēbāmus, agēbāmur, reperīris, reperīēmini. 7. Mūnīminī, veniēbam, dūcēbar,

---

\(^1\) Pronounce in two syllables, Cēpheus.  
\(^2\) Ei, at him, dative with irātus.  
\(^3\) The present is often used, as in English, in speaking of a past action, in order to make the story more vivid and exciting.

II. 1. I was being driven, I was driving, we were being led, he says, it is said. 2. I shall send, I shall be sent, you will find, you will be found, they lead, they are led. 3. I am found, we are led, they are driven, you were being led (sing. and plur.). 4. We shall drive, we shall be driven, he leads, he is being led, they will come, they will be fortified. 5. They were ruling, they were being ruled, you will send, you will be sent, you are sent, (sing. and plur.). 6. He was being led, he will come, you are said (sing. and plur.).

171. Perseus and Andromeda (Continued)

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 288.


LESSON XXIX

PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF -īō VERBS · PRESENT PASSIVE INFINITIVE AND IMPERATIVE

172. Review the active voice of capiō, present, imperfect, and future, and learn the passive of the same tenses (§ 492).

a. The present forms capior and capiuntur are like audior, audiuntur, and the rest of the tense is like regor.

b. In like manner inflect the passive of iaciō and rapiō.

173. The Infinitive. The infinitive mood gives the general meaning of the verb without person or number; as, amāre, to love. Infinitive means unlimited. The forms of the other moods, being limited by person and number, are called the finite, or limited, verb forms.
174. The forms of the Present Infinitive, active and passive, are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I.</td>
<td>ama-</td>
<td>ama're, to love</td>
<td>ama'ri, to be loved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II.</td>
<td>monē-</td>
<td>monē're, to advise</td>
<td>monē'ri, to be advised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III.</td>
<td>rege-</td>
<td>re'gere, to rule</td>
<td>re'gi, to be ruled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV.</td>
<td>cape-</td>
<td>ca'pere, to take</td>
<td>ca'pi, to be taken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>audī-</td>
<td>audī're, to hear</td>
<td>audī'ri, to be heard</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Observe that to form the present active infinitive we add -re to the present stem.
   a. The present infinitive of sum is esse. There is no passive.

2. Observe that the present passive infinitive is formed from the active by changing final -e to -i, except in the third conjugation, which changes final -ere to -i.

3. Give the active and passive present infinitives of doceō, sedeō, volō, curō, mittō, ducō, muniō, reperio, iacio, rapiō.

175. The forms of the Present Imperative, active and passive, are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active¹</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CONJ.</td>
<td>SING.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I.</td>
<td>a'ma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II.</td>
<td>mo'nē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III.</td>
<td>re'ge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ca'pe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV.</td>
<td>au'di</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Observe that the second person singular of the present passive imperative is like the present active infinitive, and that both singular and plural are like the second person singular² and plural, respectively, of the present passive indicative.

2. Give the present imperative, both active and passive, of the verbs in §174. 3.

¹ For the sake of comparison the active is repeated from §161.    ² That is, using the personal ending -re. A form like amā're may be either indicative, infinitive, or imperative.
EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 289.


II. 1. Fly thou, to be cared for, be ye sent, lead thou. 2. To lead, to be led, be ye seized, fortify thou. 3. To be hurled, to fly, send thou, to be found. 4. To be sent, be ye led, to hurl, to be taken. 5. Find thou, hear ye, be ye ruled, to be fortified.

LESSON XXX

SYNOPSISES IN THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS · THE ABLATIVE DENOTING FROM

177. You should learn to give rapidly synopses of the verbs you have had, as follows:  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conjugation I</th>
<th>Conjugation II</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Indicative</strong></td>
<td><strong>Indicative</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pres. a’mō</td>
<td>active</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperf. amā’bam</td>
<td>passive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. amā’bō</td>
<td>active</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>passive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Synopses should be given not only in the first person, but in other persons as well, particularly in the third singular and plural.
### Conjugation I

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>a'mā</td>
<td>amā're</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Conjugation II

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>mo'nē</td>
<td>monē're</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Conjugation III

#### Indicative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>re'gō</td>
<td>re'gor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperf.</td>
<td>regē'bam</td>
<td>regē'bar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>re'gam</td>
<td>re'gar</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>ca'pio</td>
<td>ca'pior</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperative</td>
<td>ca'pe</td>
<td>ca'pere</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Conjugation IV

#### Indicative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>au'diō</td>
<td>au'dior</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperf.</td>
<td>audiē'bam</td>
<td>audiē'bar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>au'diam</td>
<td>au'diar</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>audi're</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>audi're</td>
<td>audi'rī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Give the synopsis of *rapio, mūniō, reperiō, doceō, videō, dīcō, agō, laudō, portō*, and vary the person and number.

178. We learned in §50 that one of the three relations covered by the ablative case is expressed in English by the preposition *from*. This is sometimes called the *separative ablative*, and it has a number of special uses. You have already grown familiar with the first mentioned below.
179. **Rule. Ablative of the Place From.** *The place from which is expressed by the ablative with the prepositions ā or ab, ē or ex.*

Agricolae ex agrīs veniunt, *the farmers come from the fields*

- ā or ab denotes *from near a place*; ē or ex, *out from it*; and ē, *down from it*. This may be represented graphically as follows:

\[ \begin{align*}
&\text{ē or ex} \\
&\text{Place} \\
&\text{ā or ab} \\
&\downarrow \text{dē}
\end{align*} \]

180. **Rule. Ablative of Separation.** *Words expressing separation or deprivation require an ablative to complete their meaning.*

- If the separation is *actual* and *literal* of one material thing from another, the preposition ā or ab, ē or ex, or ē is generally used. If no actual motion takes place of one thing from another, no preposition is necessary.

(a) **Perseus terram ā mōnstrīs liberat**  
*Perseus frees the land from monsters* (literal separation — actual motion is expressed)

(b) **Perseus terram trīstitiā liberat**  
*Perseus frees the land from sorrow* (figurative separation — no actual motion is expressed)

181. **Rule. Ablative of the Personal Agent.** *The word expressing the person from whom an action starts, when not the subject, is put in the ablative with the preposition ā or ab.*

- In this construction the English translation of ā, ab is *by* rather than *from*. This ablative is regularly used with passive verbs to indicate the *person by whom the act was performed.*

Mōnstrum ā Perseō necātur, *the monster is being slain by (lit. from) Perseus*
b. Note that the active form of the above sentence would be Perseus mónstrum necat, Perseus is slaying the monster. In the passive the object of the active verb becomes the subject, and the subject of the active verb becomes the ablative of the personal agent, with ā or ab.

c. Distinguish carefully between the ablative of means and the ablative of the personal agent. Both are often translated into English by the preposition by. (Cf. § 100. b.) Means is a thing; the agent or actor is a person. The ablative of means has no preposition. The ablative of the personal agent has ā or ab. Compare

Fera sagittā necātur, the wild beast is killed by an arrow
Fera ā Diānā necātur, the wild beast is killed by Diana

Sagittā, in the first sentence, is the ablative of means; ā Diānā, in the second, is the ablative of the personal agent.

182.

EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 289.


II. 1. The weary sailors were approaching a place dear to the goddess Diana. 2. They were without food and without wine. 3. Then Galba and seven other men are sent to the ancient island by Sextus. 4. Already they are not far away from the land, and they see armed men on a high place. 5. They are kept from the land by the men with spears and arrows. 6. The men kept hurling their weapons down from the high place with great eagerness.

1 inimīcis, here used as a noun. See vocabulary.
LESSON XXXI

PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT OF SUM

183. Principal Parts. There are certain parts of the verb that are of so much consequence in tense formation that we call them the principal parts.

In English the principal parts are the present, the past, and the past participle; as, go, went, gone; see, saw, seen, etc.

The principal parts of the Latin verb are the first person singular of the present indicative, the present infinitive, the first person singular of the perfect indicative, and the perfect passive participle.

184. Conjugation Stems. From the principal parts we get three conjugation stems, from which are formed the entire conjugation. We have already learned about the present stem, which is found from the present infinitive (cf. §126.a). The other two stems are the perfect stem and the participial stem.

185. The Perfect Stem. The perfect stem of the verb is formed in various ways, but may always be found by dropping -i from the first person singular of the perfect, the third of the principal parts. From the perfect stem are formed the following tenses:

The Perfect Active Indicative
The Pluperfect Active Indicative (English Past Perfect)
The Future Perfect Active Indicative

All these tenses express completed action in present, past, or future time respectively.

186. The Endings of the Perfect. The perfect active indicative is inflected by adding the endings of the perfect to the perfect stem. These endings are different from those found in any other tense, and are as follows:

Sing. 1. -i, I
       2. -isti, you
       3. -it, he, she, it

Plur. 1. -imus, we
      2. -istis, you
      3. -erunt or -ere, they
187. Inflection of *sum* in the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Prin. Parts</td>
<td><em>sum</em></td>
<td><em>esse</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect Stem</td>
<td><em>fu-</em></td>
<td><em>fui</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Singular</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>fui</em>, <em>I have been, I was</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>fuis'ti</em>, <em>you have been, you were</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>fu'it</em>, <em>he has been, he was</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Pluperfect (Tense Sign -erā-)
| *fu'eram*, *I had been* |
| *fu'erās*, *you had been* |
| *fu'erat*, *he had been* |
| Future Perfect (Tense Sign -eri-)
| *fu'erō*, *I shall have been* |
| *fu'eris*, *you will have been* |
| *fu'erit*, *he will have been* |

1. Note carefully the changing accent in the perfect.
2. Observe that the pluperfect may be formed by adding *eram*, the imperfect of *sum*, to the perfect stem. The tense sign is -erā-.
3. Observe that the future perfect may be formed by adding *erō*, the future of *sum*, to the perfect stem. But the third person plural ends in -erint, not in -erunt. The tense sign is -eri-.
4. All active perfects, pluperfects, and future perfects are formed on the perfect stem and inflected in the same way.

188. **DIALOGUE**

**THE BOYS TITUS, MARCUS, AND QUINTUS**

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 289.

M. *Ubi fuistis, Tite et Quinte?*

T. *Ego in meō lūdō fui et Quintus in suō lūdō fuit. Bonī puerī fuimus. Fuitne Sextus in vicō hodiē?*

M. *Fuit. Nūper per agrōs proximōs fluvīō properābat. Ibi is et Cornelīus habent nāvigium.*
THE PERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE

T. Navigium dicis? Alii¹ narrā eam fabulam!

M. Vērō (Yes, truly), pulchrum et novum nāvigium!

Q. Cuius pecūniā² Sextus et Cornēlius id nāvigium parant? Quis iīs pecūniam dat?

M. Amicī Cornēli multum habent aurum et puer pecūniā nōn eget.

T. Quō puerī nāvigābunt? Nāvigābuntne longē ā terrā?

M. Dubia sunt consilia eōrum. Sed hodie, crēdō, si ventus erit idōneus, ad maximam insulam nāvigābunt. Iam anteā ibi fuērunt. Tum autem ventus erat perfidus et puerī magnō in periculō erant.

Q. Aqua ventō commōta est inimica nautīs semper, et saepe perfidus ventus nāvigia rapit, agit, dēletque. Iī puerī, si nōn fuerint maximē attentī, irātā aquā et validō ventō superābuntur et ita interficientur.

189. EXERCISE

1. Where had the boys been before? They had been in school.

2. Where had Sextus been? He had been in a field next to the river.

3. Who has been with Sextus to-day? Cornelius has been with him.


5. If the wind has been suitable, the boys have been in the boat.

6. Soon we shall sail with the boys.

7. There³ will be no danger, if we are (shall have been) careful.⁴

LESSON XXXII

THE PERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF THE FOUR REGULAR CONJUGATIONS

190. Meanings of the Perfect. The perfect tense has two distinct meanings. The first of these is equivalent to the English present perfect, or perfect with have, and denotes that the action of the verb is complete at the time of speaking; as, I have finished my work. As this denotes completed action at a definite time, it is called the perfect definite.

¹ Dative case. (Cf. § 109.) ² Ablative of means. ³ The expletive there is not expressed, but the verb will precede the subject, as in English. ⁴ This predicate adjective must be nominative plural to agree with we.
The perfect is also used to denote an action that happened sometime in the past; as, I finished my work. As no definite time is specified, this is called the perfect indefinite. It corresponds to the ordinary use of the English past tense.

a. Note carefully the difference between the following tenses:

\[
\begin{align*}
&I \text{ was finishing} \text{ my work (imperfect, § 134)} \\
&I \text{ finished my work (perfect indefinite)} \\
&I \text{ have finished my work (perfect definite)}
\end{align*}
\]

When telling a story the Latin uses the perfect indefinite to mark the different forward steps of the narrative, and the imperfect to describe situations and circumstances that attend these steps. If the following sentences were Latin, what tenses would be used?

"Last week I went to Boston. I was trying to find an old friend of mine, but he was out of the city. Yesterday I returned home."

191. Inflection of the Perfect. We learned in § 186 that any perfect is inflected by adding the endings of the perfect to the perfect stem. The inflection in the four regular conjugations is then as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONJ. I</th>
<th>CONJ. II</th>
<th>CONJ. III</th>
<th>CONJ. IV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amāvī</td>
<td>monuī</td>
<td>rēxī</td>
<td>cēpī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I have loved</td>
<td>I have advised</td>
<td>I have ruled</td>
<td>I have taken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I loved or</td>
<td>I advised or</td>
<td>I ruled or</td>
<td>I took or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>did love</td>
<td>did advise</td>
<td>did rule</td>
<td>did take</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Perfect Stems

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>amāv-</th>
<th>monu-</th>
<th>rēx-</th>
<th>cēp-</th>
<th>audīv-</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SINGULAR</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. amā'vī</td>
<td>mo'nui</td>
<td>rē'xi</td>
<td>cē'pi</td>
<td>audī'vi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. amāvis'tī</td>
<td>monuis'tī</td>
<td>rēxis'tī</td>
<td>cēpis'tī</td>
<td>audīvis'tī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. amā'vit</td>
<td>mo'nuit</td>
<td>rē'xit</td>
<td>cē'pit</td>
<td>audī'vit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| PLURAL |
| 1. amā'vimus | monu'imus | rē'ximus | cē'pimus | audī'vīmus |
| 2. amāvis'tis | monuis'tis | rēxis'tis | cēpis'tis | audīvis'tis |
| 3. amāvē'run | monuē'run | rēxē'run | cēpē'run | audīvē'run |
| or amāvē're  | or monuē're  | or rēxē're  | or cēpē're  | or audīvē're  |
1. The first person of the perfect is always given as the third of the principal parts. From this we get the perfect stem. This shows the absolute necessity of learning the principal parts thoroughly.

2. Nearly all perfects of the first conjugation are formed by adding -vi to the present stem. Like amāvī inflect parāvī, vocāvī, cūrāvī, laudāvī.

3. Note carefully the changing accent in the perfect. Drill on it.

192. Learn the principal parts and inflect the perfects:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dō</td>
<td>dāre</td>
<td>dedī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēleō</td>
<td>dēlēre</td>
<td>dēlēvī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>habeō</td>
<td>habēre</td>
<td>habuī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>movēō</td>
<td>movēre</td>
<td>mōvī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pāreō</td>
<td>pārēre</td>
<td>pāruī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prohibēō</td>
<td>prohibēre</td>
<td>prohibuī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>videō</td>
<td>vidēre</td>
<td>vidī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dīcō</td>
<td>dīcere</td>
<td>dīxi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>discēdō</td>
<td>discēdere</td>
<td>discissī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dūcō</td>
<td>dūcere</td>
<td>dūxi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faciō</td>
<td>facere</td>
<td>fēcī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mittō</td>
<td>mittere</td>
<td>mīsī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mūniō</td>
<td>mūnire</td>
<td>mūnivī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>veniō</td>
<td>venīre</td>
<td>vēnī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

193. Perseus and Andromeda (Continued)

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 290.

Cēpheus, adversā fortūnā maximē commōtus, discessit et multīs cum lacrimīs populō Aethiopiae verba ōrāculī narrāvit. Fāta Andromedae, puellae pulchrae, ā tōtō populō déplorábantur, tamen nūllum erat auxilium. Deinde Cēpheus cum plēnō tristītiae animō cāram suam filiam ex oppidi portā ad aquam dūxīt et bracchia eius ad saxa 5 dūra revīnxīt. Tum amīci puellae miserae longē discēssērunt et diū mōnstrum saevum exspectāvērunt.

LESSON XXXIII

PLUPERFECT AND FUTURE PERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE
PERFECT ACTIVE INFINITIVE

194. **Conj. I** | **Conj. II** | **Conj. III** | **Conj. IV**
---|---|---|---
amō | moneō | regō | capiō | audiō
Perfect Stems amāv- | monu- | rēx- | cēp- | audiv-

Pluperfect Indicative Active

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense Sign</th>
<th>-erā-</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Singular</strong></td>
<td><strong>Plural</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I had loved</td>
<td>I had advised</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. amā'veram | monu'eram | rē'xeram | cē'peram | audī'veram |
2. amā'verās | monu'erās | rē'xerās | cē'perās | audī'verās |
3. amā'verat | monu'erat | rē'xerat | cē'perat | audī'verat |

Future Perfect Indicative Active

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense Sign</th>
<th>-eri-</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Singular</strong></td>
<td><strong>Plural</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I shall have loved</td>
<td>I shall have advised</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. amā'verō | monu'erō | rē'xerō | cē'perō | audī'verō |
2. amā'veris | monu'eris | rē'xeris | cē'peris | audī'veris |
3. amā'verit | monu'erit | rē'xerit | cē'perit | audī'verit |

1. Observe that these are all inflected alike and the rules for formation given in § 187. 2–4 hold good here.
2. In like manner inflect the pluperfect and future perfect indicative active of dō, portō, dēleō, moveō, habeō, dīcō, discēdō, faciō, veniō, munīō.
195. **The Perfect Active Infinitive.** The perfect active infinitive is formed by adding -isse to the perfect stem.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONJ.</th>
<th>PERFECT STEM</th>
<th>PERFECT INFINITIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I.</td>
<td>amāv-</td>
<td>amāvis’sē, to have loved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II.</td>
<td>monu-</td>
<td>monuis’sē, to have advised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III.</td>
<td>(a) rēx-</td>
<td>rēxis’sē, to have ruled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(b) cēp-</td>
<td>cēpis’sē, to have taken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV.</td>
<td>audīv-sum</td>
<td>audīvis’sē, to have heard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fu-</td>
<td>fuis’sē, to have been</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. In like manner give the perfect infinitive active of dō, portō, dēleō, mueō, habeō, dīcō, discēdō, facio, veniō, müniō.

196. **EXERCISES**


II. 1. They have obeyed, we have destroyed, I shall have had. 2. We shall have sent, I had come, they have fortified. 3. I had departed, he has obeyed, you have sent (sing. and plur.). 4. To have destroyed; to have seen, he will have given, they have carried. 5. He had destroyed, he has moved, you have had (sing. and plur.). 6. I have given, you had moved (sing. and plur.), we had said. 7. You will have made (sing. and plur.), they will have led, to have given.

8. Who had seen the monster? Andromeda had seen it. 9. Why had the men departed from the towns? They had departed because the monster had come. 10. Did Cepheus obey the oracle? He did.

1 ex. What would ab mean? 2 *Did ... obey*, perfect tense. 3 What case?
LESSON XXXIV

REVIEW OF THE ACTIVE VOICE

197. A review of the tenses of the indicative active shows the following formation:

TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{PRESENT} & = \text{First of the principal parts} \\
\text{IMPERFECT} & = \text{Present stem} + -\text{ba-m} \\
\text{FUTURE} & = \text{Present stem} + \{-\text{bo}, \text{Conj. I and II}\} \\
\text{PERFECT} & = \text{Third of the principal parts} \\
\text{PLUPERFECT} & = \text{Perfect stem} + -\text{era-m} \\
\text{FUTURE PERFECT} & = \text{Perfect stem} + -\text{erod}
\end{align*}
\]

198. The synopsis of the active voice of amō, as far as we have learned the conjugation, is as follows:

Principal Parts amō, amāre, amāvī

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres. Stem amā-</th>
<th>Perf. Stem amāv-</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres. amō</td>
<td>Perf. amāvī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indic.</td>
<td>Indic.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperf. amābām</td>
<td>Pluperf. amāveram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. amābō</td>
<td>Fut. perf. amāverō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pres. Imv. amā</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pres. Infin. amāre</td>
<td>Perf. Infin. amāvisse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Learn to write in the same form and to give rapidly the principal parts and synopsis of parō, dō, laudō, dīleō, habeō, moveō, pāreō, videō, dīcō, discēdō, dūcō, mittō, capiō, mūniō, veniō.¹

199. Learn the following principal parts:²

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sum</td>
<td>esse</td>
<td>fui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ab’sum</td>
<td>abes’sē</td>
<td>ā’fui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dō</td>
<td>dare</td>
<td>dēdī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ Learn to give synopses rapidly, and not only in the first person singular but in any person of either number. ² These are all verbs that you have had before, and the perfect is the only new form to be learned.
REVIEW OF THE ACTIVE VOICE

Conjugation II

- contineō
- doceō
- egeō
- favēō
- iubeō
- noceō
- persuādeō
- respondeō
- studeō
- agō
- crēdō
- fugiō
- iaciō
- interficiō
- rapiō
- resis‘tō
- repe‘riō

Conjugation III

- continuē
- docēre
- egēre
- favēre
- iubēre
- nocēre
- persuādēre
- respondēre
- studēre
- agere
- crēdere
- fugere
- iacere
- interficere
- rapere
- resis‘tere
- repēriēre

Conjugation IV

- hold in, keep
- teach
- need
- favor
- order
- injure
- persuade
- reply
- sit
- be eager
- drive
- believe
- flee
- hurl
- kill
- seize
- resist
- find

200. Perseus and Andromeda (Concluded)

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 290. Read the whole story.

Perseus semper proeliō studēbat 1 et respondit, 1 "Verba tua sunt maximē grātā," et laetus arma sua magica parāvit. 1 Subitō mōnstrum vidētur; celeriter per aquam properat et Andromedam adpropinquat. Eius amici longē absunt et misera puella est sōla. Perseus autem sine morā super aquam volāvit. 1 Subitō dēscendit 1 et dūro gladiō 5 saevum mōnstrum graviter vulnerāvit. 1 Diū pugnātur, 2 diū proelium est dubium. Dēnique autem Perseus mōnstrum interfēcit 1 et victōriam reportāvit. 1 Tum ad saxum vēnit 1 et Andromedam liberāvit 1 et eam ad Cēpheum dūxit. 1 Is, nūper miser, nunc laetus, ita dixit 1 : "Tuō auxiliō, mi amīce, cāra filiā mea est libera; tua est Andromeda." Diū Perseus 10 cum Andromedā ibi habitābat 1 et magnopere ā tōtō populō amābātur. 1

1 See if you can explain the use of the perfects and imperfects in this passage. 2 The verb pugnātur means, literally, it is fought; translate freely, the battle is fought, or the contest rages. The verb pugnō in Latin is intransitive, and so does not have a personal subject in the passive. A verb with an indeterminate subject, designated in English by it, is called impersonal.
LESSON XXXV

THE PASSIVE PERFECTS OF THE INDICATIVE - THE PERFECT PASSIVE AND FUTURE ACTIVE INFINITIVE

201. The fourth and last of the principal parts (§ 183) is the perfect passive participle. *From it we get the participial stem on which are formed the future active infinitive and all the passive perfects.*

1. Learn the following principal parts, which are for the first time given in full:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I.</td>
<td>amō</td>
<td>amā'-re</td>
<td>amā'v-i</td>
<td>amā't-us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This is the model for all regular verbs of the first conjugation.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II.</td>
<td>mo'neō</td>
<td>monē'-re</td>
<td>mo'nu-i</td>
<td>mo'nit-us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III.</td>
<td>regō</td>
<td>re'ge-re</td>
<td>rēx-i</td>
<td>rēct-us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV.</td>
<td>au'diō</td>
<td>audi'-re</td>
<td>audi'v-i</td>
<td>audi't-us</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. The base of the participial stem is found by dropping -us from the perfect passive participle.

202. In English the perfect, past perfect, and future perfect tenses of the indicative passive are made up of forms of the auxiliary verb *to be* and the past participle; as, *I have been loved, I had been loved, I shall have been loved.*

Very similarly, in Latin, the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect passive tenses use respectively the present, imperfect, and future of *sum* as an auxiliary verb with the perfect passive participle, as

- Perfect passive, *amā'tus sum, I have been or was loved*
- Pluperfect passive, *amā'tus eram, I had been loved*
- Future perfect passive, *amā'tus ero, I shall have been loved*

1. In the same way give the synopsis of the corresponding tenses of *moneō, regō, capiō,* and *audiō,* and give the English meanings.

203. Nature of the Participle. A participle is partly verb and partly adjective. As a verb it possesses tense and voice. As an adjective it
is declined and agrees with the word it modifies in gender, number, and case.

204. The perfect passive participle is declined like bonus, bona, bonum, and in the compound tenses (§ 202) it agrees as a predicate adjective with the subject of the verb.

Examples in Singular

- Vir laudātus est, the man was praised, or has been praised
- Puella laudāta est, the girl was praised, or has been praised
- Cōnsilium laudātum est, the plan was praised, or has been praised

Examples in Plural

- Virī laudātī sunt, the men were praised, or have been praised
- Puellae laudātae sunt, the girls were praised, or have been praised
- Cōnsilīa laudāta sunt, the plans were praised, or have been praised

1. Inflect the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative passive of amō, moneō, regō, capiō, and audīō (§§ 488–492).

205. The perfect passive infinitive is formed by adding esse, the present infinitive of sum, to the perfect passive participle; as, amā't-us (-a, -um) esse, to have been loved; mo'nit-us (-a, -um) esse, to have been advised.

1. Form the perfect passive infinitive of regō, capiō, audīō, and give the English meanings.

206. The future active infinitive is formed by adding esse, the present infinitive of sum, to the future active participle. This participle is made by adding -ūrus, -a, -um to the base of the participial stem. Thus the future active infinitive of amō is amāt-ū'rus (-a, -um) esse, to be about to love.

a. Note that in forming the three tenses of the active infinitive we use all three conjugation stems:

- Present, amā're (present stem), to love
- Perfect, amāvīsse (perfect stem), to have loved
- Future, amātūrus esse (participial stem), to be about to love

1. Give the three tenses of the active infinitive of laudō, moneō, regō, capiō, audīō, with the English meanings.
207.  

EXERCISES


II. 1. The provinces were laid waste, the field had been laid waste, the towns will have been laid waste. 2. The oracles were heard, the oracle was heard, the oracles had been heard. 3. The oracle will have been heard, the province had been captured, the boats have been captured. 4. The fields were laid waste, the man was advised, the girls will have been advised. 5. The towns had been ruled, we shall have been captured, you will have been heard.

LESSON XXXVI

REVIEW OF PRINCIPAL PARTS · PREPOSITIONS
YES-OR-NO QUESTIONS

208. The following list shows the principal parts of all the verbs you have had excepting those used in the paradigms. The parts you have had before are given for review, and the perfect participle is the only new form for you to learn. Sometimes one or more of the principal parts are lacking, which means that the verb has no forms based on that stem. A few verbs lack the perfect passive participle but have the future active participle in -ūrus, which appears in the principal parts instead.

Irregular Verbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb</th>
<th>principal parts</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sum</td>
<td>esse, fui, futūrus, be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>absūm</td>
<td>abesse, āfui, āfutūrus, be away</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dō</td>
<td>dare, dedī, datus, give</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 dō is best classed with the irregular verbs because of the short a in the present and participial stems.
### REVIEW OF PRINCIPAL PARTS

#### Conjugation I

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>1st Person Sg.</th>
<th>3rd Person Sg.</th>
<th>Passive Past Participle</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>portō</td>
<td>portāre</td>
<td>portāvi</td>
<td>portātus</td>
<td>carry</td>
<td>carry</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

So for all verbs of this conjugation thus far used.

#### Conjugation II

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>1st Person Sg.</th>
<th>3rd Person Sg.</th>
<th>Passive Past Participle</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>contineō</td>
<td>continēre</td>
<td>continuī</td>
<td>contentus</td>
<td>hold in, keep</td>
<td>hold in, keep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēleō</td>
<td>dēlēre</td>
<td>dēlēvi</td>
<td>dēlētus</td>
<td>destroy</td>
<td>destroy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>docēō</td>
<td>docēre</td>
<td>docūi</td>
<td>doctus</td>
<td>teach</td>
<td>teach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>egeō</td>
<td>egēre</td>
<td>eguī</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>lack</td>
<td>lack</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faveō</td>
<td>favēre</td>
<td>fāvī</td>
<td>fautūrus</td>
<td>favor</td>
<td>favor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iubeō</td>
<td>iubēre</td>
<td>iussī</td>
<td>iussus</td>
<td>order</td>
<td>order</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moveō</td>
<td>movēre</td>
<td>mōvī</td>
<td>mōtus</td>
<td>move</td>
<td>move</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noceō</td>
<td>nocēre</td>
<td>nocuī</td>
<td>nocitūrus</td>
<td>injure</td>
<td>injure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pāreō</td>
<td>pārēre</td>
<td>pāruī</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>obey</td>
<td>obey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>persuādeō</td>
<td>persuādēre</td>
<td>persuāsī</td>
<td>persuāsus</td>
<td>persuade [from</td>
<td>persuade</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prohibēō</td>
<td>prohibēre</td>
<td>prohibuī</td>
<td>prohibitus</td>
<td>restrain, keep</td>
<td>restrain, keep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>respondeō</td>
<td>respondēre</td>
<td>respondī</td>
<td>responsus</td>
<td>reply</td>
<td>reply</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sedēō</td>
<td>sedēre</td>
<td>sedī</td>
<td>-sessus</td>
<td>sit</td>
<td>sit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>studeō</td>
<td>studēre</td>
<td>studuī</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>be eager</td>
<td>be eager</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>videō</td>
<td>vidēre</td>
<td>vidī</td>
<td>visus</td>
<td>see</td>
<td>see</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Conjugation III

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>1st Person Sg.</th>
<th>3rd Person Sg.</th>
<th>Passive Past Participle</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>agō</td>
<td>agere</td>
<td>ēgī</td>
<td>actus</td>
<td>drive</td>
<td>drive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crēdō</td>
<td>crēdere</td>
<td>crēditī</td>
<td>créditus</td>
<td>believe</td>
<td>believe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dīcō</td>
<td>dicere</td>
<td>dīxi</td>
<td>dictus</td>
<td>say</td>
<td>say</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>discēdō</td>
<td>discēdere</td>
<td>discessī</td>
<td>discessus</td>
<td>depart</td>
<td>depart</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dīcō</td>
<td>dūcere</td>
<td>dūxi</td>
<td>ductus</td>
<td>lead</td>
<td>lead</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faciō 1</td>
<td>facere</td>
<td>fēcī</td>
<td>factus</td>
<td>make</td>
<td>make</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fugiō</td>
<td>fugere</td>
<td>fūgī</td>
<td>fugitūrus</td>
<td>flee</td>
<td>flee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iaciō</td>
<td>iacer</td>
<td>iēcī</td>
<td>iactus</td>
<td>hurl</td>
<td>hurl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interficiō</td>
<td>interficere</td>
<td>interfēcī</td>
<td>interfectus</td>
<td>kill</td>
<td>kill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mittō</td>
<td>mittere</td>
<td>mīsī</td>
<td>missus</td>
<td>send</td>
<td>send</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rapiō</td>
<td>rapere</td>
<td>rapuī</td>
<td>raptus</td>
<td>seize</td>
<td>seize</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>resistō</td>
<td>resistere</td>
<td>restitī</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>resist</td>
<td>resist</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Conjugation IV

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>1st Person Sg.</th>
<th>3rd Person Sg.</th>
<th>Passive Past Participle</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mūniō</td>
<td>mūnire</td>
<td>mūnivī</td>
<td>mūnitus</td>
<td>fortify</td>
<td>fortify</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reperiō</td>
<td>reperīre</td>
<td>rep'peri</td>
<td>repertus</td>
<td>find</td>
<td>find</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>veniō</td>
<td>venīre</td>
<td>vēnī</td>
<td>ventus</td>
<td>come</td>
<td>come</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 faciō has an irregular passive which will be presented later.
209. Prepositions. 1. We learned in §§ 52, 53 that only the accusative and the ablative are used with prepositions, and that prepositions expressing ablative relations govern the ablative case. Those we have had are here summarized. The table following should be learned.

ā or ab, from, by  e or ex, out from, out of
cum, with prō, before, in front of; for, in behalf of
dē, down from, concerning sine, without

2. Prepositions not expressing ablative relations must govern the accusative (§ 52). Of these we have had the following:

ad, to; apud, among; per, through

There are many others which you will meet as we proceed.

3. The preposition in when meaning in or on governs the ablative; when meaning to, into, against (relations foreign to the ablative) in governs the accusative.

210. Yes-or-No Questions. Questions not introduced by some interrogative word like who, why, when, etc., but expecting the answer yes or no, may take one of three forms:

1. Is he coming? (Asking for information. Implying nothing as to the answer expected.)
2. Is he not coming? (Expecting the answer yes.)
3. He is n’t coming, is he? (Expecting the answer no.)

These three forms are rendered in Latin as follows:

1. Venitne? is he coming?
2. Nōnne venit? is he not coming?
3. Num venit? he is n’t coming, is he?

a. -ne, the question sign, is usually added to the verb, which then stands first.

b. We learned in § 56. b that yes-or-no questions are usually answered by repeating the verb, with or without a negative. Instead of this, ita, vērō, certē, etc. (so, truly, certainly, etc.) may be used for yes, and nōn, minimē, etc. for no if the denial is emphatic, as, by no means, not at all.
CONJUGATION OF POSSUM

211. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 290.


II. 1. Where was Julia standing? She was standing where you had ordered. 2. Was Julia wearing any ornaments? She had many ornaments of gold. 3. Did she not attempt flight when she saw the danger? She did. 4. Who captured her? Galba captured her without delay and held her by the left arm. 5. She did n’t have the lady’s gold, did she? No, the gold had been taken by a faithless maid and has been brought back.

Fourth Review, Lessons XXVII–XXXVI, §§ 513–516

LESSON XXXVII

CONJUGATION OF POSSUM · THE INFINITIVE USED AS IN ENGLISH

212. Learn the principal parts of possum, I am able, I can, and its inflection in the indicative and infinitive. (Cf. § 495.)

a. Possum, I can, is a compound of potis, able, and sum, I am.

213. The Infinitive with Subject Accusative. The infinitive (cf. § 173) is a verbal noun. Used as a noun, it has the constructions of a noun. As a verb it can govern a case and be modified by an adverb. The uses of the infinitive are much the same in Latin as in English.
1. In English certain verbs of *wishing, commanding, forbidding,* and the like are used with an object clause consisting of a substantive in the objective case and an infinitive, as, *he commanded the men to flee.* Such object clauses are called infinitive clauses, and the substantive is said to be the subject of the infinitive.

Similarly in Latin, some verbs of *wishing, commanding, forbidding,* and the like are used with an object clause consisting of an infinitive with a subject in the accusative case, as, *Is virōs fugere iussit, he commanded the men to flee.*

214. **Rule. Subject of the Infinitive.** *The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative.*

215. **The Complementary Infinitive.** In English a verb is often followed by an infinitive to complete its meaning, as, *the Romans are able to conquer the Gauls.* This is called the complementary infinitive, as the predicate is not *complete* without the added infinitive.

Similarly in Latin, verbs of *incomplete predication* are completed by the infinitive. Among such verbs are *possunt, I am able, I can; properō, mātūrō, I hasten; temptō, I attempt;* as

*Rōmānī Gallōs superāre possunt, the Romans are able to (or can) conquer the Gauls*

_Bellum gerere mātūrant, they hasten to wage war_

_a. A predicate adjective completing a complementary infinitive agrees in gender, number, and case with the subject of the main verb._

_Mali puerī esse bonī nōn possunt, bad boys are not able to (or cannot) be good_

Observe that _bonī_ agrees with _pueri._

216. **The Infinitive used as a Noun.** In English the infinitive is often used as a pure noun, as the subject of a sentence, or as a predicate nominative. For example, *To conquer (= conquering) is pleasing; To see (= seeing) is to believe (= believing).* The same use of the infinitive is found in Latin, especially with _est,_ as

_Superāre est grātum, to conquer is pleasing_

_Vidēre est crēdere, to see is to believe_
a. In the construction above, the infinitive often has a subject, which must then be in the accusative case, as

Galbam superāre inimīcōs est grātum multīs, for Galba
to conquer his enemies is pleasing to many

b. An infinitive used as a noun is neuter singular. Thus, in the sentence superāre est grātum, the predicate adjective grātum is in the neuter nominative singular to agree with superāre the subject.

217. **EXERCISES**

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 291.


II. 1. The girl began daily to carry water from the river to the gates. 2. The Gauls had pitched their camp in a place suitable for a battle. 3. For a long time they tried in vain to seize the redoubt. 4. Neither did they cease to hurl weapons against the walls. 5. But they were not able to (could not) take the town.

218. **THE FAITHLESS TARPE'IA**

Sābīnī ōlim cum Rōmānīs bellum gerēbant et multās victoriās repōrtāverant. Iam agrōs proximōs mūris vāstābant, iam oppidō adpro-pinquābant. Rōmānī autem in Capitōlium fūgerant et longē periculō

1 Supply *men.* nostri, vestri, and sui are often used as nouns in this way.
2 Not *children.* The Romans used *liberi* either as an adjective, meaning *free,* or as a noun, meaning *the free,* thereby signifying their *free-born children.* The word was never applied to children of slaves. 3 in with the accusative.
aberant. Mūris validis et saxīs altīs crēdēbant. Frūstrā Sabīnī tēla iaciēbant, frūstrā portās dūrās petēbant; castellum occupāre nōn poterant. Deinde novum cōnsilium cēpērunt.¹

Tarpēia erat puella Rōmāna pulchra et superba. Cotīdiē aquam 5 cōpiis Rōmānīs in Capitōlium portābat. Eī² nōn nocēbant Sabīnī,

**TARPEIA PUELLA PERFIDA**


¹ cōnsilium capere, to make a plan. Why is the perfect tense used here and the imperfect in the preceding sentences? Explain the use of tenses in the next paragraph. ² Dative with nocēbant. (Cf. § 154.) ³ ex, out of, i.e. from the number of; best translated of.
LES S O N  X X X V I I I

THE RELATIVE PRONOUN AND THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN

219. Sentences are simple, compound, or complex.

a. A simple sentence is a sentence containing but one statement, that is, one subject and one predicate: The Romans approached the town.

b. A compound sentence is a sentence containing two or more independent statements: The Romans approached the town | and | the enemy fled.

Note. An independent statement is one that can stand alone; it does not depend upon another statement.

c. A complex sentence is a sentence containing one independent statement and one or more dependent statements: When the Romans approached the town | the enemy fled.

Note. A dependent or subordinate statement is one that depends on or qualifies another statement; thus the enemy fled is independent, and when the Romans approached the town is dependent or subordinate.

d. The separate statements in a compound or complex sentence are called clauses. In a complex sentence the independent statement is called the main clause and the dependent statement the subordinate clause.

220. Examine the complex sentence

The Romans killed the men who were taken

Here are two clauses:

a. The main clause, The Romans killed the men

b. The subordinate clause, who were taken

The word who is a pronoun, for it takes the place of the noun men. It also connects the subordinate clause who were taken with the noun men. Hence the clause is an adjective clause. A pronoun that connects an adjective clause with a substantive is called a relative pronoun, and the substantive for which the relative pronoun stands is called its antecedent. The relative pronouns in English are who, whose, whom, which, what, that.
221. The relative pronoun in Latin is *qui*, *quae*, *quod*, and it is declined as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>MASC.</strong></td>
<td><strong>FEM.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td><em>qui</em> quae quod</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td><em>cuius</em> cuius cuius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td><em>cui</em> cui cui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td><em>quem</em> quam quod</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td><em>quó</em> quá quó</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Review the declension of *is*, §114, and note the similarity in the endings. The forms *qui*, *quae*, and *quibus* are the only forms showing new endings.

Note. The genitive *cuius* and the dative *cui* are pronounced *cōi'yoōs* (two syllables) and *cōoi* (one syllable).

222. The Relative Pronoun is translated as follows: 1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>MASC. AND FEM.</strong></th>
<th><strong>NEUT.</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. <em>who, that</em></td>
<td><em>which, what, that</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. <em>of whom, whose</em></td>
<td><em>of which, of what, whose</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. <em>to or for whom</em></td>
<td><em>to or for which, to or for what</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. <em>whom, that</em></td>
<td><em>which, what, that</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. <em>from, etc., whom</em></td>
<td><em>from, etc., which or what</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. We see from the table above that *qui*, when it refers to a person, is translated by some form of *who* or by *that*; and that when it refers to anything else it is translated by *which, what, or that*.

223. Note the following sentences:

*The Romans killed the men who were taken*

*The Romans killed the woman who was taken*

*Rōmānī interfēcērunt virōs qui captī sunt*

*Rōmānī interfēcērunt fēminam quae capta est*

In the first sentence *who* (*qui*) refers to the antecedent *men* (*virōs*), and is masculine plural. In the second, *who* (*quae*) refers to woman (*fēminam*), and is feminine singular. From this we learn that the relative must agree

1 This table of meanings need not be memorized. It is inserted for reference when translating.
THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN

with its antecedent in gender and number. In neither of the sentences are the antecedents and relatives in the same case. Virōs and fēminam are accusatives, and qui and quae are nominatives, being the subjects of the subordinate clauses. Hence

224. Rule. Agreement of the Relative. A relative pronoun must agree with its antecedent in gender and number; but its case is determined by the way it is used in its own clause.

225. Interrogative Pronouns. An interrogative pronoun is a pronoun that asks a question. In English the interrogatives are who? which? what? In Latin they are quis? quid? (pronoun) and qui? quae? quod? (adjective).

226. Examine the sentences

a. Who is the man? Quis est vir?
   b. What man is leading them? Quī vir eōs dūcit?

In a, who is an interrogative pronoun. In b, what is an interrogative adjective. Observe that in Latin quis, quid is the pronoun and qui, quae, quod is the adjective.

227. 1. The interrogative adjective qui, quae, quod is declined just like the relative pronoun. (See § 221.)

2. The interrogative pronoun quis, quid is declined like qui, quae, quod in the plural. In the singular it is declined as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masc. and Fem.</th>
<th>Neut.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. quis, who?</td>
<td>quid, what? which?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. cuius, whose?</td>
<td>cuius, whose?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. cui, to or for whom?</td>
<td>cui, to or for what or which?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. quem, whom?</td>
<td>quid, what? which?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. quō, from, etc., whom?</td>
<td>quō, from, etc., which or what?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note. Observe that the masculine and feminine are alike and that all the forms are like the corresponding forms of the relative, excepting quis and quid.

228. EXERCISES

I. 1. Quis est aeger? Servus quem amō est aeger. 2. Cuius scūtum habēs? Scūtum habeō quod lēgātus ad castellum mīsit. 3. Cui lēgātus suum scūtum dabit? Filiō meō scūtum dabit. 4. Ubi Germānī

7. Quibus tēlis cōpiae nostrae eguērunt? Gladiīs et pilīs nostrae cōpiae eguērunt.


II. 1. What victory will you announce? 2. I will announce to the people the victory which the sailors have won. 3. The men who were pitching camp were eager for battle. 4. Nevertheless they were soon conquered by the troops which Sextus had sent. 5. They could not resist our forces, but fled from that place without delay.

229. THE FAITHLESS TARPEIA (Concluded)²

Tarpēia, commōta ōrnāmentīs Sabinōrum pulchris, diū resistere nōn potuit et respondit: "Date mihi³ ōrnāmenta quae in sinistrīs bracchiis geritis, et celeriter cōpiās vestrās in Capitolērium dūcam." Nec

¹ cum is added to the ablative of relative, interrogative, and personal pronouns instead of being placed before them. ² Explain the use of the tenses in this selection. ³ to me.
Sabinī recūsāvērunt, sed per dūrās magnāsque castellī portās pro-
perāvērunt quō Tarpēia dūxit et mox intrā validōs et altōs mūrōs
stābant. Tum sine morā in Tarpēiam scūta graviter iēcērunt; nam
scūta quoque in sinistrīs bracchīs gerēbant. Ita perfida puella Tar-
pēia interfecta est; ita Sabīni Capitolium occupāvērunt.

LESSON XXXIX

THE THIRD DECLENSION • CONSONANT STEMS

230. Bases and Stems. In learning the first and second declen-
sions we saw that the different cases were formed by adding the case
terminations to the part of the word that did not change, which we
called the base. If to the base we add -ā in the first declension,
and -o in the second, we get what is called the stem. Thus porta has
the base port- and the stem portā-; servus has the base serv- and the
stem servo-.

These stem vowels, -ā- and -o-, play so important a part in the
formation of the case terminations that these declensions are named
from them respectively the A- and O-Decensions.

231. Nouns of the Third Declension. The third declension is called
the Consonant or F-Decension, and its nouns are classified according
to the way the stem ends. If the last letter of the stem is a consonant,
the word is said to have a consonant stem; if the stem ends in -i-, the
word is said to have an i-stem. In consonant stems the stem is the same
as the base. In i-stems the stem is formed by adding -i- to the base.
The presence of the i makes a difference in certain of the cases, so
the distinction is a very important one.

232. Consonant stems are divided into two classes:

I. Stems that add -s to the base to form the nominative singular.
II. Stems that add no termination in the nominative singular.

1 quō = whither, to the place where. Here quō is the relative adverb. We
have had it used before as the interrogative adverb, whither? to what place?
2 upon.
### Class I

233. Stems that add -s to the base in the nominative singular are either masculine or feminine and are declined as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bases or Stems</th>
<th>princeps, m., chief</th>
<th>miles, m., soldier</th>
<th>lapis, m., stone</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SINGULAR</td>
<td>Nom. princeps</td>
<td>miles</td>
<td>lapis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gen. princepis</td>
<td>militis</td>
<td>lapidis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dat. princepi</td>
<td>militi</td>
<td>lapidi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Acc. princepem</td>
<td>militem</td>
<td>lapidem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Abl. princeipe</td>
<td>milite</td>
<td>lapide</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| PlURAL         | Nom. princepsi      | militiês           | lapidês         |
|                | Gen. princepium     | militium           | lapidum         |
|                | Dat. princepius     | militibus          | lapidibus       |
|                | Acc. princepsi      | militiês           | lapidês         |
|                | Abl. princepius     | militibus          | lapidibus       |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bases or Stems</th>
<th>rex, m., king</th>
<th>iūdex, m., judge</th>
<th>virtūs, f., manliness</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SINGULAR</td>
<td>Nom. rex</td>
<td>iūdex</td>
<td>virtūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gen. regis</td>
<td>iūdicis</td>
<td>virtū’tis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dat. rēgi</td>
<td>iūdicī</td>
<td>virtū’ti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Acc. rēgem</td>
<td>iūdicem</td>
<td>virtū’tem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Abl. rēge</td>
<td>iūdice</td>
<td>virtū’te</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| PLURAL         | Nom. rēgēs   | iūdicēs          | virtū’tēs           |
|                | Gen. rēgum   | iūdicum          | virtū’tum           |
|                | Dat. rēgibus | iūdicibus        | virtū’tibus         |
|                | Acc. rēgēs   | iūdicēs          | virtū’tēs           |
|                | Abl. rēgibus | iūdicibus        | virtū’tibus         |

1. The base or stem is found by dropping -is in the genitive singular.
2. Most nouns of two syllables, like princeps (princip-), miles (milit-), iūdex (iūdic-), have i in the base, but e in the nominative.
EXERCISES

1. *lapis* is an exception to this rule.

3. Observe the consonant changes of the base or stem in the nominative:
   a. A final -t or -d is dropped before -s; thus *miles* for *milets*, *lapis* for *lapids*, *virtus* for *virtüts*.
   b. A final -c or -g unites with -s and forms -x; thus *iūdec + s = iūdex*, *rēg + s = rēx*.

4. Review § 74 and apply the rules to this declension.

   In like manner decline *dux*, *ducis*, m., *leader*; *eques*, *equitis*, m., *horseman*; *pedes*, *peditis*, m., *foot soldier*; *pēs*, *pedis*, m., *foot*.

234. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 291.


II. 1. What ship is that which I see? That (illud) ship is the *Victory*. It is sailing now with a favorable wind and will soon approach Italy. 2. The judges commanded the savages to be seized and to be killed. 3. The chiefs of the savages suddenly began to flee, but were quickly captured by the horsemen. 4. The king led the foot soldiers to the wall from which the townsmen were hurling stones with the greatest zeal.
THE THIRD DECLENSION - CONSONANT STEMS (Continued)

CLASS II.

235. Consonant stems that add no termination in the nominative are declined in the other cases exactly like those that add -s. They may be masculine, feminine, or neuter.

236. PARADIGMS

MASCULINES AND FEMININES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bases or Stems</th>
<th>cōnsul, m.</th>
<th>legiō, f.</th>
<th>ērdō, m.</th>
<th>pater, m.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SINGULAR</td>
<td>cōnsul</td>
<td>legiōn-</td>
<td>ērdini-</td>
<td>patr-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>cōnsul</td>
<td>legiō</td>
<td>ērdō</td>
<td>pater</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>cōnsulīs</td>
<td>legiōnis</td>
<td>ērdinis</td>
<td>patris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>cōnsulī</td>
<td>legiōnī</td>
<td>ērdini</td>
<td>patri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>cōnsulem</td>
<td>legiōnem</td>
<td>ērdinem</td>
<td>patrem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>cōnsule</td>
<td>legiōne</td>
<td>ērdine</td>
<td>patre</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PLURAL

| Nom.           | cōnsulēs   | legiōnēs | ērdinēs | patrēs |
| Gen.           | cōnsulum   | legiōnum | ērdinum | patrum |
| Dat.           | cōnsulibus | legiōnibus | ērdinibus | patribus |
| Acc.           | cōnsulēs   | legiōnēs | ērdinēs | patrēs | -ēs |
| Abl.           | cōnsulibus | legiōnibus | ērdinibus | patribus | -ibus |

1. With the exception of the nominative, the terminations are exactly the same as in Class I, and the base or stem is found in the same way.

2. Masculines and feminines with bases or stems in -in- and -ōn- drop -n- and end in -ō in the nominative, as legiō (base or stem legiōn-), ērdō (base or stem ērdin-).

3. Bases or stems in -tr- have -ter in the nominative, as pater (base or stem patr-).

4. Note how the genitive singular gives the clue to the whole declension. Always learn this with the nominative.
EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 291.


II. 1. Who has seen my father to-day? 2. I saw him just now (nūper). He was hastening to your dwelling with your mother and sister. 3. When men are far from the fatherland and lack food, they cannot be restrained 2 from wrong. 3. 4. The safety of the soldiers is dear to Cæsar, the general. 5. The chiefs were eager to storm a town full of grain which was held by the consul. 6. The king forbade the baggage of the captives to be destroyed.

LESSON XLI

THE THIRD DECLENSION • CONSONANT STEMS (Concluded)

238. Neuter consonant stems add no termination in the nominative and are declined as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bases OR STEMS</th>
<th>flūmen, n., river</th>
<th>tempus, n., time</th>
<th>opus, n., work</th>
<th>caput, n., head</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>flūmen</td>
<td>tempus</td>
<td>opus</td>
<td>caput</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>flūminis</td>
<td>temporis</td>
<td>operis</td>
<td>capitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>flūminī</td>
<td>temporī</td>
<td>operī</td>
<td>capītī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>flūmen</td>
<td>tempus</td>
<td>opus</td>
<td>caput</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>flūmine</td>
<td>tempore</td>
<td>opere</td>
<td>capite</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TERMINATIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>flūmen</th>
<th>tempus</th>
<th>opus</th>
<th>caput</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>flūminis</td>
<td>temporis</td>
<td>operis</td>
<td>capitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>flūminī</td>
<td>temporī</td>
<td>operī</td>
<td>capītī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>flūmen</td>
<td>tempus</td>
<td>opus</td>
<td>caput</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>flūmine</td>
<td>tempore</td>
<td>opere</td>
<td>capite</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 proelium facere = to fight a battle. 2 contineō. Cf. § 180. 3 Abl. iniūriā.
EXERCISES

Plural terminations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>flūmina</th>
<th>tempora</th>
<th>opera</th>
<th>capita</th>
<th>-a</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>flūminum</td>
<td>temporum</td>
<td>operum</td>
<td>capitum</td>
<td>-um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>flūminibus</td>
<td>temporibus</td>
<td>operibus</td>
<td>capitibus</td>
<td>-ibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>flūmina</td>
<td>tempora</td>
<td>opera</td>
<td>capita</td>
<td>-a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>flūminibus</td>
<td>temporibus</td>
<td>operibus</td>
<td>capitibus</td>
<td>-ibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Review § 74 and apply the rules to this declension.
2. Bases or stems in -in- have -e- instead of -i- in the nominative, as flūmen, base or stem flūmin-.
3. Most bases or stems in -er- and -er- have -us in the nominative, as opus, base or stem oper-; tempus, base or stem tempor-.

239. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 292.


II. 1. The consul placed a crown on the head of the victor. 2. Before the gates he was received by the townsmen. 3. A famous orator praised him and said, “By your labors you have saved the fatherland from disaster.” 4. The words of the orator were pleasing to the victor. 5. To save the fatherland was a great task.
LESSON XLII

REVIEW LESSON

240. Review the paradigms in §§ 233, 236, 238; and decline all nouns of the third declension in this selection.

TERROR CIMBRICUS

Ólim Cimbrì et Teutonēs, populi Germaniae, cum fēminis liberisque Italiae adpropinquaverant et copiās Rōmānās maximō proelīō vicerant. Ubi fuga legiōnēm nūntiāta est, summus erat terror totius Rōmae, et Rōmānī, graviter commōtī, sacra crēbra deīs faciēbant et salūtem petēbant.


1 About the year 100 B.C. the Romans were greatly alarmed by an invasion of barbarians from the north known as Cimbri and Teutons. They were traveling with wives and children, and had an army of 300,000 fighting men. Several Roman armies met defeat, and the city was in a panic. Then the Senate called upon Marius, their greatest general, to save the country. First he defeated the Teutons in Gaul. Next, returning to Italy, he met the Cimbri. A terrible battle ensued, in which the Cimbri were utterly destroyed; but the terror Cimbricus continued to haunt the Romans for many a year thereafter. ² He made a levy (of troops) upon, imperāvit with the acc. and the dat. ³ Cf. § 200. n. 2.
LESSON XLIII

THE THIRD DECLENSION · I-STEMS

241. To decline a noun of the third declension correctly we must know whether or not it is an i-stem. Nouns with i-stems are:

1. Masculines and feminines:
   a. Nouns in -ēs and -is with the same number of syllables in the genitive as in the nominative. Thus caedes, caedis, is an i-stem, but miles, mīlitis, is a consonant stem.
   b. Nouns in -ns and -rs.
   c. Nouns of one syllable in -s or -x preceded by a consonant.

2. Neuters in -e, -al, and -ar.

242. The declension of i-stems is nearly the same as that of consonant stems. Note the following differences:

   a. Masculines and feminines have -ium in the genitive plural and -is or -ēs in the accusative plural.
   b. Neuters have -i in the ablative singular, and an -i- in every form of the plural.

243. Masculine and Feminine I-Stems. Masculine and feminine i-stems are declined as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stems</th>
<th>caedi-</th>
<th>hosti-</th>
<th>urbi-</th>
<th>clienti-</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bases</td>
<td>caed-</td>
<td>host-</td>
<td>urb-</td>
<td>client-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>caedes</td>
<td>hostis</td>
<td>urbs</td>
<td>cliēns1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>caedis</td>
<td>hostis</td>
<td>urbis</td>
<td>clientis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>caedi</td>
<td>hosti</td>
<td>urbī</td>
<td>clientī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>caedem</td>
<td>hostem</td>
<td>urbem</td>
<td>clientem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>caede</td>
<td>hoste</td>
<td>urbe</td>
<td>cliente</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Observe that the vowel before -ns is long, but that it is shortened before -nt. Cf. §12. 2, 3.
THE THIRD DECLENSION • I-STEMS

Plural Terminations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>caedēs</th>
<th>hostēs</th>
<th>urbēs</th>
<th>clientēs</th>
<th>-ēs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>caedium</td>
<td>hostium</td>
<td>urbiun</td>
<td>clientium</td>
<td>-ium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>caedibus</td>
<td>hostibus</td>
<td>urbibus</td>
<td>clientibus</td>
<td>-ibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>caēdis, -ēs</td>
<td>hostīs, -ēs</td>
<td>urbīs, -ēs</td>
<td>clientīs, -ēs</td>
<td>-is, -ēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>caedibus</td>
<td>hostibus</td>
<td>urbibus</td>
<td>clientibus</td>
<td>-ibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. avis, cīvis, finis, ignis, nāvis have the ablative singular in -ī or -e.
2. turris has accusative turrim and ablative turri or turre.

244. Neuter I-Stems. Neuter i-stems are declined as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stems</th>
<th>insigni-</th>
<th>animāli-</th>
<th>calcāri-</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bases</td>
<td>insig-</td>
<td>animāl-</td>
<td>calcār-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Singular Terminations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>insegne</th>
<th>animal</th>
<th>calcar</th>
<th>-e or —</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>insignis</td>
<td>animālis</td>
<td>calcāris</td>
<td>-is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>insignī</td>
<td>animālī</td>
<td>calcārī</td>
<td>-ī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>insegne</td>
<td>animal</td>
<td>calcar</td>
<td>-e or —</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>insignī</td>
<td>animālī</td>
<td>calcārī</td>
<td>-ī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>insignia</th>
<th>animālia</th>
<th>calcāria</th>
<th>-ia</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>insignium</td>
<td>animālium</td>
<td>calcārium</td>
<td>-ium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>insignibus</td>
<td>animālibus</td>
<td>calcāribus</td>
<td>-ibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>insignia</td>
<td>animālia</td>
<td>calcāria</td>
<td>-ia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>insignibus</td>
<td>animālibus</td>
<td>calcāribus</td>
<td>-ibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Review § 74 and see how it applies to this declension.
2. The final -i- of the stem is usually dropped in the nominative. If not dropped, it is changed to -e.
3. A long vowel is shortened before final -i or -r. (Cf. § 12. 2.)

245. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 292.

I. 1. Quam urbem vidēmus? Urbs quam vidētis est Rōma. 2. Cīvēs Rōmānī urbem suam turribus altis et mūris longīs mūnīverant. 3. Ventī nāvis longās prohibēbant finibus hostium adpropinquāre. 4. Imperātor a clientibus suīs calcāria aurī et alia insignia accēpit. 5. Mīlitēs Rōmānī cum hostibus bella saeva gessērunt et eōs caede

II. 1. Because of the lack of grain the animals of the village were not able to live. 2. When the general¹ heard the rumor, he quickly sent a horseman to the village. 3. The horseman had a beautiful horse and wore spurs of gold. 4. He said to the citizens, "Send your retainers with horses and wagons to our camp, and you will receive an abundance of grain." 5. With happy hearts they hastened to obey his words.²

¹ Place first. ² Not the accusative. Why?
LESSON XLIV

IRREGULAR NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION · GENDER IN THE THIRD DECLENSION

246. **Paradigms**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>vis</th>
<th>iter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>vis (rare)</td>
<td>itineris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>vi (rare)</td>
<td>itineri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>vim</td>
<td>iter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>vi</td>
<td>itinere</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Singular**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>virēs</th>
<th>itinera</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>virium</td>
<td>itinerum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>viribus</td>
<td>itineribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>vīris, or -ēs</td>
<td>itinera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>viribus</td>
<td>itineribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plural**

247. There are no rules for gender in the third declension that do not present numerous exceptions.\(^1\) The following rules, however, are of great service, and should be thoroughly mastered:

1. **Masculine** are nouns in -or, -ōs, -er, -ēs (gen. -itis).
   
   a. arbor, tree, is feminine; and iter, march, is neuter.

2. **Feminine** are nouns in -ō, -is, -x, and in -s preceded by a consonant or by any long vowel but ō.
   
   a. Masculine are collis (hill), lapis, mēnis (month), ērdō, pēs, and nouns in -nis and -guis — as ignis, sanguis (blood) — and the four monosyllables
dēns, a tooth; mōns, a mountain
pōns, a bridge; fōns, a fountain

3. **Neuters** are nouns in -e, -al, -ar, -n, -ur, -ūs, and caput.

\(^1\) Review § 60. Words denoting males are, of course, masculine, and those denoting females, feminine.
248. Give the gender of the following nouns and the rule by which it is determined:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>animal</th>
<th>calamitās</th>
<th>flūmen</th>
<th>lapis</th>
<th>nāvis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>avis</td>
<td>caput</td>
<td>ignis</td>
<td>legiō</td>
<td>opus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caedēs</td>
<td>eques</td>
<td>īnsigne</td>
<td>mare</td>
<td>salūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calcar</td>
<td>finis</td>
<td>labor</td>
<td>miles</td>
<td>urbs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

249.

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 292.


II. 1. The enemy had taken (possession of) the top of the mountain. 2. There were many trees on the opposite hills. 3. We pitched our camp near (ad) a beautiful spring. 4. A march through the enemies’ country is never without danger. 5. The time of the month was suitable for the march. 6. The teeth of the monster were long. 7. When the foot soldiers⁴ saw the blood of the captives, they began to assail the fortifications with the greatest violence.¹

¹ Abl. of manner. ² suōs, used as a noun, his men. ³ We say build a bridge over; the Romans, make a bridge on. ⁴ Place first.

Fifth Review, Lessons XXXVII–XLIV, §§ 517–520
LESSON XLV

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION - I-STEMS

250. Adjectives are either of the first and second declensions (like bonus, aeger, or liber), or they are of the third declension.

251. Nearly all adjectives of the third declension have i-stems, and they are declined almost like nouns with i-stems.

252. Adjectives learned thus far have had a different form in the nominative for each gender, as, bonus, m.; bona, f.; bonum, n. Such an adjective is called an adjective of three endings. Adjectives of the third declension are of the following classes:

I. Adjectives of three endings —
   a different form in the nominative for each gender.

II. Adjectives of two endings —
   masculine and feminine nominative alike, the neuter different.

III. Adjectives of one ending —
   masculine, feminine, and neuter nominative all alike.

253. Adjectives of the third declension in -er have three endings; those in -is have two endings; the others have one ending.

CLASS I

254. Adjectives of Three Endings are declined as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>ácer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>ácris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>ácri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>ácrem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>ácri</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

acer, acris, acre, keen, eager
ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

CLASS II

255. Adjectives of Two Endings are declined as follows:

omnis, omne, every, all

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>STIM</th>
<th>Base</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>omni-</td>
<td>omni-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>omnis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>omnis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>omni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>omnem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>omni</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CLASS III

256. Adjectives of One Ending are declined as follows:

pār, equal

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Base</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pari-</td>
<td>par-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>pār</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>parīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>parī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>parem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>parī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. All i-stem adjectives have -ī in the ablative singular.
2. Observe that the several cases of adjectives of one ending have the same form for all genders excepting in the accusative singular and in the nominative and accusative plural.
3. Decline vir ācer, legiō ācris, animal ācre, ager omnis, scūtum omne, proelium pār.

257. There are a few adjectives of one ending that have consonant stems. They are declined exactly like nouns with consonant stems.

1 omnis is usually translated every in the singular and all in the plural.
First learn the special vocabulary, p. 293.


II. 1. Some months are short, others are long. 2. To seize the top of the mountain was difficult. 3. Among the hills of Italy are many beautiful springs. 4. The soldiers were sitting where the baggage had been placed because their feet were weary. 5. The city which the soldiers were eager to storm had been fortified by strong walls and high towers. 6. Did not the king intrust a heavy crown of gold and all his money to a faithless slave? Yes, but the slave had never before been faithless.
LESSON XLVI

THE FOURTH OR U-DECLENSION

259. Nouns of the fourth declension are either masculine or neuter.
260. Masculine nouns end in -us, neuters in -ũ. The genitive ends in -ũs.
   a. Feminine by exception are domus, house; manus, hand; and a few others.

PARADIGMS

adventus, m., arrival  cornũ, n., horn

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>TERMINATIONS</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>masc.</td>
<td>neut.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>adventus</td>
<td>cornũ</td>
<td>-us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>adventũs</td>
<td>cornũs</td>
<td>-ũs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>adventui (ũ)</td>
<td>cornũ</td>
<td>-ũ (ũ)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>adventum</td>
<td>cornũ</td>
<td>-um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>adventũ</td>
<td>cornũ</td>
<td>-ũ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>TERMINATIONS</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>masc.</td>
<td>neut.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>adventũs</td>
<td>cornua</td>
<td>-ũs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>adventuum</td>
<td>cornuum</td>
<td>-uum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>adventibus</td>
<td>cornibus</td>
<td>-ibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>adventũs</td>
<td>cornua</td>
<td>-ũs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>adventibus</td>
<td>cornibus</td>
<td>-ibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Observe that the base is found, as in other declensions, by dropping the ending of the genitive singular.
2. lacus, lake, has the ending -ubus in the dative and ablative plural; portus, harbor, has either -ubus or -ibus.
3. cornũ is the only neuter that is in common use.

261. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 293.

I. 1. Ante adventum Caesaris vēlōcēs hostium equitēs ācrem impetum in castra fecerunt. 2. Continēre exercitum ā proeliō nōn facile erat. 3. Post adventum suum Caesar iussit legiōnēs ex castris

II. 1. Did you see the man-of-war on the lake? 2. I did not see it (fem.) on the lake, but I saw it in the harbor. 3. Because of the strong wind the sailor forbade his brother to sail. 4. Cæsar didn’t make an attack on the cavalry on the right wing, did he? 5. No, he made an attack on the left wing. 6. Who taught your swift horse to obey? 7. I trained my horse with my (own) hands, nor was the task difficult. 8. He is a beautiful animal and has great strength.

LESSON XLVII

EXPRESSIONS OF PLACE · THE DECLENSION OF DOMUS

262. We have become thoroughly familiar with expressions like the following:

Galba ad (or in) oppidum properat
Galba ab (dē or ex) oppidō properat
Galba in oppidō habitat

From these expressions we may deduce the following rules:

263. Rule. Accusative of the Place to. The place to which is expressed by ad or in with the accusative. This answers the question Whither?

264. Rule. Ablative of the Place from. The place from which is expressed by ā or ab, dē, ē or ex, with the separative ablative. This answers the question Whence? (Cf. Rule, § 179.)

265. Rule. Ablative of the Place at or in. The place at or in which is expressed by the ablative with in. This answers the question Where?
EXPRESSIONS OF PLACE

a. The ablative denoting the place where is called the locative ablative (cf. locus, place).

266. Exceptions. Names of towns, small islands, domus, home, rūs, country, and a few other words in common use omit the prepositions in expressions of place, as,

Galba Athēnās properat, Galba hastens to Athens
Galba Athēnis properat, Galba hastens from Athens
Galba Athēnis habitat, Galba lives at (or in) Athens
Galba domum properat, Galba hastens home
Galba rūs properat, Galba hastens to the country
Galba domō properat, Galba hastens from home
Galba rūre properat, Galba hastens from the country
Galba rūri (less commonly rūre) habitat, Galba lives in the country

a. Names of countries, like Germānia, Italia, etc., do not come under these exceptions. With them prepositions must not be omitted.

267. The Locative Case. We saw above that the place-relation expressed by at or in is regularly covered by the locative ablative. However, Latin originally expressed this relation by a separate form known as the locative case. This case has been everywhere merged in the ablative excepting in the singular number of the first and second declensions. The form of the locative in these declensions is like the genitive singular, and its use is limited to names of towns and small islands, domī, at home, and a few other words.

268. Rule. Locative and Locative Ablative. To express the place in which with names of towns and small islands, if they are singular and of the first or second declension, use the locative; otherwise use the locative ablative without a preposition; as,

Galba Rōmae habitat, Galba lives at Rome
Galba Corinthī habitat, Galba lives at Corinth
Galba domī habitat, Galba lives at home

1 Small islands are classed with towns because they generally have but one town, and the name of the town is the same as the name of the island.
Here Rōmae, Corinthī, and domī are locatives, being singular and of the first and second declensions respectively. But in

Galba Athenēs habitat, Galba lives at Athens,
Galba Pompeīis habitat, Galba lives at Pompeii

Athēnēs and Pompeīis are locative ablatives. These words can have no locative case, as the nominatives Athenae and Pompeii are plural and there is no plural locative case form.

269. The word domus, home, house, has forms of both the second and the fourth declension. Learn its declension (§ 468).

270. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 293.

I. 1. Corinthī omnia insignia aurī ā ducibus victoribus rapta erant.

II. 1. Cæsār, the famous general, when he had departed from Rome, hastened to the Roman province on a swift horse.¹ 2. He had heard a rumor concerning the allies at Geneva. 3. After his arrival Cæsar called the soldiers together and commanded them to join battle. 4. The enemy hastened to retreat, some because² they were afraid, others because² of wounds. 5. Recently I was at Athens and saw the place where the judges used to sit.³ 6. Marcus and Sextus are my brothers; the one lives at Rome, the other in the country.

¹ Latin says “by a swift horse.” What construction? ² Distinguish between the English conjunction because (quia or quod) and the preposition because of (propter). ³ used to sit, express by the imperfect.
DAEDALUS ET ICARUS
271. **THE FIFTH OR Ė-DECLENSION**

**DAED'ALUS AND ICA'BUS**

Crēta est īnsula antiqua quae aquā altā magnī marīs pulsātur. Ibi ōlim Minōs erat rēx. Ad eum vēnit Daedalus qui ex Graeciā patriā fugiēbat.¹ Eum Minōs rēx benignīs verbīs accēpit et eī domiciliōm in Crētā dedit. ¹Quō in locō Daedalus sine cūrā vivēbat et rēgī multa et clāra opera faciēbat. Post tempus longum autem Daedalus patriam 5 cāram désiderāre incēpit. Domum properāre studēbat, sed rēgī persuādēre nōn potuit et mare saevum fugam vetābat.

---

**LESSON XLVIII**

**THE FIFTH OR Ė-DECLENSION · THE ABLATIVE OF TIME**

272. **Gender.** Nouns of the fifth declension are feminine except diēs, day, and merīdiēs, midday, which are usually masculine.

273. **PARADIGMS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>sing, m., day</th>
<th>res, f., thing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>bases</strong></td>
<td><strong>-</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>nom.</strong></td>
<td>diēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>gen.</strong></td>
<td>diēi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>dat.</strong></td>
<td>diēī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>acc.</strong></td>
<td>diēm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>abl.</strong></td>
<td>diē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**plur.**

| **nom.**     | diēs          | res            |
| **gen.**     | diērum       | rērum          |
| **dat.**     | diēbus       | rēbus          |
| **acc.**     | diēs         | rēs            |
| **abl.**     | diēbus       | rēbus          |

¹ *And in this place; quō does not here introduce a subordinate relative clause, but establishes the connection with the preceding sentence. Such a relative is called a connecting relative, and is translated by and and a demonstrative or personal pronoun.*
1. The vowel e which appears in every form is regularly long. It is shortened in the ending -eī after a consonant, as in r-eī; and before -m in the accusative singular, as in di-em. (Cf. § 12. 2.)

2. Only diēs and rēs are complete in the plural. Most other nouns of this declension lack the plural. Acīēs, line of battle, and spēs, hope, have the nominative and accusative plural.

274. The ablative relation (§ 50) which is expressed by the prepositions at, in, or on may refer not only to place, but also to time, as at noon, in summer, on the first day. The ablative which is used to express this relation is called the ablative of time.

275. Rule. The Ablative of Time. The time when or within which anything happens is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

a. Occasionally the preposition in is found. Compare the English Next day we started and On the next day we started.

276. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 294.


II. 1. In that month there were many battles in Gaul. 2. The cavalry of the enemy made an attack upon Caesār’s line of battle. 3. In the first hour of the night the ship was overcome by the billows. 4. On the second day the savages were eager to come under Caesār’s protection. 5. The king had joined battle, moved by the hope of victory. 6. That year a fire destroyed many birds and other animals. 7. We saw blood on the wild beast’s teeth.
Daed'alus and Ic'arus (Continued)

Turn Daedalus' gravibus curis commotus filio suo Ícaro ita dixit:

LESSON XLIX

PRONOUNS CLASSIFIED • PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

278. We have the same kinds of pronouns in Latin as in English. They are divided into the following eight classes:

1. **Personal pronouns**, which show the person speaking, spoken to, or spoken of; as, *ego, I; tū, you; is, he.* (Cf. § 279, etc.)

2. **Possessive pronouns**, which denote possession; as, *meus, tuus, suus,* etc. (Cf. § 98.)

3. **Reflexive pronouns**, used in the predicate to refer back to the subject; as, *he saw himself.* (Cf. § 281.)

4. **Intensive pronouns**, used to emphasize a noun or pronoun; as, *I myself saw it.* (Cf. § 285.)

5. **Demonstrative pronouns**, which point out persons or things; as, *is, this, that.* (Cf. § 112.)

6. **Relative pronouns**, which connect a subordinate adjective clause with an antecedent; as, *qui, who.* (Cf. § 220.)

7. **Interrogative pronouns**, which ask a question; as, *quis, who?* (Cf. § 225.)

8. **Indefinite pronouns**, which point out indefinitely; as, *some one, any one, some, certain ones,* etc. (Cf. § 296.)

279. The demonstrative pronoun *is, ea, id,* as we learned in § 115, is regularly used as the personal pronoun of the third person (*he, she, it, they,* etc.).
280. The personal pronouns of the first person are ego, I; nōs, we; of the second person, tū, thou or you; vōs, ye or you. They are declined as follows:

**Singular**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FIRST PERSON</th>
<th>SECOND PERSON</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. ego, I</td>
<td>tū, you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. meī, of me</td>
<td>tui, of you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. mihi, to or for me</td>
<td>tibi, to or for you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. mē, me</td>
<td>tē, you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. mē, with, from, etc., me</td>
<td>tē, with, from, etc., you</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plural**

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. nōs, we</td>
<td>vōs, you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. nostrum or nostrī, of us</td>
<td>vestrum or vestri, of you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. nōbis, to or for us</td>
<td>vōbis, to or for you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. nōs, us</td>
<td>vōs, you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. nōbis, with, from, etc., us</td>
<td>vōbis, with, from, etc., you</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. The personal pronouns are not used in the nominative excepting for emphasis or contrast.

281. The Reflexive Pronouns. 1. The personal pronouns ego and tū may be used in the predicate as reflexives; as,

- videō mē, I see myself
- vidēmus nōs, we see ourselves
- vidēs tē, you see yourself
- vidētis vōs, you see yourselves

2. The reflexive pronoun of the third person (himself, herself, itself, themselves) has a special form, used only in these senses, and declined alike in the singular and plural.

**Singular and Plural**

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen. suī</td>
<td>Acc. sē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. sibi</td>
<td>Abl. sē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

- Puer sē videt, the boy sees himself
- Puella sē videt, the girl sees herself
- Animal sē videt, the animal sees itself
- Iī sē vident, they see themselves

a. The form sē is sometimes doubled, sēsē, for emphasis.
3. Give the Latin for

I teach myself
You teach yourself
He teaches himself
We teach ourselves
You teach yourselves
They teach themselves

282. The preposition cum, when used with the ablative of ego, tū, or sui, is appended to the form, as, mēcum, with me; tēcum, with you; nōbiscum, with us; etc.

283. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 294.


II. 1. Whom do you teach? I teach myself. 2. The soldier wounded himself with his sword. 3. The master praises us, but you he does not praise. 4. Therefore he will inflict punishment on you, but we shall not suffer punishment. 5. Who will march (i.e. make a march) with me to Rome? 6. I will march with you to the gates of the city. 7. Who will show us the way? The gods will show you the way.

DAED'ALUS AND IC'ARUS (Concluded)

284. Puer Īcarus ūnā stābat et mīrum patris opus vidēbat. Postquam manus ultima ālis imposita est, Daedalus eās temptāvit et similis āvī in aurās volāvit. Tum ālas umeris filī adligāvit et docūit eum volāre et dīxit, "Tē vetō, mi filī, adpropinquāre aut sōlī aut marī. Si fluctibus adpropinquāveris, aquā ālis tuīs nocēbit, et si sōlī adpropinquāveris, 5

1 Not accusative. 2 Adverb, see vocabulary. 3 manus ultima, the finishing touch. What literally? 4 Future perfect. Translate by the present.

LESSON L

THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN IPSE AND THE DEMONSTRATIVE ĪDEM

285. Ipse means -self (himself, her-self, etc.) or is translated by even or very. It is used to emphasize a noun or pronoun, expressed or understood, with which it agrees like an adjective.

a. Ipse must be carefully distinguished from the reflexive suī. The latter is always used as a pronoun, while ipse is regularly adjective. Compare

Homo sē videt, the man sees himself (reflexive)
Homo ipse periculum videt, the man himself (intensive) sees the danger
Homo ipsum periculum videt, the man sees the danger itself (intensive)

286. Except for the one form ipse, the intensive pronoun is declined exactly like the nine irregular adjectives (cf. §§ 108, 109). Learn the declension (§ 481).

287. The demonstrative idem, meaning the same, is a compound of is. It is declined as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>idem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>eius'dem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>eī'dem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>eun'dem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>eō'dem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. From forms like eundem (eum + -dem), eōrundem (eōrum + -dem), we learn the rule that m before ā is changed to n.

b. The forms iīdem, iīsdem are often spelled and pronounced with one ĩ.
288. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 295.


II. 1. At Pompeiī there is a wonderful mountain. 2. When I was in that place, I myself saw that mountain. 3. On the same day many cities were destroyed by fire and stones from that very mountain. 4. You have not heard the true story of that calamity, have you? 3 5. On that day the very sun could not give light to men. 6. You yourself ought to tell (to) us that story.

289. HOW HORATIUS HELD THE BRIDGE 4

Tarquinius Superbus, septimus et ultimus rēx Rōmānōrum, ubi in exsilium ab irātīs Rōmānīs éiectus est, ā Porsenā, rēge Etrūscōrum, auxilium petīt. Mox Porsena magnīs cum cōpiīs Rōmam vēnit, et ipsa urbs summō in periculō erat. Omnibus in partībus exercitus Rōmānus victus erat. Iam rēx montem Iāniculum 5 occupāverat. 5 Numquam anteā Rōmānī tantō metū tenēbantur. Ex agrīs in urbem properābant et summō studiō urbem ipsam mūniēbant.

1 Observe that in Latin we say I and you, not you and I. 2 Not parts, but directions. 3 Cf. § 210. 4 The story of Horatius has been made familiar by Macaulay's well-known poem "Horatius" in his Lays of Ancient Rome. Read the poem in connection with this selection. 5 The Janiculum is a high hill across the Tiber from Rome.
LESSON LI

THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS HIC, ISTE, ILLE

290. We have already learned the declension of the demonstrative pronoun is and its use. (Cf. Lesson XVII.) That pronoun refers to persons or things either far or near, and makes no definite reference to place or time. If we wish to point out an object definitely in place or time, we must use hic, iste, or ille. These demonstratives, like is, are used both as pronouns and as adjectives, and their relation to the speaker may be represented graphically thus:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Speaker</th>
<th>hic</th>
<th>iste</th>
<th>ille</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

*this, he (near); that, he (remote); that, he (more remote)*

a. In dialogue hic refers to a person or thing near the speaker; iste, to a person or thing near the person addressed; ille, to a person or thing remote from both. These distinctions are illustrated in the model sentences, § 293, which should be carefully studied and imitated.

291. Hic is declined as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong></td>
<td><strong>MASC.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>hie</strong></td>
<td><strong>hi</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gen.</strong></td>
<td><strong>huius</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dat.</strong></td>
<td><strong>huic</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acc.</strong></td>
<td><strong>hunc</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abl.</strong></td>
<td><strong>hoc</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. Huius is pronounced *hōyōös*, and huic is pronounced *hōic* (one syllable).

292. The demonstrative pronouns iste, ista, istud, and ille, illa, illud, except for the nominative and accusative singular neuter forms istud and illud, are declined exactly like ipse, ipsa, ipsum. (See § 481.)
THE DEMONSTRATIVES HIC, ISTE, ILLE 129

293. MODEL SENTENCES

Is this horse (of mine) strong? Estne hic equus validus?
That horse (of yours) is strong, but that one (yonder) is weak
Are these (men by me) your friends? Suntne hie amici tui?
Those (men by you) are my friends, but those (men yonder) are enemies

294. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 295.


II. 1. Does that bird (of yours)² sing? 2. This bird (of mine)² sings both¹ in summer and in winter and has a beautiful voice. 3. Those birds (yonder)² in the country don’t sing in winter. 4. Snatch a spear from the hands of that soldier (near you)² and come home with me. 5. With those very eyes (of yours)² you will see the tracks of the hateful enemy who burned my dwelling and made an attack on my brother. 6. For (propter) these deeds (rés) we ought to inflict punishment on him without delay. 7. The enemies of the republic do not always suffer punishment.

¹ The perfect definite. (Cf. § 190.) ² English words in parentheses are not to be translated. They are inserted to show what demonstratives should be used. (Cf. § 290.) ³ both . . . and, et . . . et.
295. How Horatius held the Bridge (Continued)

Altera urbis pars mūris, altera flūmine satis mūnīri vidēbātur. Sed erat pōns in flūmine qui hostibus iter paene dedit. Tum Horātius Cōcles, fortis vir, magnā vōce dīxit, "Rescīndite pontem, Rōmānī! Brevi tempore Porsena in urbem cōpiās suās trādūcet." Iam hostēs in ponte erant, sed Horātius cum duōbus (cf. § 479) comitibus ad extrēmam pontis partem properāvit, et hī sōlī aciem hostīum sustinuērunt. Tum vērō cīvēs Rōmānī pontem ā tergō rescindere incipiunt, et hostēs frūstrā Horātium superāre temptant.

LESSON LII

THE INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

296. The indefinite pronouns are used to refer to some person or some thing, without indicating which particular one is meant. The pronouns quis and qui, which we have learned in their interrogative and relative uses, may also be indefinite; and nearly all the other indefinite pronouns are compounds of quis or qui and declined almost like them. Review the declension of these words, §§ 221, 227.
297. Learn the declension and meaning of the following indefinites:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>quis</td>
<td>quid, some one, any one (substantive)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quí</td>
<td>quod, some, any (adjective), § 483</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aliquis</td>
<td>aliquid, some one, any one (substantive), § 487</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aliquí</td>
<td>aliquod, some, any (adjective), § 487</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quídam</td>
<td>quoddam, quiddam, a certain, a certain one, § 485</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quisquam</td>
<td>quicquam or quidquam (no plural), any one (at all)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quisque</td>
<td>quidque, each, every one (substantive), § 484</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quisque</td>
<td>quodque, each, every (adjective), § 484</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>quaeque</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note. The meanings of the neuters, something, etc., are easily inferred from the masculine and feminine.

a. In the masculine and neuter singular of the indefinites, quis-forms and quid-forms are mostly used as substantives, quí-forms and quod-forms as adjectives.

b. The indefinites quis and quí never stand first in a clause, and are rare excepting after si, nisi, nē, num (as, sī quis, if any one; sī quid, if anything; nisi quis, unless some one). Generally aliquis and aliquí are used instead.

c. The forms qua and aliqua are both feminine nominative singular and neuter nominative plural of the indefinite adjectives quí and aliquí respectively. How do these differ from the corresponding forms of the relative quí?

d. Observe that quídam (quí + -dam) is declined like quí, except that in the accusative singular and genitive plural m of quí becomes n (cf. § 287. a): quendam, quandam, quørundam, quārundam; also that the neuter has quiddam (substantive) and quoddam (adjective) in the nominative and accusative singular. Quídam is the least indefinite of the indefinite pronouns, and implies that you could name the person or thing referred to if you cared to do so.

e. Quisquam and quisque (substantive) are declined like quis.

f. Quisquam, any one (quicquam or quidquam, anything), is always used substantively and chiefly in negative sentences. The corresponding adjective any is üllus, -a, -um ($§$ 108).
First learn the special vocabulary, p. 295.


II. 1. If you see a certain Cornelius at Corinth, send him to me. 2. Almost all the soldiers who fell down into the waves were unharmed. 3. Not even at Pompeii did I see so great a fire. 4. I myself was eager to tell something to some one. 5. Each one was praising his own work. 6. Did you see some one in the country? I did not see any one. 7. Unless some one will remain on the bridge with Horatius, the commonwealth will be in the greatest danger.

299. How Horatius held the Bridge (Concluded)

Mox, ubi parva pars pontis mānsit, Horātius iussit comitēs discēdere et sōlus mirā constantia impetum illius tōtius exercitus sustinēbat. Dēnique magnō fragōre pōns in flūmen dēcīdit. Tum vērō Horātius tegum vertit et armātus in aquās désiluit. In eum hostēs multa tēla iēcērunt; incolumis autem per fluctūs ad alteram rīpam trānāvit. Ei propter tantās rēs gestās populus Rōmānus nōn sōlum alia magna praemia dedit sed etiam statuam Horātī in locō pūblicō posuit.

Sixth Review, Lessons XLV-LII, §§ 521-523

1 Observe that quidam and quidem are different words.
300. The quality denoted by an adjective may exist in either a higher or a lower degree, and this is expressed by a form of inflection called comparison. The mere presence of the quality is expressed by the positive degree, its presence in a higher or lower degree by the comparative, and in the highest or lowest of all by the superlative. In English the usual way of comparing an adjective is by using the suffix -er for the comparative and -est for the superlative; as, positive high, comparative higher, superlative highest. Less frequently we use the adverbs more and most; as, positive beautiful, comparative more beautiful, superlative most beautiful.

In Latin, as in English, adjectives are compared by adding suffixes or by using adverbs.

301. Adjectives are compared by using suffixes as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>clārus, -a, -um (bright)</td>
<td>clārior, clārius (brighter)</td>
<td>clārissimus, -a, -um (brightest)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brevis, breve (short)</td>
<td>brevior, brevius (shorter)</td>
<td>brevissimus, -a, -um (shortest)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vēlōx (swift)</td>
<td>vēlōcior, vēlōcius (swifter)</td>
<td>vēlōcissimus, -a, -um (swiftest)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. The comparative is formed from the base of the positive by adding -ior masc. and fem., and -ius neut.; the superlative by adding -issimus, -issima, -issimum.

302. Less frequently adjectives are compared by using the adverbs magis, more; maximē, most; as, idōneus, suitable; magis idōneus, more suitable; maximē idōneus, most suitable.

303. Declension of the Comparative. Adjectives of the comparative degree are declined as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. clārior</td>
<td>clārius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. clāriōris</td>
<td>clāriōris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. clāriōri</td>
<td>clāriōri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. clāriōrem</td>
<td>clāriōs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. clāriōre</td>
<td>clāriōre</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

a. Observe that the endings are those of the consonant stems of the third declension.

b. Compare longus, long; fortis, brave; recēns (base, recent-), recent; and decline the comparative of each.

304. Adjectives in -er form the comparative regularly, but the superlative is formed by adding -rimus, -a, -um to the nominative masculine of the positive; as,

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ācer, ācris, ācre (Base ācr-)</td>
<td>ācrior, ācius</td>
<td>ācerrimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum (Base pulchr-)</td>
<td>pulchrior, pulchrius</td>
<td>pulcherrimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liber, libera, liberum (Base liber-)</td>
<td>liberior, liberius</td>
<td>liberrimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. In a similar manner compare miser, aeger, crēber.

305. The comparative is often translated by quite, too, or somewhat, and the superlative by very; as, altior, quite (too, somewhat) high; altissimus, very high.

306. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 296.


II. 1. Of all birds the eagle is the swiftest. 2. Certain animals are swifter than the swiftest horse. 3. The Roman name was most

¹ Why is this word used instead of hostēs?
hateful to the enemies of the commonwealth. 4. The Romans always inflicted the severest\(^1\) punishment on faithless allies. 5. I was quite ill, and so I hastened from the city to the country. 6. Marcus had some friends dearer than Caesar.\(^2\) 7. Did you not seek a more recent report concerning the battle? 8. Not even after a victory so opportune did he seek the general's friendship.

N.B. Beginning at this point, the selections for reading will be found near the end of the volume. (See p. 197.)

**LESSON LIV**

**IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES • THE ABLATIVE WITH COMPARATIVES WITHOUT QUAM**

307. The following six adjectives in -\(\text{lis}\) form the comparative regularly; but the superlative is formed by adding -\(\text{limus}\) to the base of the positive. Learn the meanings and comparison.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>facilis, -(\text{e}), easy</td>
<td>facilior, -(\text{ius})</td>
<td>facillimus, -(\text{a}), -(\text{um})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>difficilis, -(\text{e}), hard</td>
<td>difficilior, -(\text{ius})</td>
<td>difficillimus, -(\text{a}), -(\text{um})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>similis, -(\text{e}), like</td>
<td>similiar, -(\text{ius})</td>
<td>simillimus, -(\text{a}), -(\text{um})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dissimilis, -(\text{e}), unlike</td>
<td>dissimilior, -(\text{ius})</td>
<td>dissimillimus, -(\text{a}), -(\text{um})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gracilis, -(\text{e}), slender</td>
<td>gracilior, -(\text{ius})</td>
<td>gracillimus, -(\text{a}), -(\text{um})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>humilis, -(\text{e}), low</td>
<td>humilior, -(\text{ius})</td>
<td>humillimus, -(\text{a}), -(\text{um})</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

308. From the knowledge gained in the preceding lesson we should translate the sentence *Nothing is brighter than the sun*

*Nihil est clarius quam sōl*

But the Romans, especially in negative sentences, often expressed the comparison in this way,

*Nihil est clārius sōle*

which, literally translated, is *Nothing is brighter away from the sun*; that is, starting from the sun as a standard, nothing is brighter. This relation is expressed by the separative ablative sōle. Hence the rule

\(^1\) Use the superlative of gravis.  \(^2\) Accusative. In a comparison the noun after quam is in the same case as the one before it.
309. Rule. Ablative with Comparatives. *The comparative degree, if quam is omitted, is followed by the separative ablative.*

310. **Exercises**

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 296.


II. 1. What city have you seen more beautiful than Rome? 2. The Gauls were not more eager than the Germans. 3. The eagle is not slower than the horse. 4. The spirited woman did not fear to make the journey by night. 5. The mind of the multitude was quite gentle and friendly. 6. But the king’s mind was very different. 7. The king was not like (similar to) his noble father. 8. These hills are lower than the huge mountains of our territory.
IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (Continued)

311. Some adjectives in English have irregular comparison, as good, better, best; many, more, most. So Latin comparison presents some irregularities. Among the adjectives that are compared irregularly are

Positive | Comparative | Superlative
--- | --- | ---
bonus, -a, -um, good | melior, melius | optimus, -a, -um
magnus, -a, -um, great | maior, maius | maximus, -a, -um
maius, -a, -um, bad | peior, peius | pessimus, -a, -um
multus, -a, -um, much | —, plús | plurímus, -a, -um
multi, -ae, -a, many | plurēs, plurā | plurimī, -ae, -a
parvus, -a, -um, small | minor, minus | minimus, -a, -um

312. The following four adjectives have two superlatives. Unusual forms are placed in parentheses.

exterus, -a, -um, outward | (exterior, -ius, outer) | \{ extrēmus, -a, -um \ (extimus, -a, -um) \} outermost, last
inferus, -a, -um, low | inferior, -ius, lower | \{ infimus, -a, -um \ ímus, -a, -um \} lowest
posterus, -a, -um, next | (posterior, -ius, later) | \{ postrēmus, -a, -um \ (postumus, -a, -um) \} last
superus, -a, -um, above | superior, -ius, higher | \{ suprēmus, -a, -um \ summus, -a, -um \} highest

313. Plús, more (plural more, many, several), is declined as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Masc. and Fem.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>————</td>
<td>plús</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gen.</strong></td>
<td>————</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dat.</strong></td>
<td>————</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acc.</strong></td>
<td>————</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abl.</strong></td>
<td>————</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*a.* In the singular plús is used only as a neuter substantive.
### EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 296.


II. 1. The remaining women fled from their dwellings and hid themselves. 2. They were terrified and did not wish to be captured and given over into slavery. 3. Nothing can be worse than slavery. 4. Slavery is worse than death. 5. In the Roman empire a great many were killed because they refused to be slaves. 6. To surrender the fatherland is the worst crime.

### LESSON LVI

**IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (Concluded) • ABLATIVE OF THE MEASURE OF DIFFERENCE**

#### 315.

The following adjectives are irregular in the formation of the superlative and have no positive. Forms rarely used are in parentheses.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>citerior, hither</td>
<td>(citimus, hithermost)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interior, inner</td>
<td>(intimus, inmost)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prior, former</td>
<td>primus, first</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>propior, nearer</td>
<td>proximus, next, nearest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ulterior, further</td>
<td>ultimus, furthest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 316.

In the sentence *Galba is a head taller than Sextus*, the phrase *a head taller* expresses the **measure of difference** in height between...
Galba and Sextus. The Latin form of expression would be *Galba is taller than Sextus by a head*. This is clearly an ablative relation, and the construction is called the *ablative of the measure of difference*.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Galba est altior capite quam Sextus} \\
\text{Galba is a head taller (taller by a head) than Sextus.} \\
\text{Illud iter ad Italiam est multō brevius} \\
\text{That route to Italy is much shorter (shorter by much)}
\end{align*}
\]

**317. Rule.** Ablative of the Measure of Difference. *With comparatives and words implying comparison the ablative is used to denote the measure of difference.*

\[a. \text{Especially common in this construction are the neuter ablatives}
\]

\[\begin{align*}
eō, \text{by this, by that} & \quad \text{nihilō,}^1 \text{ by nothing} \\
hōc, \text{by this} & \quad \text{paulō, by a little} \\
multō, \text{by much}
\end{align*}\]

**318. Exercises**

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 297.


II. 1. Another way much more difficult (more difficult by much) was left through hither Gaul. 2. In ancient times no state was stronger than the Roman empire. 3. The states of further Gaul did not wish to give hostages to Cæsar. 4. Slavery is no better (better by nothing) than death. 5. The best citizens are not loved by the worst. 6. The active enemy immediately withdrew into the nearest forest, for they were terrified by Cæsar’s recent victories.

\[1 \text{nihil was originally nihilum and declined like pilum. There is no plural.}\]
LESSON LVII
FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

319. Adverbs are generally derived from adjectives, as in English (e.g. adj. sweet, adv. sweetly). Like adjectives, they can be compared; but they have no declension.

320. Adverbs derived from adjectives of the first and second declensions are formed and compared as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Adj. carus, dear</td>
<td>Adv. carē, dearly</td>
<td>cārius, cērius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adj. pulcher, beautiful</td>
<td>Adv. pulchrē, beautifully</td>
<td>pulchrior, pulchrius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adj. liber, free</td>
<td>Adv. liberē, freely</td>
<td>liberior, liberius</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. The positive of the adverb is formed by adding -ē to the base of the positive of the adjective. The superlative of the adverb is formed from the superlative of the adjective in the same way.

b. The comparative of any adverb is the neuter accusative singular of the comparative of the adjective.

321. Adverbs derived from adjectives of the third declension are formed like those described above in the comparative and superlative. The positive is usually formed by adding -iter to the base of adjectives of three endings or of two endings, and -ter to the base of those of one ending;¹ as,

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Adj. fortis, brave</td>
<td>Adv. fortiter, bravely</td>
<td>fortior, fortius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adj. audāx, bold</td>
<td>Adv. audācter, boldly</td>
<td>audācior, audācius</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ This is a good working rule, though there are some exceptions to it.
322. Case Forms as Adverbs. As we learned above, the neuter accusative of comparatives is used adverbially. So in the positive or superlative some adjectives, instead of following the usual formation, use the accusative or the ablative singular neuter adverbially; as,

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adj.</th>
<th>Adv.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>facilis, easy</td>
<td>facile (acc.), easily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>primus, first</td>
<td>primum (acc.), first</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plurimus, most</td>
<td>plurimum (acc.), most</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

323. Learn the following irregular comparisons:

| bene, well | melius, better |
| diū, long (time) | diūtius, longer |
| magnopere, greatly | magis, more |
| parum, little | minus, less |
| prope, nearly, near | propius, nearer |
| saepe, often | saepius, oftener |
| optimē, best | diūtissimē, longest |
| maximē, most | minimē, least |
| proximē, nearest | saepissimē, oftenest |

324. Form adverbs from the following adjectives, using the regular rules, and compare them: laetus, superbus, molestus, amīcus, ācer, brevis, gravis, recēns.


326. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 297.


1 ille standing after its noun means that well-known, that famous.
8. Rōmānī saepius quam hostēs vicērunt, quod meliōra arma habēbant. 9. Inter omnis gentīs Rōmānī plurimum valēbant. 10. Hae cohortēs simul atque in aequiōrem regionem sē recēpērunt, castra sine ūlā difficultāte posuērunt.

II. 1. Some nations are easily overcome by their enemies. 2. Germany is much larger than Gaul. 3. Were not the Romans the most powerful among the tribes of Italy? 4. On account of (his) wounds the soldier dragged his body from the ditch with the greatest difficulty. 5. He was able neither to run nor to fight. 6. Who saved him? A certain horseman boldly undertook the matter. 7. The rumors concerning the soldier’s death were not true.

LESSON LVIII
NUMERALS · THE PARTITIVE GENITIVE

327. The Latin numeral adjectives may be classified as follows:
1. Cardinal Numerals, answering the question how many? as, unus, one; duo, two; etc.
2. Ordinal Numerals, derived in most cases from the cardinals and answering the question in what order? as, primus, first; secundus, second; etc.
3. Distributive Numerals, answering the question how many at a time? as, singuli, one at a time.

328. The Cardinal Numerals. The first twenty of the cardinals are as follows:

1, unus  6, sex  11, undecim  16, sedecim
2, duo  7, septem  12, duodecim  17, septendecim
3, tres  8, octō  13, tredecim  18, duodēvigintī
4, quattuor  9, novem  14, quattuordecim  19, undēvigintī
5, quīnque  10, decem  15, quīndecim  20, vigintī

a. Learn also centum = 100, ducentī = 200, mīlle = 1000.

329. Declension of the Cardinals. Of the cardinals only unus, duo, tres, the hundreds above one hundred, and mīlle used as a noun, are declinable.
a. **únus** is one of the nine irregular adjectives, and is declined like **nīllus** (cf. §§ 109, 470): The plural of **únus** is used to agree with a plural noun of a singular meaning, as, *únā castra*, *one camp*; and with other nouns in the sense of *only*, as, *Galli ūnī*, *only the Gauls*.

b. Learn the declension of **duo**, *two*; **trēs**, *three*; and **mīlle**, *a thousand*.

c. The hundreds above one hundred are declined like the plural of **bōnus**; as,

   ducentī, -ae, -a
   ducentōrum, -ārum, -ōrum
   etc. etc. etc.

330. We have already become familiar with sentences like the following:

   Omnium avium aquila est vēlōcissima
   Of all birds the eagle is the swiftest
   Hoc ōrāculum erat omnium clāri ssimum
   This oracle was the most famous of all

In such sentences the genitive denotes the whole, and the word it modifies denotes a part of that whole. Such a genitive, denoting the whole of which a part is taken, is called a **partitive genitive**.

331. **Rule.** **Partitive Genitive.** *Words denoting a part are often used with the genitive of the whole, known as the partitive genitive.*

a. Words denoting a part are especially pronouns, numerals, and other adjectives. But cardinal numbers excepting **mīlle** regularly take the ablative with *ex* or *dē* instead of the partitive genitive.

b. **Mīlle**, *a thousand*, in the singular is usually an indeclinable adjective (as, *mīlle mīlitēs*, *a thousand soldiers*), but in the plural it is a declinable noun and takes the partitive genitive (as, *decem mīlia mīlitum*, *ten thousand soldiers*).

**Examples:**

   Fortissimi hōrum sunt Germānī
   *The bravest of these are the Germans*
   Decem mīlia hostium interfecta sunt
   *Ten thousand (lit. thousands) of the enemy were slain*
   Ūnā ex captīvīs erat sōror rēgis
   *One of the captives was the king's sister*
EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 297.


II. 1. I have two brothers, and one of them lives at Rome. 2. Caesar stormed that very town with three legions. 3. In one hour he destroyed a great part of the fortification. 4. When the enemy could no longer defend the gates, they retreated to a hill which was not far distant. 5. There three thousand of them bravely resisted the Romans.

LESSON LIX

NUMERALS (Continued) · THE ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT

333. Learn the first twenty of the ordinal numerals (§ 478).
The ordinals are all declined like bonus.

334. The distributive numerals are declined like the plural of bonus.
The first three are

singuli, -ae, -a, one each, one by one
bini, -ae, -a, two each, two by two
terni, -ae, -a, three each, three by three

335. We have learned that, besides its use as object, the accusative is used to express space relations not covered by the ablative. We have had such expressions as per plurimos annos, for a great many

1 Ablative of the measure of difference. 2 Not longius. Why? 3 Latin, was distant by a small space. 4 Not the accusative.
years; per tōtum diem, for a whole day. Here the space relation is one of extent of time. We could also say per decem pedēs, for ten feet, where the space relation is one of extent of space. While this is correct Latin, the usual form is to use the accusative with no preposition, as,

Vir tōtum diem cucurrit, the man ran for a whole day
Caesar mūrum decem pedēs mōvit, Caesar moved the wall ten feet

336. Rule. Accusative of Extent. Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the accusative.

a. This accusative answers the questions how long? how far?
b. Distinguish carefully between the accusative of time how long and the ablative of time when, or within which.

Select the accusatives of time and space and the ablatives of time in the following:

When did the general arrive? He arrived at two o’clock. How long had he been marching? For four days. How far did he march? He marched sixty-five miles. Where has he pitched his camp? Three miles from the river, and he will remain there several days. The wall around the camp is ten feet high. When did the war begin? In the first year after the king’s death.

337. Exercises

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 298.


1 Translate as if pluperfect.
II. 1. Cæsar pitched camp two miles from the river. 2. He fortified the camp with a ditch fifteen feet wide and a rampart nine feet high. 3. The camp of the enemy was a great way off (was distant by a great space). 4. On the next day he hastened ten miles in three hours. 5. Suddenly the enemy with all their forces made an attack upon (in with acc.) the rear. 6. For two hours the Romans were hard pressed by the barbarians. 7. In three hours the barbarians were fleeing.

LESSON LX

DEPONENT VERBS

338. A number of verbs are passive in form but active in meaning; as, hortor, I encourage; vereor, I fear. Such verbs are called deponent because they have laid aside (dē-pōnere, to lay aside) the active forms.

a. Besides having all the forms of the passive, deponent verbs have also the future active infinitive and a few other active forms which will be noted later. (See §§ 375, 403. b.)

339. The principal parts of deponents are of course passive in form, as,

\[
\begin{align*}
& \text{Conj. I} & \text{hortor, hortāri, hortātus sum, encourage} \\
& \text{Conj. II} & \text{vereor, verēri, veritus sum, fear} \\
& \text{Conj. III (a)} & \text{sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, follow} \\
& \text{Conj. III (b)} & \text{patior, patī, passus sum, suffer, allow} \\
& \text{Conj. IV} & \text{partior, partīri, partitus sum, share, divide}
\end{align*}
\]

Learn the synopses of these verbs. (See § 493.) Patior is conjugated like the passive of capiō (§ 492).

340. PREPOSITIONS WITH THE ACCUSATIVE

The prepositions with the accusative that occur most frequently are

\[
\begin{align*}
ad, & \text{ to, ante, before} & \text{intrā, within} \\
apud, & \text{among} & \text{ob, on account of (quam ob rem, wherefore, therefore)} \\
circum, & \text{around} & \text{per, through, by means of} \\
contrā, & \text{against, contrary to} & \text{post, after, behind} \\
extrā, & \text{outside of} & \text{propter, on account of, because of} \\
in, & \text{into, in, against, upon} & \text{trans, across, over}
\end{align*}
\]

a. Most of these you have had before. Review the old ones and learn the new ones. Review the list of prepositions governing the ablative, § 209.
First learn the special vocabulary, p. 298.


II. 1. Contrary to our expectation, the enemy fled and the cavalry followed close after them. 2. From all parts of the multitude the shouts arose of those who were being wounded. 3. Cæsar did not allow the cavalry to pursue too far. 4. The cavalry set out at the first hour and was returning to camp at the fourth hour. 5. Around the Roman camp was a rampart twelve feet high. 6. Cæsar will delay three days because of the grain supply. 7. Nearly all the lieutenants feared the enemy and attempted to delay the march.

1 Comparative of longē. 2 Will this be a deponent or an active form?

Seventh Review, Lessons LIII–LX, §§ 524–526
The preceding part of this book has been concerned chiefly with forms and vocabulary. There remain still to be learned the forms of the Subjunctive Mood, the Participles, and the Gerund of the regular verb, and the conjugation of the commoner irregular verbs. These will be taken up in connection with the study of constructions, which will be the chief subject of our future work. The special vocabularies of the preceding lessons contain, exclusive of proper names, about six hundred words. As these are among the commonest words in the language, they must be mastered. They properly form the basis of the study of words, and will be reviewed and used with but few additions in the remaining lessons.

For practice in reading and to illustrate the constructions presented, a continued story has been prepared and may be begun at this point (see p. 204). It has been divided into chapters of convenient length to accompany progress through the lessons, but may be read with equal profit after the lessons are finished. The story gives an account of the life and adventures of Publius Cornelius Lentulus, a Roman boy, who fought in Cæsar’s campaigns and shared in his triumph. The colored plates illustrating the story are faithful representations of ancient life and are deserving of careful study.
CAPTIVI INTERROGANTUR

(See page 221)
The subjunctive mood

In addition to the indicative, imperative, and infinitive moods, which you have learned, Latin has a fourth mood called the subjunctive. The tenses of the subjunctive are

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Pluperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The tenses of the subjunctive have the same time values as the corresponding tenses of the indicative, and, in addition, each of them may refer to future time. No meanings of the tenses will be given in the paradigms, as the translation varies with the construction used.

The present subjunctive is inflected as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conjugation</th>
<th>Active Voice</th>
<th>Passive Voice</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SINGULAR</td>
<td>SINGULAR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PLURAL</td>
<td>PLURAL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| 1. a'mem    | mo'ncam      | re'gam        | ca'piam       | au'diam       |
| 2. a'mēs    | mo'neās      | re'gās        | ca'piās       | au'diās       |
| 3. a'met    | mo'neat      | re'gat        | ca'piat       | au'diāt       |

1. amē'mus   | moneā'mus    | regā'mus      | capia'mus     | audiā'mus     |
2. amē'tis   | moneā'tis    | regā'tis      | capia'tis     | audiā'tis     |
3. a'ment    | mo'neant     | re'gant       | ca'piant      | au'diānt      |

| 1. a'mer    | mo'near      | re'gar        | ca'piar       | au'diar       |
| 2. amē'ris  | moneā'ris    | regā'ris      | capia'ris     | audiā'ris     |
| 3. amē'tur  | moneā'tur    | regā'tur      | capia'tur     | audiā'tur     |
THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

PLURAL

1. amē'mur moneā'mur regā'mur capiā'mur audiā'mur
2. amē'mini moneā'mini regā'mini capiā'mini audiā'mini
3. amen'tur monean'tur regan'tur capian'tur audian'tur

a. The present subjunctive is formed from the present stem.
b. The mood sign of the present subjunctive is -ē- in the first conjugation and -ā- in the others. It is shortened in the usual places (cf. § 12), and takes the place of the final vowel of the stem in the first and third conjugations, but not in the second and fourth.
c. The personal endings are the same as in the indicative.
d. In a similar way inflect the present subjunctive of cūrō, iubeō, sūmō, iaciō, mūniō.

345. The present subjunctive of the irregular verb sum is inflected as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sing.</th>
<th>Plur.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. sim</td>
<td>1. sīmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. sis</td>
<td>2. sītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. sit</td>
<td>3. sīnt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

346. The Indicative and Subjunctive Compared. 1. The two most important of the finite moods are the indicative and the subjunctive. The indicative deals with facts either real or assumed. If, then, we wish to assert something as a fact or to inquire after a fact, we use the indicative.

2. On the other hand, if we wish to express a desire or wish, a purpose, a possibility, an expectation, or some such notion, we must use the subjunctive. The following sentences illustrate the difference between the indicative and the subjunctive ideas.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicative Ideas</th>
<th>Subjunctive Ideas</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. He is brave</td>
<td>1. May he be brave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fortis est</td>
<td>Fortis sit (idea of wishing)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. We set out at once</td>
<td>2. Let us set out at once</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Statim proficiscimur</td>
<td>Statim proficiscāmur (idea of willing)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. You hear him every day</td>
<td>3. You can hear him every day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cotidiē eum audis</td>
<td>Cotidiē eum audiās (idea of possibility)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INDICATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE COMPARED

INDICATIVE IDEAS

4. He remained until the ship arrived
Mānsit dum nāvis pervēnit

5. Caesar sends men who find the bridge
Caesar mittit hominēs quī pontem reperiunt

SUBJUNCTIVE IDEAS

4. He waited until the ship should arrive
Exspectāvit dum nāvis pervenīret

5. Caesar sends men who are to find (or to find) the bridge
Caesar hominēs mittit quī pontem reperiant

Note. From the sentences above we observe that the subjunctive may be used in either independent or dependent clauses; but it is far more common in the latter than in the former.

347. EXERCISE

Which verbs in the following paragraph would be in the indicative and which in the subjunctive in a Latin translation?

There have been times in the history of our country when you might be proud of being an American citizen. Do you remember the day when Dewey sailed into Manila Bay to capture or destroy the enemy’s fleet? You might have seen the admiral standing on the bridge calmly giving his orders. He did not even wait until the mines should be removed from the harbor’s mouth, but sailed in at once. Let us not despair of our country while such valor exists, and may the future add new glories to the past.

LESSON LXII

THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF PURPOSE

348. Observe the sentence

Caesar hominēs mittit quī pontem reperiant, Caesar sends men to find the bridge

The verb reperiant in the dependent clause is in the subjunctive because it tells us what Caesar wants the men to do; in other words, it expresses his will and the purpose in his mind. Such a use of the subjunctive is called the subjunctive of purpose.

1 pervenīret, imperfect subjunctive.
349. Rule. Subjunctive of Purpose. The subjunctive is used in a dependent clause to express the purpose of the action in the principal clause.

350. A clause of purpose is introduced as follows:
I. If something is wanted, by
   quī, the relative pronoun (as above)
   ut, conj., in order that, that
   quō (abl. of quī, by which), in order that, that, used when
   the purpose clause contains a comparative. The ablative
   quō expresses the measure of difference. (Cf. § 317.)

II. If something is not wanted, by
   nē, conj., in order that not, that not, lest

351. EXAMPLES
1. Caesar cōpiās cōgit quibus hostīs īsequātur
   Caesar collects troops with which to pursue the foe
2. Pācem petunt ut domum revertantur
   They ask for peace in order that they may return home
3. Pontem faciunt quō facilius oppidum capiant
   They build a bridge that they may take the town more
   easily (lit. by which the more easily)
4. Fugiunt nē vulnerentur
   They flee that they may not (or lest they) be wounded

352. Expression of Purpose in English. In English, purpose clauses are sometimes introduced by that or in order that, but much more frequently purpose is expressed in English by the infinitive, as We eat to live, She stoops to conquer. In Latin prose, on the other hand, purpose is never expressed by the infinitive. Be on your guard and do not let the English idiom betray you into this error.

353. EXERCISES
I.
1. Veniunt ut { dūcant, mittant, videant, audiant,
               dūcantur, mittantur, videantur, audiantur.
2. Fugimus nē { capiāmur, trādāmur, videāmus,
               necēmur, rapiāmur, resistāmus.

4. Castra mūniunt sésec défendant, impetum sustineant, quō facilius hostīs vincant, salūtem pētant.

II. 1. The Helvetii send ambassadors to seek[^1] peace. 2. They are setting out at daybreak in order that they may make a longer march before night. 3. They will hide the women in the forest (acc. with in) that they may not be captured. 4. The Gauls wage many wars to free[^1] their fatherland from slavery. 5. They will resist the Romans[^2] bravely lest they be destroyed.

**LESSON LXIII**

**INFLECTION OF THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE**

**THE SEQUENCE OF TENSES**

354. The imperfect subjunctive may be formed by adding the personal endings to the present active infinitive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conj. I</th>
<th>Conj. II</th>
<th>Conj. III</th>
<th>Conj. IV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>ACTIVE</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. amā'rem</td>
<td>monē'rem</td>
<td>re'gerem</td>
<td>ca'perem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. amā'rēs</td>
<td>monē'rēs</td>
<td>re'gerēs</td>
<td>ca'perēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. amā'ret</td>
<td>monē'ret</td>
<td>re'geret</td>
<td>ca'peret</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. amā'rms</td>
<td>monē'rms</td>
<td>regerē'mus</td>
<td>caperē'mus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. amā'retis</td>
<td>monē'retis</td>
<td>regerē'tis</td>
<td>caperē'tis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. amā'rent</td>
<td>monē'rent</td>
<td>re'gerent</td>
<td>ca'perent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PASSIVE</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. amā'rerer</td>
<td>monē'rerer</td>
<td>re'gerer</td>
<td>caperer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. amā'reris(-re)</td>
<td>monē'reris(-re)</td>
<td>regerē'ris(-re)</td>
<td>caperē'ris(-re)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. amā'retur</td>
<td>monē'retur</td>
<td>regerē'tur</td>
<td>caperē'tur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. amā'remur</td>
<td>monē'remur</td>
<td>regerē'mur</td>
<td>caperē'mur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. amā'remini</td>
<td>monē'remini</td>
<td>regerē'mini</td>
<td>caperē'mini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. amā'rentur</td>
<td>monē'rentur</td>
<td>regerē'ntur</td>
<td>caperē'ntur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*a. In a similar way inflect the imperfect subjunctive, active and passive, of cūrō, iubeō, sūmō, iaciō, mūniō.*

[^1]: Not infinitive.  
[^2]: Not accusative.
355. The imperfect subjunctive of the irregular verb sum is inflected as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. es'sem</td>
<td>1. ess'amus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. es'ses</td>
<td>2. ess'etis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. es'set</td>
<td>3. es'sent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

356. The three great distinctions of time are present, past, and future. All tenses referring to present or future time are called primary tenses, and those referring to past time are called secondary tenses. Now it is a very common law of language that in a complex sentence the tense in the dependent clause should be of the same kind as the tense in the principal clause. In the sentence *He says that he is coming*, the principal verb, *says*, is present, that is, is in a primary tense; and *is coming*, in the dependent clause, is naturally also primary. If I change *he says* to *he said*, — in other words, if I make the principal verb secondary in character, — I feel it natural to change the verb in the dependent clause also, and I say, *He said that he was coming*. This following of a tense by another of the same kind is called tense sequence, from sequi, "to follow."

In Latin the law of tense sequence is obeyed with considerable regularity, especially when an indicative in the principal clause is followed by a subjunctive in the dependent clause. Then a primary tense of the indicative is followed by a primary tense of the subjunctive, and a secondary tense of the indicative is followed by a secondary tense of the subjunctive. Learn the following table:

357. **Table for Sequence of Tenses**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Principal Verb in the Indicative</th>
<th>Dependent Verbs in the Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Inconplete or Continuing Action</strong></td>
<td>Completed Action</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>Present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future perfect</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperfect</td>
<td>Imperfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pluperfect</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
SEQUENCE OF TENSES

358. **Rule. Sequence of Tenses.** Primary tenses are followed by primary tenses and secondary by secondary.

359. **Examples**

I. Primary tenses in principal and dependent clauses:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Mittit} & \quad \text{hominēs ut agrōs vāstent} \\
\text{Mittet} & \quad \text{that they may} \\
\text{Miserit} & \quad \text{in order to} \\
\text{He} & \quad \text{lay waste the fields}
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Mittet} & \quad \text{men} \\
\text{Miserat} & \quad \text{to}
\end{align*}
\]

II. Secondary tenses in principal and dependent clauses:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Mittēbat} & \quad \text{hominēs ut agrōs vāstārent} \\
\text{Misit} & \quad \text{that they might} \\
\text{Miserat} & \quad \text{in order to} \\
\text{He} & \quad \text{lay waste the fields}
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Mittēbat} & \quad \text{men} \\
\text{Misit} & \quad \text{to}
\end{align*}
\]

360. **Exercises**

I.

1. Vēnerant ut \{ dūcerent, mitterent, vidērent, audīrent, dūcerentur, mitterentur, vidērentur, audīrentur. \}
2. Fugīebat né \{ caperētur, trāderētur, vidērētur, necārētur, raperētur, resisteret. \}
3. Mīsit nūntiōs quī \{ dicerent, audīrent, venīrent, nārrārent, audīrentur, in conciliō sedērent. \}
4. Castra mūnīvērunt \{ sēsē dēfenderent, impetum sustinērent, quō facilius hostīs vincerent, salūtem peterent. \}

II. 1. Cæsar encouraged the soldiers in order that they might fight more bravely. 2. The Helvetii left their homes to wage war. 3. The scouts set out at once lest they should be captured by the Germans. 4. Cæsar inflicted punishment on them in order that the others might be more terrified. 5. He sent messengers to Rome to announce the victory.
LESSON LXIV

THE PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE
SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE

361. The perfect and the pluperfect subjunctive active are inflected as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conj. I</th>
<th>Conj. II</th>
<th>Conj. III</th>
<th>Conj. IV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perfect Subjunctive Active</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SINGULAR</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. amā'verim</td>
<td>monu'erm</td>
<td>rē'xerim</td>
<td>cē'perim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. amā'veris</td>
<td>monu'eris</td>
<td>rē'xeris</td>
<td>cē'peris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. amā'verit</td>
<td>monu'erit</td>
<td>rē'xerit</td>
<td>cē'perit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLURAL</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. amāve'rimus</td>
<td>monu'ermus</td>
<td>rēx'mus</td>
<td>cēperim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. amāve'ritis</td>
<td>monu'ritis</td>
<td>rēxe'ritis</td>
<td>cēpe'ritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. amā'verint</td>
<td>monu'erint</td>
<td>rē'xerint</td>
<td>cē'perint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Pluperfect Subjunctive Active

| SINGULAR         |                  |                  |                  |
| 1. amavis'sem    | monuis'sem       | rēxis'sem        | cēpis'sem        | audivis'sem |
| 2. amavis'sēs    | monuis'sēs       | rēxis'sēs        | cēpis'sēs        | audivis'sēs |
| 3. amavis'set    | monuis'set       | rēxis'set        | cēpis'set        | audivis'set |
| PLURAL           |                  |                  |                  |
| 1. amavisse'mus  | monuissē'mus     | rēxissē'mus      | cēpissē'mus      | audivissē'mus |
| 2. amavisse'tis  | monuissē'tis     | rēxissē'tis      | cēpissē'tis      | audivissē'tis |
| 3. amavis'sent   | monuis'sent      | rēxis'sent       | cēpis'sent       | audivis'sent |

a. Observe that these two tenses, like the corresponding ones in the indicative, are formed from the perfect stem.
b. Observe that the perfect subjunctive active is like the future perfect indicative active, excepting that the first person singular ends in -m and not in -ō.
c. Observe that the pluperfect subjunctive active may be formed by adding -issem, -issēs, etc. to the perfect stem.
d. In a similar way inflect the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive active of cūrō, iubeō, sūmō, iaciō, mūniō.
The passive of the perfect subjunctive is formed by combining the perfect passive participle with *sim*, the present subjunctive of *sum*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>CONJ. I</th>
<th>CONJ. II</th>
<th>CONJ. III</th>
<th>CONJ. IV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perfect Subjunctive Passive</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Singular</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. amā'\textsuperscript{t}us \textsuperscript{im}</td>
<td>mo'\textsuperscript{n}itus \textsuperscript{im}</td>
<td>rēc't\textsuperscript{u} \textsuperscript{si}</td>
<td>cap't\textsuperscript{u} \textsuperscript{si}</td>
<td>audi't\textsuperscript{u} \textsuperscript{si}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. amā'\textsuperscript{t}us \textsuperscript{sīs}</td>
<td>mo'\textsuperscript{n}itus \textsuperscript{sīs}</td>
<td>rēc't\textsuperscript{u} \textsuperscript{sis}</td>
<td>cap't\textsuperscript{u} \textsuperscript{sis}</td>
<td>audi't\textsuperscript{u} \textsuperscript{sis}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. amā'\textsuperscript{t}us \textsuperscript{sit}</td>
<td>mo'\textsuperscript{n}itus \textsuperscript{sit}</td>
<td>rēc't\textsuperscript{u} \textsuperscript{sit}</td>
<td>cap't\textsuperscript{u} \textsuperscript{sit}</td>
<td>audi't\textsuperscript{u} \textsuperscript{sit}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plural</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. amā'\textsuperscript{t}i \textsuperscript{sīmus}</td>
<td>mo'\textsuperscript{n}itus \textsuperscript{sīmus}</td>
<td>rēc't\textsuperscript{u} \textsuperscript{sīmus}</td>
<td>cap't\textsuperscript{u} \textsuperscript{sīmus}</td>
<td>audi't\textsuperscript{u} \textsuperscript{sīmus}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. amā'\textsuperscript{t}i \textsuperscript{sītīs}</td>
<td>mo'\textsuperscript{n}itus \textsuperscript{sītīs}</td>
<td>rēc't\textsuperscript{u} \textsuperscript{sītīs}</td>
<td>cap't\textsuperscript{u} \textsuperscript{sītīs}</td>
<td>audi't\textsuperscript{u} \textsuperscript{sītīs}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. amā'\textsuperscript{t}i \textsuperscript{sin}</td>
<td>mo'\textsuperscript{n}itus \textsuperscript{sin}</td>
<td>rēc't\textsuperscript{u} \textsuperscript{sin}</td>
<td>cap't\textsuperscript{u} \textsuperscript{sin}</td>
<td>audi't\textsuperscript{u} \textsuperscript{sin}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The passive of the pluperfect subjunctive is formed by combining the perfect passive participle with *essem*, the imperfect subjunctive of *sum*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>CONJ. I</th>
<th>CONJ. II</th>
<th>CONJ. III</th>
<th>CONJ. IV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pluperfect Subjunctive Passive</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Singular</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. amā'\textsuperscript{t}us \textsuperscript{essem}</td>
<td>mo'\textsuperscript{n}itus \textsuperscript{essem}</td>
<td>rēc't\textsuperscript{u} \textsuperscript{essem}</td>
<td>cap't\textsuperscript{u} \textsuperscript{essem}</td>
<td>audi't\textsuperscript{u} \textsuperscript{essem}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. amā'\textsuperscript{t}us \textsuperscript{es\textsuperscript{sīs}}</td>
<td>monitus \textsuperscript{es\textsuperscript{sīs}}</td>
<td>rēc\textsuperscript{t} \textsuperscript{es\textsuperscript{sīs}}</td>
<td>cap\textsuperscript{t} \textsuperscript{es\textsuperscript{sīs}}</td>
<td>audi\textsuperscript{t} \textsuperscript{es\textsuperscript{sīs}}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. amā'\textsuperscript{t}us \textsuperscript{es\textsuperscript{set}}</td>
<td>monitus \textsuperscript{es\textsuperscript{set}}</td>
<td>rēc\textsuperscript{t} \textsuperscript{es\textsuperscript{set}}</td>
<td>cap\textsuperscript{t} \textsuperscript{es\textsuperscript{set}}</td>
<td>audi\textsuperscript{t} \textsuperscript{es\textsuperscript{set}}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plural</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. amā'\textsuperscript{t}i \textsuperscript{es\textsuperscript{semus}}</td>
<td>moniti \textsuperscript{es\textsuperscript{semus}}</td>
<td>rēc\textsuperscript{t} \textsuperscript{es\textsuperscript{semus}}</td>
<td>cap\textsuperscript{t} \textsuperscript{es\textsuperscript{semus}}</td>
<td>audi\textsuperscript{t} \textsuperscript{es\textsuperscript{semus}}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. amā'\textsuperscript{t}i \textsuperscript{es\textsuperscript{sētīs}}</td>
<td>moniti \textsuperscript{es\textsuperscript{sētīs}}</td>
<td>rēc\textsuperscript{t} \textsuperscript{es\textsuperscript{sētīs}}</td>
<td>cap\textsuperscript{t} \textsuperscript{es\textsuperscript{sētīs}}</td>
<td>audi\textsuperscript{t} \textsuperscript{es\textsuperscript{sētīs}}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. amā'\textsuperscript{t}i \textsuperscript{es\textsuperscript{sent}}</td>
<td>moniti \textsuperscript{es\textsuperscript{sent}}</td>
<td>rēc\textsuperscript{t} \textsuperscript{es\textsuperscript{sent}}</td>
<td>cap\textsuperscript{t} \textsuperscript{es\textsuperscript{sent}}</td>
<td>audi\textsuperscript{t} \textsuperscript{es\textsuperscript{sent}}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In a similar way inflect the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive passive of *cūrō*, *iubeō*, *sūmō*, *iaciō*, *müniō*.

The perfect and pluperfect subjunctive of the irregular verb *sum* are inflected as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Perfect</strong></th>
<th><strong>Pluperfect</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fu'erim</td>
<td>fuis'sem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fu'eres</td>
<td>fuis'sēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fu'erit</td>
<td>fuis'sent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
365. A substantive clause is a clause used like a noun, as,

That the men are afraid is clear enough (clause as subject)
He ordered them to call on him (clause as object)

We have already had many instances of infinitive clauses used in this way (cf. § 213), and have noted the similarity between Latin and English usage in this respect. But the Latin often uses the subjunctive in substantive clauses, and this marks an important difference between the two languages.

366. Rule. Substantive Clauses of Purpose. A substantive clause of purpose with the subjunctive is used as the object of verbs of commanding, urging, asking, persuading, or advising, where in English we should usually have the infinitive.

**EXAMPLES**

1. The general ordered the soldiers to run
   Imperātor militibus imperāvit ut currerent
2. He urged them to resist bravely
   Hortātus est ut fortiter resisterent
3. He asked them to give the children food
   Petīvit ut līberīs cibum darent
4. He will persuade us not to set out
   Nōbis persuādēbit nē proficīscāmur
5. He advises us to remain at home
   Monet ut domī maneāmus

   a. The object clauses following these verbs all express the purpose or will of the principal subject that something be done or not done. (Cf. § 348.)

367. The following verbs are used with object clauses of purpose. Learn the list and the principal parts of the new ones.

hortor, urge
imperō, order (with the dative of the person ordered and a subjunctive clause of the thing ordered done)
moneō, advise

petō, quaeō, rogo, ask, seek
persuādeo, persuade (with the same construction as imperō)
postulō, demand, require
suādeo, advise (cf. persuādeo)

N.B. Remember that iubeō, order, takes the infinitive as in English. (Cf. § 213. 1.) Compare the sentences

Iubeō eum venire, I order him to come
Imperō ei ut veniat, I give orders to him that he is to come
We ordinarily translate both of these sentences like the first, but the difference in meaning between iubeō and imperō in the Latin requires the infinitive in the one case and the subjunctive in the other.

368.  EXERCISES


II. 1. Who ordered Cæsar to make the march? (Write this sentence both with imperō and with iubeō.) 2. The faithless scouts persuaded him to set out at daybreak. 3. They will ask him not to inflict punishment. 4. He demanded that they come to the camp. 5. He advised them to tell everything (omnia).

Note. Do not forget that the English infinitive expressing purpose must be rendered by a Latin subjunctive. Review § 352.
LESSON LXV

THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF possum - VERBS OF FEARING

369. Learn the subjunctive of possum (§ 495), and note especially the position of the accent.

370. Subjunctive after Verbs of Fearing. We have learned that what we want done or not done is expressed in Latin by a subjunctive clause of purpose. In this class belong also clauses after verbs of fearing, for we fear either that something will happen or that it will not, and we either want it to happen or we do not. If we want a thing to happen and fear that it will not, the purpose clause is introduced by ut. If we do not want it to happen and fear that it will, ne is used. Owing to a difference between the English and Latin idiom we translate ut after a verb of fearing by that not, and ne by that or lest.

371. EXAMPLES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>timeō</td>
<td>I fear, shall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fear, shall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>have feared, that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he will not come,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>has not come</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timēbō</td>
<td>ut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timuerō</td>
<td>vēnerit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timēbam</td>
<td>venīret</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timuī</td>
<td>ut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timueram</td>
<td>vēnisset</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I was fearing, feared, had feared, that he would not come, had not come

The same examples with ne instead of ut would be translated I fear that or lest he will come, has come, etc.

372. RULE. Subjunctive after Verbs of Fearing. Verbs of fearing are followed by a substantive clause of purpose introduced by ut (that not) or ne (that or lest).
I. Caesar verēbatur ut supplicium captivōrum Gallis placēret. 2. Römānī ipsī magnopere verēbantur nē Helvētīī iter per prōvin-ciam facerent. 3. Timēbant ut satis reī frūmentāriāe mittī posset. 4. Vereor ut hostium impetum sustinēre possim. 5. Timuit nē impe-dimenta ab hostibus capta essent. 6. Caesar numquam timuit nē legiōnēs vincerentur. 7. Legiōnēs pugnāre nōn timuērunt.1

II. 1. We fear that they are not coming. 2. We fear lest they are coming. 3. We feared that they had come. 4. We feared that they had not come. 5. They feared greatly that the camp could not be defended. 6. Almost all feared1 to leave the camp.

LESSON LXVI

THE PARTICIPLES

374. The Latin verb has the following Participles:2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conj. I</th>
<th>Conj. II</th>
<th>Conj. III</th>
<th>Conj. IV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ACTIVE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>amāns</td>
<td>monēns</td>
<td>regēns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>loving</td>
<td>advising</td>
<td>ruling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>amātūrus</td>
<td>monitūrus</td>
<td>rēctūrus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>about to</td>
<td>about to</td>
<td>about to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>love</td>
<td>advise</td>
<td>rule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PASSIVE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect</td>
<td>amātus</td>
<td>monitus</td>
<td>rēctus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>loved, hav-</td>
<td>advised, hav-</td>
<td>ruled, hav-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ing been</td>
<td>ing been</td>
<td>ing been</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>loved</td>
<td>advised</td>
<td>ruled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amānūs</td>
<td>monendūs</td>
<td>regendūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>to be</td>
<td>to be</td>
<td>to be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>loved</td>
<td>advised</td>
<td>ruled</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Distinguish between what one is afraid to do (complementary infinitive as here) and what one is afraid will take place or has taken place (substantive clause with the subjunctive). 2 Review § 203. 3 The future passive participle is often called the gerundive.
THE PARTICIPLES

a. The present active and future passive participles are formed from the present stem, and the future active and perfect passive participles are formed from the participial stem.

b. The present active participle is formed by adding -ns to the present stem. In -io verbs of the third conjugation, and in the fourth conjugation, the stem is modified by the addition of -e, as capi-ns, audi-ens. It is declined like an adjective of one ending of the third declension. (Cf. § 256.)

amans, loving

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base</th>
<th>Stem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>amant-</strong></td>
<td><strong>amanti-</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th><strong>SINGULAR</strong></th>
<th><strong>Plural</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>amans</td>
<td>amans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>amantis</td>
<td>amantis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>amanti</td>
<td>amanti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>amantem</td>
<td>amans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>amanti or -e</td>
<td>amanti or -e</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. When used as an adjective the ablative singular ends in -ī; when used as a participle or as a substantive, in -e.

2. In a similar way decline monēns, regēns, capiēns, audiēns.

c. The future active participle is formed by adding -ūrus to the base of the participial stem. We have already met this form combined with esse to produce the future active infinitive. (Cf. § 206.)

d. For the perfect passive participle see § 201. The future passive participle or gerundive is formed by adding -ndus to the present stem.

e. All participles in -us are declined like bonus.

f. Participles agree with nouns or pronouns like adjectives.

g. Give all the participles of the following verbs: cūrō, iubeō, sūmō, iaciō, muniō.

375. Participles of Deponent Verbs. Deponent verbs have the participles of the active voice as well as of the passive; consequently every deponent verb has four participles, as,

- **Pres. Act.** hortāns, urging
- **Fut. Act.** hortātūrus, about to urge
- **Perf. Pass. (in form)** hortātus, having urged
- **Fut. Pass. (Gerundive)** hortandus, to be urged
THE PARTICIPLES 163

a. Observe that the perfect participle of deponent verbs is passive in form but active in meaning. No other verbs have a perfect active participle. On the other hand, the future passive participle of deponent verbs is passive in meaning as in other verbs.

b. Give the participles of cōnor, vereor, sequor, patior, partior.

376. Tenses of the Participle. The tenses express time as follows:

1. The present active participle corresponds to the English present active participle in -ing, but can be used only of an action occurring at the same time as the action of the main verb; as, militēs insequēntēs cēpērunt multōs, the soldiers, while pursuing, captured many. Here the pursuing and the capturing are going on together.

2. The perfect participle (excepting of deponents) is regularly passive and corresponds to the English past participle with or without the auxiliary having been; as, audītus, heard or having been heard.

3. The future active participle, translated about to, etc., denotes time after the action of the main verb.

377. Review §§ 203, 204, and note the following model sentences:

1. Militēs currentēs erant dēfessī, the soldiers who were running (lit. running) were weary.

2. Caesar profectūrus Rōmam nōn exspectāvit, Caesar, when about to set out (lit. about to set out) for Rome, did not wait.

3. Oppidum captum vidīmus, we saw the town which had been captured (lit. captured town).

4. Imperātor trīduum morātus profectus est, the general, since (when, or after) he had delayed (lit. the general, having delayed) three days, set out.

5. Militēs victī terga nōn vertērunt, the soldiers, though they were conquered (lit. the soldiers conquered), did not retreat.

In each of these sentences the literal translation of the participle is given in parentheses. We note, however, that its proper translation usually requires a clause beginning with some conjunction (when, since, after, though, etc.), or a relative clause. Consider, in each case, what translation will best bring out the thought, and do not, as a rule, translate the participle literally.

II. 1. The army was in very great danger while marching through the enemy’s country. 2. Frightened by the length of the way, they longed for home. 3. When the scouts were about to set out, they heard the shouts of victory. 4. When we had delayed many days, we set fire to the buildings and departed. 5. While living at Rome I heard orators much better than these. 6. The soldiers who are fighting across the river are no braver than we.

LESSON LXVII

THE IRREGULAR VERBS VOLŌ, NŌLO, MALŌ · THE ABLATIVE WITH A PARTICIPLE, OR ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

379. Learn the principal parts and conjugation of volō, wish; nōlo (ne + volō), be unwilling; mālo (magis + volō), be more willing, prefer (§ 497). Note the irregularities in the present indicative, subjunctive, and infinitive, and in the imperfect subjunctive. (Cf. § 354.)

a. These verbs are usually followed by the infinitive with or without a subject accusative; as, volunt venire, they wish to come; volunt amīcōs venire, they wish their friends to come. The English usage is the same. 2

380. Observe the following sentences:

1. Magistrō laudante omnēs puĕrī diligentē laborant, with the teacher praising, or since the teacher praises, or the teacher praising, all the boys labor diligently.

1 In this exercise use participles for the subordinate clauses. 2 Sometimes the subjunctive of purpose is used after these verbs. (See § 366.)
2. *Caesar dūcente nēmō prōgredi timet,* with Caesar leading, or when Caesar leads, or if Caesar leads, or Caesar leading, no one fears to advance.

3. *His rēbus cognitis militēs fūgerunt,* when this was known, or since this was known, or these things having been learned, the soldiers fled.

4. *Proelīō commissō multi vulnerāti sunt,* after the battle had begun, or when the battle had begun, or the battle having been joined, many were wounded.

a. One of the fundamental ablative relations is expressed in English by the preposition *with* (cf. § 50). In each of the sentences above we have a noun and a participle in agreement in the ablative, and the translation shows that in each instance the ablative expresses *attendant circumstance*. For example, in the first sentence the circumstance attending or accompanying the diligent labor of the boys is the praise of the teacher. This is clearly a *with* relation, and the ablative is the case to use.

b. We observe, further, that the ablative and its participle are absolutely independent grammatically of the rest of the sentence. If we were to express the thought in English in a similar way, we should use the nominative independent or absolute. In Latin the construction is called the Ablative Absolute, or the Ablative with a Participle. This form of expression is exceedingly common in Latin, but rather rare in English, so we must not, as a rule, employ the English absolute construction to translate the ablative absolute. The attendant circumstance may be one of *time* (when or after), or one of *cause* (since), or one of *concession* (though), or one of *condition* (if). In each case try to discover the precise relation, and translate the ablative and its participle by a clause which will best express the thought.

---

381. **Rule. Ablative Absolute.** The ablative of a noun or pronoun with a present or perfect participle in agreement is used to express attendant circumstance.

**Note 1.** The verb *sum* has no present participle. In consequence we often find two nouns or a noun and an adjective in the ablative absolute with no participle expressed; as, *tē duce,* you (being) leader, *with you as leader; patre infirmō, my father (being) weak.*

**Note 2.** Be very careful not to put in the ablative absolute a noun and participle that form the subject or object of a sentence. Compare

- **a.** The Gauls, having been conquered by Caesar, returned home
- **b.** The Gauls having been conquered by Caesar, the army returned home

In a the subject is *The Gauls having been conquered by Caesar,* and we translate,

*Galli ā Caesare victī domum revertērunt*
In the subject is the army. The Gauls having been conquered by Caesar is nominative absolute in English, which requires the ablative absolute in Latin, and we translate,

Gallis a Caesare victis exercitus domum revertit

Note 3. The fact that only deponent verbs have a perfect active participle (cf. § 375 A) often compels a change of voice when translating from one language to the other. For example, we can translate Caesar having encouraged the legions just as it stands, because hortor is a deponent verb. But if we wish to say Caesar having conquered the Gauls, we have to change the voice of the participle to the passive because vincō is not deponent, and say, the Gauls having been conquered by Caesar (see translation above).

382.


II. 1. He was unwilling, lest they prefer, they have wished. 2. You prefer, that they might be unwilling, they wish. 3. We wish, they had preferred, that he may prefer. 4. Cæsar, when he heard the rumor (the rumor having been heard), commanded (imperāre) the legions to advance more quickly. 5. Since Cæsar was leader, the men were willing to make the journey. 6. A few, terrified by the reports which they had heard, preferred to remain at home. 7. After these had been left behind, the rest hastened as quickly as possible. 8. After Cæsar had undertaken the business (Cæsar, the business having been undertaken), he was unwilling to delay longer.

1 Would the ablative absolute be correct here? 2 Not longius. Why?
THE IRREGULAR VERB FIŌ

LESSON LXVIII

THE IRREGULAR VERB FIŌ · THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF RESULT

383. The verb fiō, be made, happen, serves as the passive of faciō, make, in the present system. The rest of the verb is formed regularly from faciō. Learn the principal parts and conjugation (§ 500). Observe that the i is long except before -er and in fit.

a. The compounds of faciō with prepositions usually form the passive regularly, as,

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cōnfiō, cōnficere, cōnfeci, cōnfectus</td>
<td>cōnfiō, cōnficere, cōnfeci, cōnfectus sum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

384. Observe the following sentences:

1. Terror erat tantus ut omnēs fugerent, the terror was so great that all fled.
2. Terror erat tantus ut nōn facile militēs sēsē recuperent, the terror was so great that the soldiers did not easily recover themselves.
3. Terror fēcit ut omnēs fugerent, terror caused all to flee (lit. made that all fled).

a. Each of these sentences is complex, containing a principal clause and a subordinate clause.

b. The principal clause names a cause and the subordinate clause states the consequence or result of this cause.

c. The subordinate clause has its verb in the subjunctive, though it is translated like an indicative. The construction is called the subjunctive of consequence or result, and the clause is called a consecutive or result clause.

d. In the last example the clause of result is the object of the verb fēcit.

e. The conjunction introducing the consecutive or result clause is ut = so that; negative, ut nōn = so that not.

385. Rule. Subjunctive of Result. Consecutive clauses of result are introduced by ut or ut nōn and have the verb in the subjunctive.

386. Rule. Object clauses of result with ut or ut nōn are found after verbs of effecting or bringing about.

387. Purpose and Result Clauses Compared. There is great similarity in the expression of purpose and of result in Latin. If
the sentence is affirmative, both purpose and result clauses may be introduced by ut; but if the sentence is negative, the purpose clause has nē and the result clause ut nōn. Result clauses are often preceded in the main clause by such words as tam, ita, sic (so), and these serve to point them out. Compare

a. Tam graviter vulnerātus est ut caperētur
   He was so severely wounded that he was captured
b. Graviter vulnerātus est ut caperētur
   He was severely wounded in order that he might be captured

Which sentence contains a result clause, and how is it pointed out?

388.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Fit, fiēt, ut fiat, fiēbamus. 2. Fiō, fiēs, ut fierent, fieri, fiunt.

II. 1. It will happen, they were being made, that it may happen.
2. It happens, he will be made, to happen. 3. They are made, we were being made, lest it happen. 4. The soldiers are so brave that they conquer. 5. The soldiers are brave in order that they may conquer. 6. The fortification was made so strong that it could not be taken. 7. The fortification was made strong in order that it might not be taken. 8. After the town was taken, the townsmen feared that they would be made slaves. 9. What state is so weak that it is unwilling to defend itself?

1 ita tamen, with such a result however. 2 nē . . . quidem, not even. The emphatic word is placed between. 8 Ablative absolute.
LESSON LXIX

THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC OR DESCRIPTION
THE PREDICATE ACCUSATIVE

389. Akin to the subjunctive of consequence or result is the use of the subjunctive in clauses of characteristic or description.

This construction is illustrated in the following sentences:

1. Quis est qui suam domum non amet? *who is there who does not love his own home?*
2. Erant qui hoc facere nöllent, *there were (some) who were unwilling to do this.*
3. Tū nōn es qui amīcōs trādās, *you are not such a one as to, or you are not the man to, betray your friends.*
4. Nihil videō quod timeam, *I see nothing to fear (nothing of such a character as to fear it).*

a. Each of these examples contains a descriptive relative clause which tells what kind of a person or thing the antecedent is. To express this thought the subjunctive is used. A relative clause that merely states a fact and does not describe the antecedent uses the indicative. Compare the sentences

*Caesar is the man who is leading us, Caesar est is qui nōs dūcit*  
(mere statement of fact, no description, with the indicative)

*Caesar is the man to lead us, Caesar est is qui nōs dūcat (descriptive relative clause with the subjunctive)*

b. Observe that in this construction a demonstrative pronoun and a relative, as *is qui,* are translated *such a one as to, the man to.*

c. In which of the following sentences would you use the indicative and in which the subjunctive?

*These are not the men who did this*  
*These are not the men to do this*

390. **Rule.** Subjunctive of Characteristic. *A relative clause with the subjunctive is often used to describe an antecedent. This is called the subjunctive of characteristic or description.*
391. Observe the sentences

1. Rōmānī Caesarem cōnsulem fēcērunt, the Romans made Cēsar consul.
2. Caesar cōnsul ā Rōmānīs factus est, Cēsar was made consul by the Romans.

a. Observe in 1 that the transitive verb fēcērunt, made, has two objects: (1) the direct object, Caesarem; (2) a second object, cōnsulem, referring to the same person as the direct object and completing the predicate: The second accusative is called a Predicate Accusative.

b. Observe in 2 that when the verb is changed to the passive both of the accusatives become nominatives, the direct object becoming the subject and the predicate accusative the predicate nominative.

392. Rule. Two Accusatives. Verbs of making, choosing, calling, showing, and the like, may take a predicate accusative along with the direct object. With the passive voice the two accusatives become nominatives.

393. The verbs commonly found with two accusatives are

creo, creāre, creāvī, creātus, choose
appellō, appellāre, appellāvī, appellātus
nōminō, nōmināre, nōmināvī, nōminātus \{call
vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus
faciō, facere, fēcī, factus, make

394. EXERCISES

I. 1. In Germāniae silvis sunt 1 multa genera fērārum quae reliquīs in locīs nōn vīsa sint. 2. Erant 1 itinera duo quibus Helvētīi domō discedere possent. 3. Erat 1 manus nūlla, nūllum oppidum, nūllum prae sidium quod sē armīs dēfenderet. 4. Tōtō frumentō raptō, domī nihil erat quō mortem prohibēre possent. 5. Rōmānī Galbam ducem creāvērunt et summā celeritāte profectī sunt. 6. Neque erat 1 tantae multitudinis quisquam qui morārī vellet. 7. Germānī nōn ī sunt qui adventum Caesaris vereantur. 8. Cōnsulibus occīsīs erant qui 2 vellent

1 Remember that when the verb sum precedes its subject it is translated there is, there are, there were, etc. 2 erant qui, there were (some) who. A wholly indefinite antecedent of qui does not need to be expressed.
eum rēgem creāre. 9. Pāce factā erat nēmō quī arma trādere nōlet. 10. Inter Helvētiōs quis erat quī nōbilior illō esset?

II. 1. The Romans called the city Rome. 2. The city was called Rome by the Romans. 3. The better citizens wished to choose him king. 4. The brave soldier was not the man to run. 5. There was no one ¹ to call me friend. 6. These are not the men to² betray their friends. 7. There were (some) who called him the bravest of all.

Eighth Review, Lessons LXI-LXIX, §§ 527-528

LESSON LXX

THE CONSTRUCTIONS WITH THE CONJUNCTION CUM
THE ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION

395. The conjunction cum has the following meanings and constructions:

- cum TEMPORAL = when, followed by the indicative or the subjunctive
- cum CAUSAL = since, followed by the subjunctive
- cum CONCESSIONAL = although, followed by the subjunctive

As you observe, the mood after cum is sometimes indicative and sometimes subjunctive. The reason for this will be made clear by a study of the following sentences:

1. Caesarem vīdī tum cum in Galliā eram, I saw Cæsar at the time when I was in Gaul.
2. Caesar in eōs impetum fēcit cum pācem pēterent, Cæsar made an attack upon them when they were seeking peace.
3. Hoc erat difficile cum paucī sine vulneribus essent, this was difficult, since only a few were without wounds.
4. Cum prīmī ōrdinēs fūgisent, tamen reliquī fortiter cōnstitēbant, though the front ranks had fled, yet the rest bravely stood their ground.

a. The underlying principle is one already familiar to you (cf. § 389. a). When the cum clause states a fact and simply fixes the time at which the main action took place, the indicative mood is used. So, in the first example, cum in Galliā eram fixes the time when I saw Cæsar.

¹ A relative clause of characteristic or description. ² See § 389. b.
b. On the other hand, when the *cum* clause *describes the circumstances* under which the main act took place, the subjunctive mood is used. So, in the second example, the principal clause states that Caesar made an attack, and the *cum* clause describes the circumstances under which this act occurred. The idea of *time* is also present, but it is subordinate to the idea of *description*. Sometimes the descriptive clause is one of *cause* and we translate *cum* by *since*; sometimes it denotes *concession* and *cum* is translated *although*.

396. **Rule.** Constructions with *Cum*. The conjunction *cum* means *when, since, or although*. It is followed by the subjunctive unless it means *when* and its clause fixes the time at which the main action took place.

   **Note.** *Cum* in clauses of description with the subjunctive is much more common than its use with the indicative.

397. Note the following sentences:

1. Oppidum erat parvum magnitūdine sed magnum multitūdine homi-num, *the town was small in size but great in population.*
2. Homō erat corpore infirmus sed validus animō, *the man was weak in body but strong in courage.*

   **a.** Observe that *magnitūdine, multitūdine, corpore,* and *animō* tell *in what respect* something is true. The relation is one covered by the ablative case, and the construction is called the *ablative of specification*.

398. **Rule.** Ablative of Specification. *The ablative is used to denote in what respect something is true.*

399. **Idioms**

   *aliquem certōrem facere,* *to inform some one* (lit. *to make some one more certain*)

   *certior fieri,* *to be informed* (lit. *to be made more certain*)

   *iter dare,* *to give a right of way, allow to pass*

   *obsidēs inter sē dare,* *to give hostages to each other*

400. **Exercises**


Observe in each case what mood follows cum, and try to give the reasons for its use. In the third sentence the cum clause is concessive, in the fourth and sixth causal.

II. 1. That battle was fought at the time when (tum cum) I was at Rome. 2. Though the horsemen were few in number, nevertheless they did not retreat. 3. When the camp had been sufficiently fortified, the enemy returned home. 4. Since the tribes are giving hostages to each other, we shall inform Cæsar. 5. The Gauls and the Germans are very unlike in language and laws.

LESSON LXXI

VOCABULARY REVIEW · THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE

THE PREDICATE GENITIVE

401. Review the word lists in §§ 510, 511.

402. The Gerund. Suppose we had to translate the sentence

*By overcoming the Gauls Caesar won great glory*

We can see that *overcoming* here is a verbal noun corresponding to the English infinitive in *-ing*, and that the thought calls for the abla-tive of means. To translate this by the Latin infinitive would be impossible, because the infinitive is indeclinable and therefore has no ablative case form. Latin, however, has another verbal noun of corresponding meaning, called the *gerund*, declined as a neuter of the second declension in the *genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular*, and thus supplying the cases that the infinitive lacks.¹ Hence, to

¹ Sometimes, however, the infinitive is used as an accusative.
THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE

decline in Latin the verbal noun *overcoming*, we should use the infinitive for the nominative and the gerund for the other cases, as follows:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Nom.} & \quad \text{superāre} \left \{ \begin{array}{c}
\text{overcoming} \\
\text{to overcome}
\end{array} \right \} \text{INFinitive} \\
\text{Gen.} & \quad \text{superandī, of overcoming} \\
\text{Dat.} & \quad \text{superandō, for overcoming} \\
\text{Acc.} & \quad \text{superandum, overcoming} \\
\text{Abl.} & \quad \text{superandō, by overcoming}
\end{align*}
\]

Like the infinitive, the gerund governs the same case as the verb from which it is derived. So the sentence given above becomes in Latin

\[\text{Superandō Gallōs Caesar magnam glōriam reportāvit}\]

403. The gerund\(^1\) is formed by adding -ndī, -ndō, -ndum, -ndō, to the present stem, which is shortened or otherwise changed, as shown below:

**Paradigm of the Gerund**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONJ. I</th>
<th>CONJ. II</th>
<th>CONJ. III</th>
<th>CONJ. IV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>amandī</td>
<td>monendī</td>
<td>regendī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>amandō</td>
<td>monendō</td>
<td>regendō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>amandum</td>
<td>monendum</td>
<td>regendum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>amandō</td>
<td>monendō</td>
<td>regendō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. Give the gerund of cūrō, dēleō, sūmō, iaciō, veniō.
b. Deponent verbs have the gerund of the active voice (see § 493). Give the gerund of cōnor, vereor, sequor, patior, partior.

404. The Gerundive. The gerundive is the name given to the future passive participle (§ 374.\(^d\)) when the participle approaches the meaning of a verbal noun and is translated like a gerund. It is the adjective corresponding to the gerund. For example, to translate *the plan of waging war*, we may use the gerund with its direct object and say consilium gerendī bellum; or we may use the gerundive and say consilium bellī gerendī, which means, literally, *the plan of the war to be waged*, but which came to have the same force as the gerund with its object, and was even preferred to it.

\(^1\) The gerund is the neuter singular of the future passive participle used as a noun, and has the same formation. (Cf. § 374.\(^d\))
405. Compare the following parallel uses of the gerund and gerundive:

**Gerund**

*Gen.* Spēs faciendi pācem  
The hope of making peace

*Dat.* Locus idōneus pugnandō  
A place suitable for fighting

*Acc.* Misit equītēs ad īnsequendum  
He sent horsemen to pursue

*Abl.* Nārrandō fābulās magister puerīs placuit  
The teacher pleased the boys by telling stories

**Gerundive**

*Gen.* Spēs faciendae pācis  
The hope of making peace

*Dat.* Locus idōneus castrīs pōnendīs  
A place suitable for pitching camp

*Acc.* Misit equītēs ad īnsequendōs hostīs  
He sent horsemen to pursue the enemy

*Abl.* Nārrandīs fābulīs magister puerīs placuit  
The teacher pleased the boys by telling stories

a. We observe

1. That the gerund is a noun and the gerundive an adjective.
2. That the gerund, being a noun, may stand alone or with an object.
3. That the gerundive, being an adjective, is used only in agreement with a noun.

406. **Rule.** Gerund and Gerundive. 1. The Gerund is a verbal noun and is used only in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular. The constructions of these cases are in general the same as those of other nouns.

2. The Gerundive is a verbal adjective and must be used instead of gerund + object excepting in the genitive and in the ablative without a preposition. Even in these instances the gerundive construction is more usual.

407. **Rule.** Gerund or Gerundive of Purpose. The accusative of the gerund or gerundive with *ad*, or the genitive with *causā*\(^1\) (=for the sake of), is used to express purpose.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gerund</th>
<th>Gerundive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ad audiendum vēnērunt or</td>
<td>Ad urbem videndam vēnērunt or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audiendī causā vēnērunt</td>
<td>Urbis videndae causā vēnērunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They came to hear</td>
<td>They came to see the city</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^1\) *causā* always follows the genitive.
THE PREDICATE GENITIVE

Note. These sentences might, of course, be written with the subjunctive of purpose, — vēnērunt ut audīrent; vēnērunt ut urbem vidērent. In short expressions, however, the gerund and gerundive of purpose are rather more common.

408. We have learned that the word denoting the owner or possessor of something is in the genitive, as, equus Galbae, Galba's horse. If, now, we wish to express the idea the horse is Galba's, Galba remains the possessor, and hence in the genitive as before, but now stands in the predicate, as, equus est Galbae. Hence this is called the predicate genitive.

409. Rule. Predicate Genitive. The possessive genitive often stands in the predicate, especially after the forms of sum, and is then called the predicate genitive.

410. IDIOMS

alicui negotium dare, to employ some one (lit. to give business to some one)

novis rebus studere, to be eager for a revolution (lit. to be eager for new things)

rei militaris peritissimus, very skillful in the art of war

sē suaque omnia, themselves and all their possessions

411. EXERCISES


1 Predicate genitive. 2 Which of these expressions is gerund and which gerundive?
II. 1. These ornaments belong to Cornelia. 2. Men very skillful in the art of war were sent to capture the town. 3. The scouts found a hill suitable for fortifying very near to the river. 4. Soon the cavalry will come to seek supplies. 5. The mind of the Galls is eager for revolution and for undertaking wars. 6. To lead the line of battle belongs to the general. 7. Whom shall we employ to look after the grain supply?

LESSON LXXII

THE IRREGULAR VERB EŌ · INDIRECT STATEMENTS

412. Learn the principal parts and the conjugation of eō, go (§ 499).

a. Notice that ī-, the root of eō, is changed to e- before a vowel, excepting in īēns, the nominative of the present participle. In the perfect system -v- is regularly dropped.

413. Learn the meaning and principal parts of the following compounds of eō with prepositions:

ad’eō, adī’re, adī’ī, adī’tus, go to, visit, with the accusative
ex’eō, exī’re, exī’ī, exī’tus, go forth, with ex or dē and the ablative of the place from which
in’eō, inī’re, inī’ī, inī’tus, begin, enter upon, with the accusative
red’eō, redī’re, redī’ī, redī’tus, return, with ad or in and the accusative of the place to which
trāns’eō, trānsī’re, trānsī’ī, trānsī’tus, cross, with the accusative

414. Indirect Statements in English. Direct statements are those which the speaker or writer makes himself or which are quoted in his exact language. Indirect statements are those reported in a different form of words from that used by the speaker or writer. Compare the following direct and indirect statements:

Direct statements

1. The Gauls are brave
2. The Gauls were brave
3. The Gauls will be brave

1 belong to = are of. 2 Use the gerundive with ad. 3 Use the genitive with causa. Where should causa stand? 4 Compare the first sentence. 5 Compare the second sentence in the Latin above.
INDIRECT STATEMENTS

Indirect statements

1. He says that the Gauls are brave after a verb in the present tense
2. He says that the Gauls were brave
3. He says that the Gauls will be brave

Indirect statements

1. He said that the Gauls were brave after a verb in^2.
2. He said that the Gauls had been brave
3. He said that the Gauls would be brave

We see that in English

a. The indirect statement forms a clause introduced by the conjunction that.
b. The verb is finite (cf. § 173) and its subject is in the nominative.
c. The tenses of the verbs originally used are changed after the past tense, He said.

415. Indirect Statements in Latin. In Latin the direct and indirect statements above would be as follows:

DIRECT STATEMENTS

1. Galli sunt fortēs
2. Galli erant fortēs
3. Galli erunt fortēs

INDIRECT STATEMENTS

1. Dicit or Dixit Gallōs esse fortīs (He says or He said the Gauls to be brave)^1
2. Dicit or Dixit Gallōs fuisse fortīs (He says or He said the Gauls to have been brave)^1
3. Dicit or Dixit Gallōs futūrōs esse fortīs (He says or He said the Gauls to be about to be brave)^1

Comparing these Latin indirect statements with the English in the preceding section, we observe three marked differences:

a. There is no conjunction corresponding to that.
b. The verb is in the infinitive and its subject is in the accusative.
c. The tenses of the infinitive are not changed after a past tense of the principal verb.

416. RULE. Indirect Statements. When a direct statement becomes indirect, the principal verb is changed to the infinitive and its subject nominative becomes subject accusative of the infinitive.

^1 These parenthetical renderings are not inserted as translations, but merely to show the literal meaning of the Latin.
INDIRECT STATEMENTS

417. Tenses of the Infinitive. When the sentences in § 415 were changed from the direct to the indirect form of statement, sunt became esse, erant became fuisse, and erunt became futūros esse.

418. Rule. Infinitive Tenses in Indirect Statements. A present indicative of a direct statement becomes present infinitive of the indirect, a past indicative becomes perfect infinitive; and a future indicative becomes future infinitive.

Note. When translating into Latin an English indirect statement, first decide what tense of the indicative would have been used in the direct form. That will show you what tense of the infinitive to use in the indirect.

419. Rule. Verbs followed by Indirect Statements. The accusative-with-infinitive construction in indirect statements is found after verbs of saying, telling, knowing, thinking, and perceiving.

420. Verbs regularly followed by indirect statements are:

a. Verbs of saying and telling:
   dicō, dicere, dixī, dictus, say
   negō, negāre, negāvī, negātus, deny, say not
   nūntiō, nūntiāre, nūntiāvī, nūntiātus, announce
   respondeō, respondēre, respondī, respondēn, reply

b. Verbs of knowing:
   cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitus, learn, (in the perf.) know
   sciō, scire, scivī, scitus, know

c. Verbs of thinking:
   arbitror, arbitrāri, arbitrātus sum, think, consider
   existimō, existimāre, existimāvī, existimātus, think, believe
   iūdicō, iūdicāre, iūdicāvī, iūdicātus, judge, decide
   putō, putāre, putāvī, putātus, reckon, think
   spērō, spērāre, spērāvī, spērātus, hope

d. Verbs of perceiving:
   audiō, audire, audīvī, audiōtus, hear
   sentiō, sentire, sēnṣī, sēnsus, feel, perceive
   vidēo, vidēre, vīdī, visus, see
   intellegō, intellegere, intellexi, intellectus, understand, perceive

Learn such of these verbs as are new to you.
421. **IDIOMS**

*postridiē eius diēī, on the next day* (lit. *on the next day of that day*)
*initā aestātē, at the beginning of summer*
*memborīā tenēre, to remember* (lit. *to hold by memory*)
*per explōrātōrēs cognōscere, to learn through scouts*

422. **EXERCISES**


II. 1. *The boy is slow.* He says that the boy is, was, (and) will be slow. 2. *The horse is, has been, (and) will be strong.* He judged that the horse was, had been, (and) would be strong. 3. *We think that the army will go forth from the camp at the beginning of summer.* 4. *The next day we learned through scouts that the enemy's town was ten miles off.*

1 *to be off, to be distant, abesse.* 2 Latin, *were of* (§ 409).
LESSON LXXIII

VOCABULARY REVIEW • THE IRREGULAR VERB *FERO*

THE DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS

423. Review the word lists in §§ 513, 514.

424. Learn the principal parts and conjugation of the verb *ferō*, bear (§ 498).

1. Learn the principal parts and meanings of the following compounds of *ferō*, bear:

   ad'ferō, adfer're, at'culi, adlā'tus, *bring to; report*
   cōn'ferō, cōfer're, con'tulī, conlā'tus, *bring together, collect*
   dē'ferō, dēfer're, dē'tulī, dēlā'tus, *bring to; report; grant, confer*
   in'ferō, infer're, in'tulī, inlā'tus, *bring in, bring against*
   re'ferō, refer're, ret'tulī, relā'tus, *bear back; report*

425. The dative is the case of the indirect object. Many intransitive verbs take an indirect object and are therefore used with the dative (cf. § 153). Transitive verbs take a direct object in the accusative; but sometimes they have an indirect object or dative as well. The whole question, then, as to whether or not a verb takes the dative, depends upon its capacity for governing an indirect object. A number of verbs, some transitive and some intransitive, which in their simple form would not take an indirect object, when compounded with certain prepositions, have a meaning which calls for an indirect object. Observe the following sentences:

1. Haec rēs exercituī magnam calamitātem attulit, *this circumstance brought great disaster to the army.*
   
2. Germānī Gallis bellum īnferunt, *the Germans make war upon the Gauls.*
   
3. Hae cōpiāe proeliō nōn intererant, *these troops did not take part in the battle.*
   
4. Equītēs fugientibus hostibus occurrunt, *the horsemen meet the fleeing enemy.*
   
5. Galba cōpiās filium praefēcit, *Galba put his son in command of the troops.*
In each sentence there is a dative, and in each a verb combined with a preposition. In no case would the simple verb take the dative.

426. Rule. Dative with Compounds. Some verbs compounded with ad, ante, con, dē, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super, admit the dative of the indirect object. Transitive compounds may take both an accusative and a dative.

Note 1. Among such verbs are

- ad'ferō, adfer're, at'tuli, adlā'tus, bring to; report
- ad'sum, ades'se, ad'fui, adfutū'rus, assist; be present
- dē'ferō, dēfer're, dē'tuli, dēlā'tus, report; grant, confer
- dē'sum, dees'se, dē'fui, —, be wanting, be lacking
- in'ferō, infer're, in'tuli, inlā'tus, bring against, bring upon
- inter'sum, interes'se, inter'fui, interfutū'rus, take part in
- occur'rō, occur'rere, occur'rī, occur'sus, run against, meet
- praef'cīō, praefī'cere, praefē'ci, praefec'tus, appoint over, place in command of
- praes'um, praees'se, prae'fui, —, be over, be in command

427. Idioms

graviter or molestē ferre, to be annoyed at, to be indignant at, followed by the accusative and infinitive

sē cŏnferre ad or in, with the accusative, to betake one's self to

alicui bellum ĭnferre, to make war upon some one

pedem referre, to retreat (lit. to bear back the foot)

428. Exercises


1 But the accusative with ad or in is used with some of these, when the idea of motion to or against is strong.

II. 1. The Gauls will make war upon Cæsar’s allies. 2. We heard that the Gauls would make war upon Cæsar’s allies. 3. Publius did not take part in that battle. 4. We have been informed that Publius did not take part in that battle. 5. The man who was in command of the cavalry was wounded and began to retreat. 6. Cæsar did not place you in command of the cohort to bring disaster upon the army.

LESSON LXXXIV

VOCABULARY REVIEW · THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS

429. Review the word lists in §§ 517, 518.

430. When we report a statement instead of giving it directly, we have an indirect statement. (Cf. § 414.) So, if we report a question instead of asking it directly, we have an indirect question.

Direct Question Indirect Question
Who conquered the Gauls? He asked who conquered the Gauls

a. An indirect question depends, usually as object, upon a verb of asking (as petō, postulō, quaerō, rogo) or upon some verb or expression of saying or mental action. (Cf. § 420.)

431. Compare the following direct and indirect questions:

DIRECT
Quis Gallōs vincit?  Who is conquering the Gauls?

INDIRECT
\[
\{\begin{align*}
a. \text{ Rogat quis Gallōs vincat} & \quad \text{He asks who is conquering the Gauls} \\
\end{align*}\]

\[
\{\begin{align*}
b. \text{ Rogāvit quis Gallōs vinceret} & \quad \text{He asked who was conquering the Gauls} \\
\end{align*}\]

1 Observe that when adferō denotes motion to, it is not followed by the dative; cf. footnote, p. 182. 2 Not the infinitive. (Cf. § 352.)
THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS

1. Ubi est Rōma? Where is Rome?
   a. Rogat ubi sit Rōma
      He asks where Rome is
   b. Rogāvit ubi esset Rōma
      He asked where Rome was

2. Caesarne Gallōs vīcit? Did Caesar conquer the Gauls?
   a. Rogat num Caesar Gallōs vīcerit
      He asks whether Caesar conquered the Gauls
   b. Rogāvit num Caesar Gallōs vicisset
      He asked whether Caesar had conquered the Gauls

a. The verb in a direct question is in the indicative mood, but the mood is subjunctive in an indirect question.
b. The tense of the subjunctive follows the rules for tense sequence.
c. Indirect questions are introduced by the same interrogative words as introduce direct questions, excepting that yes-or-no direct questions (cf. §210) on becoming indirect are usually introduced by num, whether.

432. Rule. Indirect Questions. In an indirect question the verb is in the subjunctive and its tense is determined by the law for tense sequence.

433. Idioms

dē tertīā vigiliā, about the third watch
iniūriās alicui ľnferre, to inflict injuries upon some one
facere verba prō, with the ablative, to speak in behalf of
in reliquum tempus, for the future

434. Exercises

I. 1. Rex rogāvit quid lēgāti postulārent et cúr ad sē vēnissent.
in Gallōrum conciliō dē armīs trādendīs dictum esset. 10. Moneō nē in reliquum tempus peditēs et equitēs trāns flūmen dūcās.

II. 1. What hill did they seize? I see what hill they seized. 2. Who has inflicted these injuries upon our dependents? 3. They asked who had inflicted those injuries upon their dependents. 4. Whither did you go about the third watch? You know whither I went. 5. At what time did the boys return home? I will ask at what time the boys returned home.

LESSON LXXV

VOCABULARY REVIEW \* THE DATIVE OF PURPOSE, OR END FOR WHICH

435. Review the word lists in §§ 521, 522.

436. Observe the following sentences:
1. Explōrātorēs locum castrīs dēlēgerunt, the scouts chose a place for a camp.
2. Hoc erat magnō impedīmentō Gallīs, this was (for) a great hindrance to the Gauls.
3. Duās legiōnēs praesidiō castrīs reliquit, he left two legions as (lit. for) a guard to the camp.

In each of these sentences we find a dative expressing the purpose or end for which something is intended or for which it serves. These datives are castrīs, impedīmentō, and praesidiō. In the second and third sentences we find a second dative expressing the person or thing affected (Gallīs and castrīs). As you notice, these are true datives, covering the relations of for which and to which. (Cf. § 43.)

437. Rule. Dative of Purpose or End. The dative is used to denote the purpose or end for which, often with another dative denoting the person or thing affected.

438. IDIOMS

cōnsilium omittere, to give up a plan
locum castrīs dēligere, to choose a place for a camp
alicui magnō usui esse, to be of great advantage to some one (lit. for great advantage to some one)
439. **EXERCISES**


II. 1. I advise you ¹ to give up the plan ² of making war upon the brave Gauls. 2. Do you know ³ where the cavalry has chosen a place for a camp? 3. The fear of the enemy will be of great advantage to you. 4. Caesar left three cohorts as (for) a guard to the baggage. 5. In winter the waves of the lake are so great ⁴ that they are (for) a great hindrance to ships. 6. Caesar inflicted severe ⁵ punishment on those who burned the public buildings.

LESSON LXXVI

**VOCABULARY REVIEW • THE GENITIVE AND ABLATIVE OF QUALITY OR DESCRIPTION**

440. Review the word lists in §§ 524, 525.

441. Observe the English sentences

(1) A man of great courage, or (2) A man with great courage
(3) A forest of tall trees; or (4) A forest with tall trees

Each of these sentences contains a phrase of quality or description. In the first two a man is described; in the last two a forest. The descriptive phrases are introduced by the prepositions of and with.

¹ Subjunctive of purpose. (Cf. § 366.) ² Express by the genitive of the gerundive. ³ Indirect question. ⁴ A clause of result. ⁵ gravis, -e.
In Latin the expression of quality or description is very similar. The prepositions of and with suggest the genitive and the ablative respectively, and we translate the sentences above

1. *Vir magnae virtūtis*, or 2. *Vir magnā virtūte*
3. *Silva altārum arborum*, or 4. *Silva altīs arboribus*

There is, however, one important difference between the Latin and the English. In English we may say, for example, a man of courage, using the descriptive phrase without an adjective modifier. In Latin, however, an adjective modifier must always be used, as above.

a. Latin makes a distinction between the use of the two cases in that numerical descriptions of measure are in the genitive and descriptions of physical characteristics are in the ablative. Other descriptive phrases may be in either case.

442. **EXAMPLES**

1. Fossa duodecim pedum, a ditch of twelve feet.
2. Homō magnis pedibus et parvō capite, a man with big feet and a small head.
3. Rēx erat vir summā audāciā or rēx erat vir summae audāciae, the king was a man of the greatest boldness.

443. **Rule.** Genitive of Description. Numerical descriptions of measure are expressed by the genitive with a modifying adjective.

444. **Rule.** Ablative of Description. Descriptions of physical characteristics are expressed by the ablative with a modifying adjective.

445. **Rule.** Genitive or Ablative of Description. Descriptions involving neither numerical statements nor physical characteristics may be expressed by either the genitive or the ablative with a modifying adjective.

446. **IDIOMS**

*Helvētiīs in animō est*, the Helvetii intend (lit. it is in mind to the Helvetians)
in mātrimōniā dare, to give in marriage
nihil posse, to have no power
fossam perducere, to construct a ditch (lit. to lead a ditch through)
EXERCISES


II. 1. Cæsar was a general of much wisdom and great boldness, and very skillful in the art of war. 2. The Germans were of great size, and thought that the Romans had no power. 3. Men of the highest courage were left in the camp as (for) a guard to the baggage. 4. The king’s daughter, who was given in marriage to the chief of a neighboring state, was a woman of very beautiful appearance. 5. The soldiers will construct a ditch of nine feet around the camp. 6. A river of great width was between us and the enemy.

1 From vīs. (Cf. § 468.) 2 Genititives and ablatives of description are adjective phrases. When we use an adverbial phrase to tell how long or how high or how deep anything is, we must use the accusative of extent. (Cf. § 336.) For example, in the sentence above multa milia passuum is an adverbial phrase (accusative of extent) modifying longam. If we should omit longam and say a fortification of many miles, the genitive of description (an adjective phrase) modifying mūnītīōnem would be used, as mūnītīōnem multōrum milium passuum.

GLADII
LESSON LXXVII

REVIEW OF AGREEMENT, AND OF THE GENITIVE, DATIVE, AND ACCUSATIVE

448. There are four agreements:

1. That of the predicate noun or of the appositive with the noun to which it belongs (§§ 76, 81).
2. That of the adjective, adjective pronoun, or participle with its noun (§ 65).
3. That of a verb with its subject (§ 28).
4. That of a relative pronoun with its antecedent (§ 224).

449. The relation expressed by the genitive is, in general, denoted in English by the preposition of. It is used to express

1. Possession \( \{ \)
   1. As attributive (§ 38).
   2. In the predicate (§ 409).

2. The whole of which a part is taken (partitive genitive) (§ 331).
3. Quality or description (§§ 443, 445).

450. The relation expressed by the dative is, in general, denoted in English by the prepositions to or for when they do not imply motion through space. It is used to express

\[
\begin{align*}
1. & \text{ The indirect object } \\
   & \text{a. With intransitive verbs and with transitive verbs in connection with a direct object in the accusative (§ 45).} \\
   & \text{b. With special intransitive verbs (§ 154).} \\
2. & \text{The object to which the quality of an adjective is directed (§ 143).} \\
3. & \text{The purpose, or end for which, often with a second dative denoting the person or thing affected (§ 437).}
\end{align*}
\]
451. The **accusative** case corresponds, in general, to the English objective. It is used to express

1. The direct object of a transitive verb (§ 37).
2. The predicate accusative together with the direct object after verbs of *making, choosing, calling, showing*, and the like (§ 392).
3. The subject of the infinitive (§ 214).
4. The object of prepositions that do not govern the ablative (§ 340).
5. The duration of time and the extent of space (§ 336).
6. The place to which (§§ 263, 266).

452. **EXERCISES**


II. 1. One³ of the king’s sons and many of his men were captured. 2. There was no one who wished⁴ to appoint her queen. 3. The grain supply was always a care (for a care) to Cæsar, the general. 4. I think that the camp is ten miles distant. 5. We marched for three hours through a very dense forest. 6. The plan⁵ of making war upon the allies was not pleasing to the king. 7. When he came to the hill he fortified it⁶ by a twelve-foot wall.

¹ What is the force of *quam* with superlatives? ² *Urbs* or *oppidum*, appositive to a name of a town, takes a preposition. ³ What construction is used with numerals in preference to the partitive genitive? ⁴ What mood? (Cf. § 390.) ⁵ Use the gerund or gerundive. ⁶ Latin, *by a wall of twelve feet.*
REVIEW OF THE ABLATIVE

LESSON LXXVIII

REVIEW OF THE ABLATIVE

453. The relations of the ablative are, in general, expressed in English by the prepositions with (or by), from (or by), and in (or at). The constructions growing out of these meanings are

I. Ablative rendered with (or by):
   1. Cause (§ 102)
   2. Means (§ 103)
   3. Accompaniment (§ 104)
   4. Manner (§ 105)
   5. Measure of difference (§ 317)
   6. With a participle (ablative absolute) (§ 381)
   7. Description or quality (§§ 444, 445)
   8. Specification (§ 398)

II. Ablative rendered from (or by):
   1. Place from which (§§ 179, 264)
   2. Ablative of separation (§ 180)
   3. Personal agent with a passive verb (§ 181)
   4. Comparison without quam (§ 309)

III. Ablative rendered in (or at):
   1. Place at or in which (§§ 265, 266)
   2. Time when or within which (§ 275)

454. EXERCISES


II. 1. The lieutenant after having seized the mountain restrained his (men) from battle. 2. All the Gauls differ from each other in laws. 3. This tribe is much braver than the rest. 4. This road is ten miles shorter than that. 5. In summer Cæsar carried on war in Gaul, in winter he returned to Italy. 6. At midnight the general set out from the camp with three legions. 7. I fear that you cannot protect yourself from these enemies. 8. After this battle was finished peace was made by all the Gauls.

LESSON LXXIX

REVIEW OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE, THE INFINITIVE, AND THE SUBJUNCTIVE

455. The gerund is a verbal noun and is used only in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular. The constructions of these cases are in general the same as those of other nouns (§§ 402, 406. 1).

456. The gerundive is a verbal adjective and must be used instead of gerund + object, excepting in the genitive and in the ablative without a preposition. Even in these instances the gerundive construction is more usual (§ 406. 2).

457. The infinitive is used:

I. As in English.

a. As subject or predicate nominative (§ 216).

b. To complete the predicate with verbs of incomplete predication (complementary infinitive) (§ 215).

c. As object with subject accusative after verbs of wishing, commanding, forbidding, and the like (§ 213).

1 longius, too far. (Cf. § 305.) 2 Latin, by ten thousands of paces. 3 défendere. 4 Ablative absolute.
II. In the principal sentence of an indirect statement after verbs of saying and mental action. The subject is in the accusative (§§ 416, 418, 419).

458. The subjunctive is used:
1. To denote purpose (§§ 349, 366, 372).
2. To denote consequence or result (§§ 385, 386).
3. In relative clauses of characteristic or description (§ 390).
4. In cum clauses of time, cause, and concession (§ 396).
5. In indirect questions (§ 432).

459. EXERCISES


II. 1. Do you not see who is standing on the wall? 2. We hear that the plan of taking the town has been given up. 3. Since the Germans thought that the Romans could not cross the Rhine, Cæsar ordered a bridge to be made. 4. When the bridge was finished, the savages were so terrified that they hid themselves. 5. They feared that Cæsar would pursue them. 6. Cæsar asked the traders what the size of the island was. 7. The traders advised him not to cross the sea. 8. He sent scouts to choose a place for a camp.

1 quaerere ab. 2 Not infinitive. 3 Use the gerundive with ad.
READING MATTER

INTRODUCTORY SUGGESTIONS

How to Translate. You have already had considerable practice in translating simple Latin, and have learned that the guide to the meaning lies in the endings of the words. If these are neglected, no skill can make sense of the Latin. If they are carefully noted and accurately translated, not many difficulties remain. Observe the following suggestions:

1. Read the Latin sentence through to the end, noting endings of nouns, adjectives, verbs, etc.
2. Read it again and see if any of the words you know are nominatives or accusatives. This will often give you what may be called the backbone of the sentence; that is, subject, verb, and object.
3. Look up the words you do not know, and determine their use in the sentence from their endings.
4. If you cannot yet translate the sentence, put down the English meanings of all the words in the same order as the Latin words. You will then generally see through the meaning of the sentence.
5. Be careful to
   a. Translate adjectives with the nouns to which they belong.
   b. Translate together prepositions and the nouns which they govern.
   c. Translate adverbs with the words that they modify.
   d. Make sense. If you do not make sense, you have made a mistake. One mistake will spoil a whole sentence.
6. When the sentence is correctly translated, read the Latin over again, and try to understand it as Latin, without thinking of the English translation.
The Parts of a Sentence. You will now meet somewhat longer sentences than you have had before. To assist in translating them, remember, first of all, that every sentence conveys a meaning and either tells us something, asks a question, or gives a command. Every sentence must have a subject and a verb, and the verb may always have an adverb, and, if transitive, will have a direct object.

However long a sentence is, you will usually be able to recognize its subject, verb, and object or predicate complement without any difficulty. These will give you the leading thought, and they must never be lost sight of while making out the rest of the sentence. The chief difficulty in translating arises from the fact that instead of a single adjective, adverb, or noun, we often have a phrase or a clause taking the place of one of these; for Latin, like English, has adjective, adverbial, and substantive clauses and phrases. For example, in the sentence *The idle boy does not study*, the word *idle* is an adjective. In *The boy wasting his time does not study*, the words *wasting his time* form an adjective phrase modifying *boy*. In the sentence *The boy who wastes his time does not study*, the words *who wastes his time* form an adjective clause modifying *boy*, and the sentence is complex. These sentences would show the same structure in Latin.

In translating, it is important to keep the parts of a phrase and the parts of a clause together and not let them become confused with the principal sentence. To distinguish between the subordinate clauses and the principal sentence is of the first importance, and is not difficult if you remember that a clause regularly contains a word that marks it as a clause and that this word usually stands first. These words join clauses to the words they depend on, and are called *subordinate conjunctions*. They are not very numerous, and you will soon learn to recognize them. In Latin they are the equivalents for such words as *when, while, since, because, if, before, after, though, in order that, that, etc.* Form the habit of memorizing the Latin subordinate conjunctions as you meet them, and of noting carefully the mood of the verb in the clauses which they introduce.
THE LABORS OF HERCULES

Hercules, a Greek hero celebrated for his great strength, was pursued throughout his life by the hatred of Juno. While yet an infant he strangled some serpents sent by the goddess to destroy him. During his boyhood and youth he performed various marvelous feats of strength, and on reaching manhood he succeeded in delivering the Thebans from the oppression of the Minyae. In a fit of madness, sent upon him by Juno, he slew his own children; and, on consulting the Delphic oracle as to how he should cleanse himself from this crime, he was ordered to submit himself for twelve years to Eurystheus, king of Tiryns, and to perform whatever tasks were appointed him. Hercules obeyed the oracle, and during the twelve years of his servitude accomplished twelve extraordinary feats known as the Labors of Hercules. His death was caused, unintentionally, by his wife Deianira. Hercules had shot with his poisoned arrows a centaur named Nessus, who had insulted Deianira. Nessus, before he died, gave some of his blood to Deianira, and told her it would act as a charm to secure her husband's love. Some time after, Deianira, wishing to try the charm, soaked one of her husband's garments in the blood, not knowing that it was poisoned. Hercules put on the robe, and, after suffering terrible torments, died, or was carried off by his father Jupiter.

LIII.1 THE INFANT HERCULES AND THE SERPENTS

Di² grave supplicium sūmunt dē malis, sed iī quī lēgibus³ deōrum pārent, etiam post mortem cūrantur. Illa vita dis² erat grātissima quae hominibus misēris ūtilissima fuerat. Omnium autem praemiōrum summum erat immortālītās. Illud praemium Herculī datum est.

Herculīs pater fuit Iuppiter, māter Alcēna, et omnium hominum 5 validissimīs fuisse dicitur. Sed Iūnō, rēgīna deōrum, eum, adhūc

¹ This number refers to the lesson after which the selection may be read.
² Di and dis are from deus. Cf. § 468.
infantem, interficere studēbat; nam ei\(^1\) et\(^2\) Herculēs et Alcmēna erant invisī. Itaque misit duās serpentīs, utramque saevissimam, quae media nocte domum\(^3\) Alcmēnae vēnērunt. Ibi Herculēs, cum frātre suō, nōn in lectulō sed in scūtō ingenti dormiēbat. Iam audācēs serpentēs adpropinquāverant, iam scūtum movēbant. Tum frāter, terrōre comōtus, magnā vōce mātrem vocāvit, sed Herculēs ipse, fortior quam frāter, statim ingenti serpentīs manibus susō rapuit et interfēcit.

LIV. HERCULES CONQUERS THE MINYÆ


HE COMMITS A CRIME AND GOES TO THE DELPHIAN ORACLE TO SEEK EXPIATION

Post hoc proelīum Creōn rēx, tantā victōriā laetus, filiām suam Herculī in mātrimōnium dedit. Thēbis Herculēs cum uxōre suā diū vivēbat et ab omnibus magnopere amābātur; sed post multōs annōs subitō\(^8\) in furōrem incidit et ipse suā manū liberōs suōs interfēcit. Post breve tempus\(^9\) ad sānātētem reductus tantum scelus expiāre cupiēbat et cōnstituit ad orāculum Delphicum iter facere. Hoc autem orāculum erat omnium clārissimum. Ibi sedēbat fēmina quaedam quae Pyθhia appellābātur. Ea cōnsilium dabat īs qui ad orāculum veniēbant.

\(^{1}\) ei, to her, referring to Juno. \(^{2}\) et... et, both... and. \(^{3}\) domum, § 501. 20. \(^{4}\) a puerō, from boyhood. \(^{5}\) vīrēs, from vis. Cf. § 468. \(^{6}\) Thēbis, § 501. 36. 1. \(^{7}\) coēgit, from cōgō. \(^{8}\) in furōrem incidit, went mad. \(^{9}\) ad sānātētem reductus, lit. led back to sanity. What in good English?
LV. HERCULES BECOMES SUBJECT TO EURYSTHEUS
HE STRANGLES THE NEMEAN LION

Itaque Herculis Pythiae tōtam rem dēmōnstrāvit nec scelus suum abdīdit. Ubi iam Herculis finem fēcit, Pythiae iussit eum ad urbem Tirynthaeā discēdere et ibi rēgī Eurystheō sēsē committere. Quae ubi audivit, Herculis ad illam urbem statim contendit et Eurystheō sē in servitūtem trādidit et dīxit, "Quid prīnum, Ō rēx, mē facere iubēs?"

HERCULES LEONEM SUPERAT


1 Eυ-r ys theus (pronounced U-ris'thus) was king of Tī'r yns, a Grecian city, whose foundation goes back to prehistoric times. 2 Tiryntha, the acc. case of Tīryns, a Greek noun. 3 Quae, obj. of audivit. It is placed first to make a close connection with the preceding sentence. This is called a connecting relative. 4 occidi, pres. pass. infin. 5 mīra, marvelous things, the adj. being used as a noun. Cf. omnia, in the next line.
SLAYING THE LERNANE HYDRA

"et párēbō imperiō¹ tuō." Tum in silvās in quibus leō habitābat statim iter fēcit. Mox feram vidit et plūris impetūs fēcit; fruōstrā tamen, quod neque sagittis neque üllō aliō tēlō mōnstrum vulnerāre potuit. Dēnique Herculēs saevum leōnem suis ingentiibus bracchiis rapuit et faucis eius omnibus viribus compressit. Hoc modō brevī tempore eum interfēcit. Tum corpus leōnis ad oppidum in umerīs reportāvit et pellem postea pro^ vestē gērebat. Omnes autem qui eam regionem incolēbant, ubi famam dē morte leōnis ingentiis accēperunt, erant laetissimi et Herculem laudabant verbīs amplissimīs.

LVI. SLAYING THE LERNÉAN HYDRA


LVII. THE ARCADIAN STAG AND THE ERYMANTHIAN BOAR

Postquam Eurystheō mors Hydrae nūntiāta est, summus terror animum eius occupāvit. Itaque iussit Herculem capere et ad sē reportāre cervum quendam; nam minimē cupīvit tantum virum in rēgnō suō tenēre. Hic autem cervus dīcēbātur aurea cornua et pedēs multō⁶ celerōrēs ventō⁷ habēre. Prīsum Herculēs vestīgia animālis petīvit, deinde, ubi cervum ipsum vidit, omnibus viribus currere incēpit. Per plūrīmos diēs contendit nec noctū cessāvit. Dēnique postquam per

¹ imperiō, § 501. 14. ² prō, for, instead of. ³ Iolāō, abl. of I-o-lā'ūs, the hero's best friend. ⁴ Note the emphatic position of this adjective. ⁵ Quod ubi, when he saw this, another instance of the connecting relative. Cf. p. 199, l. 3. ⁶ multō, § 501. 27. ⁷ ventō, § 501. 34.
CLEANING THE AUGEAN STABLES


Post paucōs diēs Herculēs ad oppidum Stymphālum iter fēcit; nam Eurystheus iussērat eum avīs Stymphālīdēs occidere. Hae avēs rōstra ferrea habēbant et homīnēs miserōs dēvorābant. Ille, postquam ad locus pervēnit, lacum vidit in quō avēs incolēbant. Nūllō tamen modō Herculēs avibus adpropinquāre potuit; lacus enim nōn ex aquā sed ē limō cōnstitit. Dēnique autem avēs dē aliquā causā perterritae in aurās volāvērunt et magna pars eārum sagittis Herculis occīsa est.

1 quam. What is the force of quam with a superlative? 2 Augēas, pronounced in English Aw-je'as. 3 Ėlidis, gen. case of Ėlis, a district of Greece. 4 bōum, gen. plur. of bōs. For construction see § 501.11. 5 ingenti stabulō, abl. of means, but in our idiom we should say in a huge stable. 6 cōnstitit, from cōnstō. 7 dē aliquā causā perterritae, frightened for some reason.
LIX. HERCULES CAPTURES THE CRETAN BULL AND CARRIES HIM LIVING TO EURYSTHEUS

Tum Eurystheus iussit Herculem portäre vivum ex însulâ Crëtâ taurum quendam saevissimum. Ille igitur nàvem cōnscondit—nam ventus erat idōneus—atque statim solvit. Postquam trīduum nāvi-gāvit, incolŭmis însulæ adpropinquāvit. Deinde, postquam omnia parāta sunt, contendit ad eam regiōnem quam taurus vexābat. Mox taurum vidit ac sine ullō metū cornua eius corripuit. Tum ingenti labōre mōnstrum ad nàvem tràxit atque cum hâc prædå ex însulâ discessit.

HERCULES ET TAURUS

THE FLESH-EATING HORSES OF DIOME'DES

LX. THE BELT OF HIPPOLYTE, QUEEN OF THE AMAZONS


THE DESCENT TO HADES AND THE DOG CERBERUS


Sic duodecim labōrēs illī ē duodecim annōs cōnfecti sunt. Dēmum post longam vitam Herculēs ā deis receptus est et Iuppiter filiō suō dedit immortālitātem.

---

1 A fabled tribe of warlike women living in Asia Minor.  
2 omnīō, etc., to have consisted entirely of women.  
4 The dog Cerberus guarded the gate of Orcus, the abode of the dead.  
5 illī, those famous.
P. Cornelius Lentulus: The Story of a Roman Boy

LXI. Publius is Born Near Pompeii

P. Cornelius Lentulus,\(^2\) adulescēns Rōmānus, amplissimā familiā\(^3\) nātus est; nam pater eius, Mārcus, erat dux peritissimus, cuius virtūte\(^4\) et cōnsiliō multae victōriae reportātae erant; atque māter eius, Iūlia, ā clārissimis maiōribus orta est. Nōn vērō in urbe sed rūri\(^5\) Pūblius

5 nātus est, et cum mātre habitābat in villā quae in maris litore et sub rādicibus magnī montis sita erat. Mōns autem erat Vesuvius et parva urbs Pompēīi octō mīlia\(^6\) passuum\(^7\) aberat. In Italiā antiquā erant plūrīmae quidem villae et pulchrae, sed inter hās omnīs nūlla erat pul-

chrior quam villa Mārcī Iūliaeque. Frōns villae mūrō ā maris fluctibus

10 müniēbātur. Hinc mare et litora et īnsulae longē lātēque cōnspici\(^8\) ac saepe nāvēs longae et onerāriae poterant. Ā tergō et ab utrōque latere agrī ferācissimī patēbant. Undique erat magna variōrum flōrum cōpia et multa ingentiōn arborum genera quae aestate\(^9\) umbram

urbs Pompēīi octō mīlia\(^6\) passuum\(^7\) aberat. In Italiā antiquā erant plūrīmae quidem villae et pulchrae, sed inter hās omnīs nūlla erat pul-

chrior quam villa Mārcī Iūliaeque. Frōns villae mūrō ā maris fluctibus

10 müniēbātur. Hinc mare et litora et īnsulae longē lātēque cōnspici\(^8\) ac saepe nāvēs longae et onerāriae poterant. Ā tergō et ab utrōque latere agrī ferācissimī patēbant. Undique erat magna variōrum flōrum cōpia et multa ingentiōn arborum genera quae aestate\(^9\) umbram

urbs Pompēīi octō mīlia\(^6\) passuum\(^7\) aberat. In Italiā antiquā erant plūrīmae quidem villae et pulchrae, sed inter hās omnīs nūlla erat pul-

chrior quam villa Mārcī Iūliaeque. Frōns villae mūrō ā maris fluctibus

10 müniēbātur. Hinc mare et litora et īnsulae longē lātēque cōnspici\(^8\) ac saepe nāvēs longae et onerāriae poterant. Ā tergō et ab utrōque latere agrī ferācissimī patēbant. Undique erat magna variōrum flōrum cōpia et multa ingentiōn arborum genera quae aestate\(^9\) umbram

1 This story is fiction with certain historical facts in Cæsar’s career as a setting. However, the events chronicled might have happened, and no doubt did happen to many a Roman youth. \(^2\) A Roman had three names, as, Pūblius (given name), Cornēlius (name of the gēns or clan), Lentulus (family name). \(^3\) Abl. of source, which is akin to the abl. of separation (§ 501. 32). \(^4\) virtūte, § 501. 24. \(^5\) rūri, § 501. 36. 1. \(^6\) mīlia, § 501. 21. \(^7\) passuum, § 501. 11. \(^8\) cōnspici, infin. with poterant, § 215. Consult the map of Italy for the approximate location of the villa. \(^9\) aestate, § 501. 35.
defessis agricolis gratissimam adferabant. Praeterea erant\(^1\) in agris stabulisque multa animālia genera, nōn sōlum equī et bovēs sed etiam rārae avēs. Etiam erat\(^4\) magna piscīna plēna piscium; nam Rōmānī piscīs diligenter colēbant.

**LXII. HIS LIFE ON THE FARM**

Huius villae Dāvus, servus Mārci, est vilicus\(^2\) et cum Lesbia uxōre\(^5\) omnia cūrat. Vilicus et uxor in casā humīlī, mediis in agris sītā, habi-
tant. Ā prīmā lūce īusque ad vesperum sē\(^8\) gravibus labōribus exercent ut omnīs rēs bene gerant.\(^4\) Plūrima enim sunt officia Dāvī et Lesbiae. Vilicus servōs regit nē tardī sint\(^4\); mittit aliōs qui agrōs arent,\(^4\) aliōs qui hortōs irīgent,\(^4\) et opera in\(^5\) tōtum diem impōnit. Lesbia autem omnibus vestīmenta parat, cibum coquit, pānem facit.

Nōn longē ab hōrum casā et in summō colle situm surgēbat domici-
lium ipsius domīnī domiīnaeque amplissīmum. Ibi plūris annōs\(^6\) Pūblius cum mātre vitam fēlicem agēbat; nam pater eius, Mārcus, in terrīs longinquis gravia reī publicae bella gerēbat nec domum\(^7\) revertī poterat. Neque puerō quidem molestum est rūri\(^8\) vivere. Eum multae rēs dēlectant. Magnopere amat silvās, agrōs, equōs, bovēs, gallīnās, avīs, reliquaque animālia. Saepe plūris hōrās\(^9\) ad mare sedet quō\(^10\) melius fluctūs et nāvis spectet. Nec omnīnō sine comitibus erat, quod Lēdia, Dāvī filia, quae erat eiusdem aetātis, cum eō adhūc infante lūdēbat, inter quōs cum annīs amīcitia crēscēbat. Lēdia nūllum alium ducem dēligēbat et Pūblius ab puellae latere rārō.

\(^1\) How are the forms of *sum* translated when they precede the subject?  
\(^2\) The vilicus was a slave who acted as overseer of a farm. He directed the farming operations and the sale of the produce.  
\(^3\) sē, reflexive pron., object of *exercent*.  
\(^4\) For the construction, see § 501. 40.  
\(^5\) in, for.  
\(^6\) annōs, § 501. 21.  
\(^7\) domum, § 501. 20.  
\(^8\) rūri, § 501. 36. i.  
\(^9\) hōrās, cf. annōs, line 17.  
\(^10\) quō . . . spectet, §§ 349, 350.
MARCUS LENTULUS IS SHIPWRECKED


“Marcus Iūliae suae salutem dicit. Si vales, bene est; ego valeo. Ex Graeciā, quō praeter sperām et opiniorum hodie pervēni, hās litterās ad té scribō. Namque nāvis nostrā frācta est; nōs autem—dis est grātia—incolmēs sumus. Ex Asiae portū nāven lēni ventō solvimus. Postquam altum mare tenuimus nec iam ulla terrae appārūrunt, caelum undique et undique fluctūs, subītō magna tempestās coorta est et nāven vehementissimē adfixīt. Ventīs fluctibusque

1 sagittīs, § 501. 24. 2 was ten years old. 3 annōs, § 501. 21. 4 domum, § 501. 20. 5 populō, dat. with inimīcās, cf. § 501. 16. 6 Lentulo, § 501. 33. 7 ut... nūntiāret, § 501. 40. 8 diēs, cf. annōs, l. g. 9 animīs, abl. of manner. Do you see one in line 15? 10 This is the usual form for the beginning of a Latin letter. First we have the greeting, and then the expression Si valēs, etc. The date of the letter is usually given at the end, and also the place of writing, if not previously mentioned in the letter. 11 quō, where. 12 dis est grātia, thank God, in our idiom. 13 Asia refers to the Roman province of that name in Asia Minor. 14 altum mare tenuimus, we were well out to sea. 15 nec iam, and no longer.
LENTULUS REACHES HOME

207

adflictāti nec sólem discernere nec cursum tenēre poterāmus et omnia praesentem mortem intentābant. Trīs diēs et trīs noctīs sine rēmīs vēlisque agimus. Quārtō diē prīmum terra visa est et violenter in saxa, quae nōn longē à litore aberant, dēiectī sumus. Tum vērō maiōra perīcula timēbāmus; sed nauta quidam, vir fortissimus, ex nāve in fluctūs īrātōs dēsīluit ut fūnum ad lītus portāret; quam rem summō labōre vix effēcit. Ita omnēs servātī sumus. Grātiāsigitur et hōnorem Neptūnō debēmus, qui deus nos e periculo eripuit.

Nunc Athenīs sum, quo conjūgī ut mihi paucās hōras ad quīetem darem. Quam prīnum autem aliam navem conducam ut iter ad Italiam reliquum conficiam et domum ad meōs carōs revertar. Saltā nostrum Ptiblium amīcissime et valētūdinem tuam cūrā diligenter.

Kalendīs Mārtiīs.”

LXIV. LENTULUS REACHES HOME • PUBLIUS VISITS POMPEII WITH HIS FATHER

Post paucōs diēs nāvis M. Cornēlī Lentulī portum Misenī petīt, qui portus nōn longē à Pompēiiis situs est; quō in portū classis Rōmāna pōnēbatur et ad pugnās nāvālis ōrnābatur. Ibi nāvēs omnium generum cōspicī poterant. Iamque incrēdībīlī celeritātē nāvis longa quā Lentulus vēhēbātur litori adpropinquāvit; nam nōn sōlum ventō sed etiam rēmis impellēbatur. In altā puppe stābat gubernātor et nōn procul aliquī militēs Rōmānī cum armīs splendidīs, inter quōs clārissimus erat Lentulus. Deinde servī rēmis contendere cessāvērunt; nautae vēlum contrāxērunt et ancorās iecērunt. Lentulus statīm ē nāvī egressus est et ad villam suam properāvit. Eum Iūlia, Pūblius, tōtaque familia excēpērunt. Quī complexūs, quanta gaudia fuērunt!

Postridie eius diēi Lentulus filiō suō dixit, “Venī, mi Públi, mēcum. 25

Tum celeriter currum cõscendérunt et ad urbis mūrōs vecti sunt. Stabianā portā urbem ingressi sunt. Püblius strātās viās mīrātur et saxa altiora quae in mediō disposita erant et altās orbitās quās rotae inter haec saxa fécerant. Etiam strepitum mīrātur, multitūdinem, carō sōn, fontis, domōs, tabernās, forum cum statūs, templis, reliquisque aedificiis públicis.

**LXV. A DAY AT POMPEII**


Brevi tempore omnia erant parāta, iamque quīnta hōra erat. Deinde Lentulus et filiūs ad cauponām properaverunt, quod famē et

---

1 What construction follows suädeo? § 501. 41. 2 rebus, § 501. 32. 3 This is the abl. of the way by which motion takes place, sometimes called the abl. of route. The construction comes under the general head of the abl. of means. For the scene here described, see Plate II, p. 53, and notice especially the stepping-stones for crossing the street (saxa quae in mediō disposita erant). 4 The forum of Pompeii was surrounded by temples, public halls, and markets of various sorts. Locate Pompeii on the map. 5 We say, this kind of shop; Latin, this kind of shops. 6 ut... parāremus, § 501. 41. 7 How is ut translated after a verb of fearing? How nē? Cf. § 501. 42. 8 tempore, § 501. 35. 9 quīnta hōra. The Romans numbered the hours of the day consecutively from sunrise to sunset, dividing the day, whether long or short, into twelve equal parts. 10 famē shows a slight irregularity in that the abl. ending -e is long.
LENTULUS ENGAGES A TUTOR FOR HIS SON

siti¹ urgebantur. Ibi sub arboris umbra sedērunt et puerō imperāvērunt ut sibi² cibum et vinum daret. Huic imperiō³ puer celeriter pāruit. Tum laetī sē⁴ ex labōre refecērunt.


LXVI. LENTULUS ENGAGES A TUTOR FOR HIS SON

Ā prīmīs annīs quidem Iūlia ipsa filium suum docuerat, et Pūblius ¹⁵ nōn sōlum ¹¹ pūrē et Latīnē loquī poterat sed etiam commodē legēbat et scribēbat. Iam Ennium ¹² alīsōque poētās lēgerat. Nunc vērō Pūblius ¹³ duodecim annōs habēbat; itaque eī pater bonum magistrum, ¹⁴ virum omni doctrīnā et virtūte ērnātissimōm, parāvit, ¹⁶ quī Graeca, mūsicam, alīsāque artīs docēret. ¹⁶ Namque illīs temporibus omnēs fērē ²⁰ gentēs Graecē loquēbantur. Cum Pūblīō aliī puerī, Lentuli amīcōrum

¹ sitīs, thirst, has -im in the acc. sing., -ī in the abl. sing., and no plural.
² Observe that the reflexive pronoun sibi does not here refer to the subject of the subordinate clause in which it stands, but to the subject of the main clause. This so-called indirect use of the reflexive is often found in object clauses of purpose. ³ What case? Cf. § 501. 14. ⁴ sē, cf. p. 205, l. 7, and note.
⁵ Pompēīs, § 501, 36. 1. ⁶ nihil . . . veritī sunt, had no fears of the mountain.
⁷ in, for. ⁸ rē vērā, in fact. ⁹ vereor ut, § 501. 42. ¹⁰ occāsū, § 501. 35.
¹¹ pūrē . . . poterat, freely, could speak Latin well. What is the literal translation?
¹² Ennium, the father of Latin poetry. ¹³ duodecim . . . habēbat, cf. p. 206, l. 8, and note.
¹⁴ virum, etc., a very well-educated and worthy man. Observe the Latin equivalent.
¹⁵ quī . . . docēret, a relative clause of purpose. Cf. §§ 349, 350. ¹⁶ In Cæsar’s time Greek was spoken more widely in the Roman world than any other language.
filii,\(^1\) discēbant. Nam saepe apud Rōmānōs mōs erat \(^2\) nōn in lūdum filiōs mittere sed domi per magistrum docēre. Cotidiē discipuli cum magistrō in peristylō\(^3\) Mārcī domūs sedēbant. Omnēs puerī bullam auream, originis honestae signum, in collō gerēbant, et omnēs togā praetextā amictī erant, \(^4\) quod nōndum sēdecim annōs\(^5\) nātī sunt.

**SCENE IN SCHOOL • AN EXERCISE IN COMPOSITION**

**DISCIPULĪ.** Salvē, magister.

**MAGISTER.** Vōs quoque omnēs, salvēte. \(^6\) Tabulāsne portavistis et stilōs?

10 D. Portāvimus.

M. Iam fābulum Aesōpī\(^7\) discēmus. Ego legam, vōs in tabulās scribite. Et tū, Pūūli, dā mihi ē capsā\(^8\) Aesōpī volūmen.\(^9\) Iam audīte omnēs: Vulpēs et Úva.

Vulpēs ōlim famē coācta ŭvam dēpendentem vidit. Ad ŭvam salībat, sūmere cōnāns. Frūstrā diū cōnāta, tandem īrāta erat et salire cessāns dixit: "Ilia ŭva est acerba; acerbam ŭvam nihil moror."

15 Omnia’ne scripsistis, pueri?

D. Omnia, magister.

---

\(^{1}\) filii, in apposition with puerī. \(^{2}\) nōn ... mittere. This infinitive clause is the subject of erat. Cf. § 216. The same construction is repeated in the next clause, domi ... docēre. The object of docēre is filiōs understood.

\(^{3}\) The peristyle was an open court surrounded by a colonnade. \(^{4}\) At the age of sixteen a boy laid aside the bulla and the toga praetexta and assumed the toga virīlis or manly gown. \(^{5}\) annōs, § 501. 21. The expression nōndum sēdecim annōs nātī sunt means literally, they were born not yet sixteen years. This is the usual expression for age. What is the English equivalent?

\(^{6}\) Tablets were thin boards of wood smeared with wax. The writing was done with a stylus, a pointed instrument like a pencil, made of bone or metal, with a knob at the other end. The knob was used to smooth over the wax in making erasures and corrections. \(^{7}\) Aesōpi, the famous Greek to whom are ascribed most of the fables current in the ancient world. \(^{8}\) A cylindrical box for holding books and papers, shaped like a hatbox. \(^{9}\) Ancient books were written on rolls made of papyr'us. \(^{10}\) nihil moror, I care nothing for.

1 quīndecim, etc., cf. p. 210, l. 5, and note. 2 prīmis . . . cōnfectīs, abl. abs. Cf. § 501. 28. 3 patri̓, dat. with persuāsit. 4 omnibus . . . comparātīs, cf. note 2. 5 vectī, perf. pass. part. of vehō. 6 What is there peculiar about the gender of this word? 7 Nōlae, locative case, § 501. 36. 2. 8 viā, cf. portā, p. 208, l. 7, and note. 9 What construction? 10 Eō, adv. there. 11 Postridiē eīus dīēi, on the next day. 12 viam Appiam, the most famous of all Roman roads, the great highway from Rome to Tarentum and Brundisium, with numerous branches. Locate on the map the various towns that are mentioned in the lines that follow. 13 Formiās, Formia, one of the most beautiful spots on this coast, and a favorite site for the villas of rich Romans. 14 itinere . . . factō, abl. abs. The gen. milium modifies itinere. 15 equīs relictīs. What construction? Point out a similar one in the next line.
situm, ab urbe Rōmā sēdecim milia passuum abest. Inde dēclīvis via ūsque ad lātum campum dūcit ubi Rōma stat. Quem ad locum ubi Pūblius vēnit et Rōmam adhūc remōtam, maximam tōtius orbis terrārum urbem, cōnspēxit, summā admīrātiōne et gaudīō adfectus est. Sine morā dēscendērunt, et, mediō intervǎllō quam celerīmē superātō, urbe portā Capēnā ingressi sunt.

LXVIII. PUBLIUS PUTS ON THE TOGA VIRILIS

Pūblius iam tōtum annum Rōmae morābātur1 multaque urbis spectācula viderat et multōs sībi2 amīcōs parāverat. Eī3 omnēs favēbant; 4 dē eō omnēs bene spērāre poterant. Cotidiē Pūblius 10 scholas philosophōrum et grammaticōrum tantō studiō frequentābat 5 ut alīs clārum exemplum praebēret. Saepe erat cum patre in cūriā; 6 quae rēs effēcit 7 ut summōs reī publicae virōs et audiret et vidēret. Ubi 8 sēdecim annōs nātus est, bullam 9 auream et togam praetextam mōre Rōmānō dēposuit atque virīlem togam sūmpsit. Virīlis autem toga erat omnīnō alba, sed praetexta clāvum purpureum in margine habēbat. 10 Dēpōnere praetextam togam et sūmere virīlem togam erat rēs grātissima puerō Rōmānō, quod postea vir et civis Rōmānus habēbātur.

11 His rēbus gestīs Lentulus ad uxōrem suam hās litterās scripsit: 12 Mārcus Iūliæ suae salūtem dīcit. Si valēs, bene est; ego valeō. Accēpi tuās litterās. Hās nunc Rōmā per servum fidēlissimum mittō ut dē Pūbliō nostrō quam celerīmē sciās. Nam hodiē eī togam virīlem dedī. Ante lūcem surrexi18 et primum bullam auream dē collō eius

1 morābātur, translate as if pluperfect. 2 sībi, for himself. 3 Eī, why dat.? 4 dē... poterant, in English, all regarded him as a very promising youth; but what does the Latin say? 5 ut... praebēret, § 501. 43. 6 cūriā, a famous building near the Roman Forum. 7 ut... audiret et vidēret, § 501. 44. 8 sēdecim, etc., cf. p. 210, l. 5, and note. 9 bullam, cf. p. 210, l. 3, and note 4. 10 These infinitive clauses are the subject of erat. Cf. § 216. 11 His rēbus gestīs, i.e. the assumption of the toga virīlis and attendant ceremonies. 12 Compare the beginning of this letter with the one on page 206. 13 surrexi, from surgō.
"ECCE CAESAR NUNC TRIUMPHAT"
(See page 224)
PUBLIUS JOINS CAESAR'S ARMY IN GAUL


1 The Lares were the spirits of the ancestors, and were worshiped as household gods. All that the house contained was confided to their care, and sacrifices were made to them daily. 2 qui . . . dedūcerent, § 350. 3 magna, great things, a neuter adj. used as a noun. 4 aequālibus, § 501. 34. 5 Ĉūrà ut valeās, take good care of your health. How does the Latin express this idea? 6 Abl. of means. 7 se, reflexive object of exercuit. 8 qui . . . praedicerent, § 501. 45. 9 ita multum trahēbat, had a great influence in that direction. 10 Paucis ante annīs, a few years before; in Latin, before by a few years, ante being an adverb and annīs abl. of degree of difference. 11 ut . . . faceret, § 501. 41. 12 ut, how translated here? See § 501. 42.
pervenire potuit. Intrā mūnitionēs acceptus, ā Caesare benignē exceptus est. Imperātor fortem adulēscendent amplissimis verbis laudāvit et eum tribūnum militum creāvit.

HOW THE ROMANS MARCHED AND CAMPED

Exercitus qui in hostium finibus bellum gerit multīs periculis circumdatus est. Quae pericula ut vitārent, Rōmānī summam cūram adhibēre solēbant. Adpropinqvantēs cōpiēs hostium agmen ita dispōnēbant ut imperātor ipse cum plūribus legiōnibus expeditīs primum agmen dūceret. Post eās cōpiās impedimentā tōtīus exercitūs

1 The military tribune was a commissioned officer nearly corresponding to our rank of colonel. The tribunes were often inexperienced men, so Cæsar did not allow them much responsibility. 2 Quae pericula, object of vitārent. It is placed first to make a proper connection with the preceding sentence. 3 ut . . . dūceret, § 501.43. 4 expeditīs, i.e. without baggage and ready for action. 5 impedimentā. Much of the baggage was carried in carts and on beasts of burden, as is shown above; but, besides this, each soldier (unless expeditus) carried a heavy pack. See also picture, p. 159.
conlocabant. 1 Tum legiōnēs quae proximē conscriptae erant totum agmen claudēbant. Equitēs quoque in omnīs partīs dīmittēbantur qui loca explōrārent; et centuriōnēs praemittēbantur ut locum castrīs idōneum déligērent. Locus habēbatur idōneus castrīs 2quī facile défendī posset et prope aquam esset. Quā dē causā castra 3 in colle 5 ab utrāque parte arduō, à fronte lēniter déclīvi saepe pōnēbantur; vel locus palūdibus cinctus vel in flūminis ripīs situs déligēbātur. Ad locum postquam exercitus pervēnīt, aliī militum 4 in armīs erant, aliī castra mūnire incipiēbant. Nam 5quō tūtiōrēs ab hostibus militēs essent, nēve incauti et imparāti opprimerentur, castra fossā lātā et 10 vāllō altō mūniēbant. In castrīs portae quattuor erant ut ēruptī militia omnīs in partīs fierī posset. In angulis castrōrum erant turrēs dē quibus tēla in hostīs coniciēbantur. 6Tālibus in castrīs quālia dēscripsimus Pūblius ā Caesare exceptus est.

LXX. THE RIVAL CENTURIONS

Illīs in castrīs erant duo centuriōnēs, 7 fortissimi virī, T. Pullo et 15 L. Vorenus, quōrum neuter alterī virtūte 8 cēdere volēbat. Inter eōs iam multōs annōs īnfēsum certāmen gerēbātur. Tum dēnum finīs contrōversiae hōc modō 9 factus est. Diē tertiō postquam Pūblius pervēnīt, hostēs, maiōribus cōpiīs coāctīs, ācerrīmum impetum in castra fēcērunt. Tum Pullō, 10 cum Rōmānī tardīōrēs 11 vidērentur, 20 "Cūr dubītās," inquit, "Vorēne? Quam commodōrem occasīōnem exspectās? Hic diēs dē virtūte nostra iūdicābit." Haec 12 cum dixisset,

1 The newest legions were placed in the rear, because they were the least reliable. 2 quī . . . posset . . . esset, § 501. 45. 3 castra, subject of pōnē-bantur. 4 in armīs erant, stood under arms. 5 quō . . . essent. When is quō used to introduce a purpose clause? See § 350. 1. 6 Tālibus in castrīs quālia, in such a camp as. It is important to remember the correlatives tālis . . . quālis, such . . . as. 7 A centurion commanded a company of about sixty men. He was a common soldier who had been promoted from the ranks for his courage and fighting qualities. The centurions were the real leaders of the men in battle. There were sixty of them in a legion. The centurion in the picture (p. 216) has in his hand a staff with a crook at one end, the symbol of his authority. 8 virtūte, § 501. 30. 9 Abl. of manner. 10 cum . . . vidērentur, § 501. 46. 11 tardīōrēs, too slow, a not infrequent translation of the comparative degree. 12 Haec, obj. of dixisset. It is placed before cum to make a close connection with the preceding sentence. What is the construction of dixisset?


Huic rūrsus circumventō auxilium dat Pullō, atque ambō incolumēs, plurībus interfecētīs,(summā cum laude īntrā mūnitionēs sē recipiunt. Sic inimīcōrum alter alterī auxilium dedit nec dē eōrum virtūte quisquam iūdicāre potuit.

LXXI. THE ENEMY BESIEGING THE CAMP ARE REPULSED

25 Cum iam sex hōrās pugnātum esset 8 ac nōn sōlum vīrēs sed etiam tēla Rōmānōs déficerent, 9 atque hostēs ācrius instārent, 8 et vāllum scindere fossamque complēre incēpissent, 8 Caesar, vir reī militāris peritissimus,

1 vidēbātur, inrūpit. Why is the imperfect used in one case and the perfect in the other? Cf. § 190. 2 vāllō, abl. of means, but in English we should say within the rampart. Cf. ingenti stabulō, p. 201, l. 13, and note. ∴ cōnantis, pres. part. agreeing with eius. 4 ei labōrantī, indir. obj. of dat. 5 ā Pullōne, from Pullo, abl. of separation. 6 cupidīus, too eagerly. 7 pede sē fallente, lit. the foot deceiving itself; in our idiom, his foot slipping. 8 pugnātum esset, déficerent, instārent, incēpissent. These are all subjunctives with cum. Cf. § 501. 46.
PUBLIUS GOES TO GERMANY

Inita aestate Caesar litteris certior fiebat et per exploratōrēs cognōscēbat plurīs civitātēs Galliae novīs rēbus studēre, et contra populum Rōmānum coniūrāre, obsidēisque inter se dare, atque cum his Germānōs quōsdam quoque sēsē coniunctūrōs esse. His litteris nūntiisque commōtus Caesar cōnstituit quam celerrīme in Gallōs proficiscī, ut eōs inopīantis opprimeret, et Labiēnum lēgātum cum duābus legiōnibus peditum et duōbus milibus equitum in Germānōs mittere.

1 intermitterent, ērumpent. What use of the subjunctive? 2 Quod, etc., they do as ordered. The antecedent of quod is id understood, which would be the object of faciunt. 3 ut ... dāretur. Is this a clause of purpose or of result? 4 coniciendi, § 402. 5 comminus gladiīs pugnātum est, a hand-to-hand conflict was waged with swords. 6 multitūdine suōrum, by their numbers. suōrum is used as a noun. What is the literal translation of this expression? 7 Id imperātor. Id is the obj. and imperātor the subj. of animadvertisse. 8 labōrantibus. This participle agrees with īs understood, the indir. obj. of daret; qui ... daret is a purpose clause, § 501. 40. 9 hostēs, subj. of potuērunt. 10 Observe that all these infinitives are in indirect statements after certior fiēbat, he was informed, and cognōscēbat, he learned. Cf. § 501. 48, 49. 11 inter sē, to each other. 12 proficiscī, mittere. These infinitives depend upon cōnstituit.
Itaque ré frumentāriā comparatā castra mōvit. Ab utrōque² rēs bene gesta est; nam Caesar tam celeriter in hostium finīs pervēnit ut spatium ³cōpiās cōgendī nōn dāretur⁴; et Labiēnus dē Germānīs tam grave supplicium sūmpsit ut nēmō ex eā gente in reliquum tempus 5 Gallīs auxiliō dare audēret.⁴


LXXIII. THE STORMING OF A CITY

Püblius plūris dīēs in Germānīa mōrātus¹⁵ in Galliam rediit, et ad Caesarīs castra sē contulit. Iīl quia molestē fērēbat Gallōs¹⁶ eius regionīs obsidēs dare recūsāvisse et exercitūi frūmentum praebeūre

¹ Before beginning a campaign, food had to be provided. Every fifteen days grain was distributed. Each soldier received about two pecks. This he carried in his pack, and this constituted his food, varied occasionally by what he could find by foraging. ² Abl. of personal agent, § 501. 33. ³ cōpiās cōgendī, § 501. 37. 1. ⁴ dāretur, audēret, § 501. 43. audēret is not from audīō. ⁵ cum ... mōrāretur, § 501. 46. ⁶ ut ... posset, ... scīret, § 501. 43. ⁷ Ille, subj. of inquit. ⁸ huius Germānīae, of this part of Germany. ⁹ quī ... sciat ... adierit, § 501. 45. ¹⁰ ūnum, only one. ¹¹ crūrum, from crūs. ¹² prō, for, in place of. ¹³ elephantīs, § 501. 34. ¹⁴ parcunt. What case is used with this verb? ¹⁵ mōrātus. Is this part. active or passive in meaning? ¹⁶ Gallōs, subj. acc. of the inffns. recūsāvisse and nōluisse. The indirect state- ment depends upon molestē fērēbat.

Rōmānōrum autem oppugnātiō est haec. Prīmum turres aedificantur quibus mīlitēs in summum mūrōm ēvādere possint; vineae fiunt quibus tēctī mīlitēs ad mūrōm succēdant; pluteī paran- tur post quōs mīlitēs tormenta admīnīstrent; sunt quoque arietēs qui mūrōm et portās discutiant. Hīs omnibus rēbus comparātīs, deinde ℎagger ab eā parte ubi aditus est facillīmīs extruitur et cum...
THE CITY IS TAKEN

vineis ad ipsum oppidum agitur. Tum turris in aggere prómovētur; arietibus qui sub vineis conlocāti erant mūrus et portae discutiuntur; ballistīs, catapultīs, reliquīisque tormentīs lāpidēs et tēla in oppidum coniciuntur. Postrēmō cum iam turris et agger altitūdinem mūri 5 adaequant et arietēs moenia perfrēgērunt, signō datō militēs inruunt et oppidum expugnant.

LXXIV. THE CITY IS TAKEN · THE CAPTIVES ARE QUESTIONED


 BALLISTA

memoriā tenērent, iussit aggerem exstrui, turrim et arietem admovērī. Neque oppidānis cōnsilium dēfuit. Alī ignem et omne genus tēlōrum dē mūro in turrim coniēcērunt, alī ingentia saxa in vineās et arietem dēvolvērunt. Diū utrimque acerrimē

1 perfrēgērunt, from perfringo. 2 oppidi expugnandi. Is this a gerund or a gerundive construction? Cf. § 501. 37. 3 ineant, § 501. 50. 4 únus, subj. of inquit. 5 sit. This is a so-called subjunctive by attraction, which means that the clause beginning with ubi stands in such close connection with the subjv. clause beginning with ut, that its verb is attracted into the same mood. 6 All these verbs are in the same construction. 7 Hoc cōnsilium, subj. of placēret. For the order cf. Haec cum, etc., p. 215, l. 22, and note; Id imperātor cum, p. 217, l. 8. 8 memoriā, abl. of means. 9 oppidānis, § 501. 15.
THE CAPTIVES ARE QUESTIONED

pugnātum est. Nē vulnerātī quidem pedem rettulērunt. Tandem, 1dē tertiā vigiliā, Públius, quem Caesar illi operī praefēcerat, nūntiāvit partem3 mūri ictibus arietis labefactam concidisse. Quā rē au-
dītā Caesar signum dat; militēs inruunt et magnā cum caede hos-
tium oppidum capiunt.

Postridē eius diēi, hōc oppidō expugnātō, 4captivōrum qui nō-
bilissimī sunt ad imperātōrem ante prae-
tōrium5 addūcuntur. Ipse, lōrīcā aurātā et
palūdamenti purpureō insignis, captīvōs per interpretem in hunc
modum interrogat.6 Vōs qui estis7?

INTERPRES. Rogat imperātōr qui sītis.
CAPTĪVĪ. Filī rēgīs sumus.
INTERPRES. Dicunt sē filiōs esse rēgis.
IMPERĀTOR. Cūr mihi tantās iniūriās intulistis?
INTERPRES. Rogat cūr sībi tantās iniūriās intuleritis.

CAPTĪVĪ. Iniūriās eī nōn intulimus sed prō patriā bellum gessimus.
Semper voluimus Rōmānīs esse amīcī, sed Rōmānī sine causā nōs
domō patriāque expellere cōnātī sunt.

INTERPRES.8 Negant sē iniūriās tibi intulisse, sed prō patriā bellum
gessisse.9 Semper sē voluisse amīcōs Rōmānīs esse, sed Rōmānōs
sine causā sē domō patriāque expellere cōnātōs esse.

1 Between twelve and three o'clock in the morning. The night was divided
into four watches. 2 operī, § 501. 15. 3 partem, subj. acc. of concidisse.
4 captivōrum . . . sunt, the noblest of the captives. 5 The general's headquarters.
6 Study carefully these direct questions, indirect questions, and indirect state-
ments. 7 See Plate III, p. 148. 8 Negant, etc., they say that they have not, etc.
Negant is equivalent to dicunt nōn, and the negative modifies intulisse, but not the
remainder of the indirect statement. 9 Semper, etc., that they have always, etc.
Imperātor. 1 Manēbitisne in reliquum tempus in fidē, hāc rebelliōne condonātā?
Tum vērō captīvī multitūs cum lacrimīs iūrāvērunt sē in fidē mãnsūrōs esse, et Caesar eōs incolūmis domum dimisit.

LXXV. CIVIL WAR BREAKS OUT BETWEEN CÆSAR AND POMPEY · THE BATTLE OF PHARSALIA

5 Nē confectō 2 quidem bellō Gallicō, 3 bellum cīvile inter Caesarem et Pompēium exortum est. Nam Pompēius, quī summum imperium petēbat, senātui persuāserat ut Caesarem rei publicae hostem 4 iūdicāret et exercitum eius dimittēre. Quibus cognitis rēbus Caesar exercitum suum dimittēre recūsāvit, atque, hortātus militēs ut ducem totiēns victōrem ab iūminicōrum iūrīūs défenderent, imperāvit ut sē Rōmam sequeruntur. Summā cum alacrītāte militēs pāruērunt, et ūnās Rubicōnē 5 initium belli cīvīlis factum est.

Italiae urbēs quidem omnēs ferē 6 rēbus Caesaris favēbant et eōm benignē excēpērunt. Quā rē commōtus Pompēius ante Caesaris adven-
tum Rōmā excessit et Brundisium 7 pervēnit, inde 8 paucīs post diēbus cum omnibus cōpiis ad Ἐρύρῳ mare trānsīt. Eum Caesar cum septem legiōnibus et quīngentīs equītibus secūtus est, et īnsignēs inter Caesaris comitātum erat Pūblius.

Plūribus leviōribus proeliīs factīs, tandem cōpiēs adversae ad Phar-
sālum 9 in Thessaliā sitam castra posuērunt. Cum Pompēi exercitus

1 Manēbitisne in fidē, will you remain loyal? 2 With nē . . . quidem the emphatic word stands between the two. 3 The Civil War was caused by the jealousy and rivalry between Cæsar and Pompey. It resulted in the defeat and subsequent death of Pompey and the elevation of Cæsar to the lordship of the Roman world. 4 hostem, predicate accusative, § 501. 22. 5 The Rubicon was a small stream in northern Italy that marked the boundary of Cæsar’s province. By crossing it with an armed force Cæsar declared war upon Pompey and the existing government. Cæsar crossed the Rubicon early in the year 49 B.C. 6 rēbus Caesaris favēbant, favored Cæsar’s side. In what case is rēbus? 7 Brundisium, a famous port in southern Italy whence ships sailed for Greece and the East. See map. 8 paucīs post diēbus, a few days later; literally, afterwards by a few days. Cf. paucīs ante annīs, p. 213, l. 12, and note. 9 The battle of Pharsalia was fought on August 9, 48 B.C. In importance it ranks as one of the great battles of the world.


1 Quōs, obj. of adlocūtus est. 2 ante proelium commissum, before the beginning of the battle. 3 Labiēnus, Cæsar's most faithful and skillful lieutenant in the Gallic War. On the outbreak of the Civil War, in 49 B.C., he deserted Cæsar and joined Pompey. His defection caused the greatest joy among the Pompeian party; but he disappointed the expectations of his new friends, and never accomplished anything of importance. He fought against his old commander in several battles and was slain at the battle of Munda in Spain, 45 B.C. 4 Nōlīte existimāre, don't think. 5 proelīs, § 501. 15. 6 citeriōre Galliā. This name is applied to Cisalpine Gaul, or Gaul south of the Alps. 7 Haec, obj. of dixisset. 8 Hoc idem, obj. of iūrāvērunt. 9 animō, § 501. 30. 10 praesidio castrīs, § 501. 17. 11 Quod, obj. of animadvertit. 12 aciēm, subj. of prōcurrēre. 13 impetum, obj. of sustinērē.
Pompeius amicusque eius superātis atque omnibus hostibus ubique victis, Caesar imperator Rōmam rediit et extrā moenia urbis in campo Mārtiō castra posuit. Tum vērō amplissimīs honōribus adfectus est. Dictātor creātus est, et ei triumphus a senātū est dēcrētus. 2 Quō die dē Gallis triumphum ēgit, tanta multitudō hominum in urbem undique cōnflūxit 3 ut omnia loca essent cōnferta. Tempa patēbant, ārae fūmābant, columnae sertās ārūtāe erant. 4 Cum vērō pompa urbem intrāret, quantus hominum fremitus ortus est! Prīmus per portam ingressī sunt senātus et magistrātūs. Secūtī sunt tibicinēs, signiferī, peditēs laureā corōnātī canentēs: “Ecce Caesar nunc triumphant, qui subēgit Galliam,” et “Mille, mille, mille Gallōs trucidāvimus.” Multi praedam captārum urbium portābant, arma, omnia belli instrumenta. Secūtī sunt equītēs, animōsis atque splendidissimē ārūtās equī vectī, inter quōs Pūblius adulēscēns fortissimus habēbātur. Adducēbantur taurī, ariētēs, 5 qui dis immortālibus immolārentur. Ita longō agmine prōgrediēns exercitus 6 sacrā via per forum in Capitolium perrēxīt.

Imperator ipse cum urbem intrāret, undique laetō clāmōre multitudinis salūtātus est. Stābat in currū aureō quem quattuor albi equī vehēbant. Indūtus 7 togā pictā, alterā manū habēnās et lauream

1 A victorious general with his army was not allowed to enter the city until the day of his triumph. A triumph was the greatest of all military honors. 2 Quō die, on the day that, abl. of time. 3 ut... essent, § 501. 43. 4 Cum... intrāret, § 501. 46. 5 qui... immolārentur, § 501. 40. 6 The Sacred Way was a noted street running along one side of the Forum to the base of the Capitoline Hill, on whose summit stood the magnificent temple of Jupiter Capitolinus. This route was always followed by triumphal processions. 7 The toga picta worn by a general in his triumph was a splendid robe of Tyrian purple covered with golden stars. See Plate IV, p. 213.
tenēbat, alterā eburneum scēptrum. Post eum servus in currū stāns auream corōnam super caput eius tenēbat. Ante currum miserrimi captīvī, régēs principēisque superātārum gentium, catēnis vincī, prōgrediēbantur; et vīginti quattuor līctorēs laurēātās fascis ferentēs et signiferī currum Caesaris comitābantur. Concludit agmen multītūdō captīvōrum, qui, in servitūtem redāctī, dēmissō vultū, vincīs bracchiis, sequuntur; quibus-cum veniunt longissimō ārdine militēs, etiam hī praedam vel insignia militāria ferentēs.

Caesar cum Capitōlium ascendisset, in templō Iovi Capitōlinō sacra fēcit. Simul captīvōrum qui nōbilissimi erant, abductī in carcerem, interfectī sunt. Sacrīs factīs Caesar dē Capitōliō dēscendit et in forō militibus suīs honōrēs militāris dedit eīisque pecūniam ex bellī praedā distribuit.

His omnibus rēbus cōnfectīs, Públius Caesarem valēre iussit et quam celerrimē ad villam contendit ut patrem mātremque salūtāret.

1 Dē rēbus gestīs P. Cornēli Lentulī hāctenus.

The lictors were a guard of honor that attended the higher magistrates and made a way for them through the streets. On their shoulders they carried the fasces, a bundle of rods with an ax in the middle, symbolizing the power of the law. dēmissō vultū, with downcast countenance. vincīs, from vincīō. Simul, etc., At the same time those of the captives who were the noblest. The prison was a gloomy dungeon on the lower slopes of the Capitoline Hill. valēre iussit, bade farewell to. This sentence marks the end of the story.
APPENDIX I

DECLENSIONS, CONJUGATIONS, NUMERALS, ETC.

NOUNS

460. Nouns are inflected in five declensions, distinguished by the final letter of the stem and by the termination of the genitive singular.

First Declension — Ā-stems, Gen. Sing. -ae
Second Declension — O-stems, Gen. Sing. -i
Third Declension — Consonant stems and I-stems, Gen. Sing. -is
Fourth Declension — U-stems, Gen. Sing. -ūs
Fifth Declension — Ė-stems, Gen. Sing. -ēi

461. FIRST DECLENSION. Ā-STEMS

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>domina</td>
<td>-a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>dominae</td>
<td>-ae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>dominae</td>
<td>-ae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>dominam</td>
<td>-am</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>dominā</td>
<td>-ā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. Dea and filia have the termination -ābus in the dative and ablative plural.
SECOND DECLENSION

SECOND DECLENSION. Θ-STEMS

a. Masculines in -us

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. dominus</td>
<td>-us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. dominī</td>
<td>-ī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. dominō</td>
<td>-ō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. dominum</td>
<td>-ūm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. dominō</td>
<td>-ō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Nouns in -us of the second declension have the termination -e in the vocative singular, as domine.

2. Proper names in -ius, and filius, end in -i in the vocative singular, and the accent rests on the penult, as Vergi'li, fili.

b. Neuters in -um

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. pilum</td>
<td>-um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. pīlī</td>
<td>-ī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. pīlō</td>
<td>-ō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. pilum</td>
<td>-um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. pīlō</td>
<td>-ō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Masculines in -ius and neuters in -ium end in -ī in the genitive singular, not in -ii, and the accent rests on the penult.

c. Masculines in -er and -ir

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>TERMINATIONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. puer</td>
<td>-er</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. puerī</td>
<td>-ēr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. puerō</td>
<td>-ōr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. puerum</td>
<td>-um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. puerō</td>
<td>-ōr</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>TERMINATIONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. ager</td>
<td>-er</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. agrī</td>
<td>-ī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. agrō</td>
<td>-ō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. agrum</td>
<td>-um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. agrō</td>
<td>-ō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>TERMINATIONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. vir</td>
<td>-er</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. virī</td>
<td>-ī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. virō</td>
<td>-ō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. virum</td>
<td>-um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. virō</td>
<td>-ō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### APPENDIX I

**CLASSIFICATION**

**I. CONSONANT STEMS**

1. *Nouns that add -s to the base to form the nominative singular: masculines and feminines only*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bases or Stems</th>
<th>princeps, m., <em>chief</em></th>
<th>miles, m., <em>soldier</em></th>
<th>lapis, m., <em>stone</em></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong></td>
<td>princepsein</td>
<td>miles</td>
<td>lapis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gen.</strong></td>
<td>principis</td>
<td>militis</td>
<td>lapidis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dat.</strong></td>
<td>principii</td>
<td>militi</td>
<td>lapidi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acc.</strong></td>
<td>principem</td>
<td>militem</td>
<td>lapidem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abl.</strong></td>
<td>principipe</td>
<td>militipe</td>
<td>lapidipe</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### THIRD DECLENSION

#### Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>princeps</th>
<th>miles</th>
<th>lapis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>principum</td>
<td>militum</td>
<td>lapidum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>principibus</td>
<td>militibus</td>
<td>lapidibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>princeps</td>
<td>milites</td>
<td>lapides</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>principibus</td>
<td>militibus</td>
<td>lapidibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Terminations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>-s</th>
<th>Gen.</th>
<th>-is</th>
<th>Dat.</th>
<th>-i</th>
<th>Acc.</th>
<th>-em</th>
<th>Abl.</th>
<th>-e</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Plural</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Third Declension

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bases or Stems</th>
<th>rex, m., king</th>
<th>iūdex, m., judge</th>
<th>virtūs, f., virtue</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

#### Singular

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>rex</td>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>rēgis</td>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>rēgī</td>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>rēgem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>iūdex</td>
<td></td>
<td>iūdicis</td>
<td></td>
<td>iūdicī</td>
<td></td>
<td>iūdicem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>virtūs</td>
<td></td>
<td>virtūtis</td>
<td></td>
<td>virtūtī</td>
<td></td>
<td>virtūtem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>rēgēs</td>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>rēgum</td>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>rēgibus</td>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>rīgēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>iūdicēs</td>
<td></td>
<td>iūdicum</td>
<td></td>
<td>iūdicibus</td>
<td></td>
<td>iūdicēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>virtūtēs</td>
<td></td>
<td>virtūtum</td>
<td></td>
<td>virtūtibus</td>
<td></td>
<td>virtūtēs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note.** For consonant changes in the nominative singular, cf. § 233. 3.

#### 2. Nouns that have no termination in the nominative singular

**a. Masculines and Feminines**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bases or Stems</th>
<th>consul, m.</th>
<th>legiō, f.</th>
<th>ērdō, m.</th>
<th>pater, m.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

#### Singular

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>consul</td>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>consulis</td>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>consuli</td>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>consulem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>legiō</td>
<td></td>
<td>legiōnis</td>
<td></td>
<td>legiōnī</td>
<td></td>
<td>legiōnem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ērdō</td>
<td></td>
<td>ērdinis</td>
<td></td>
<td>ērdinī</td>
<td></td>
<td>ērdinem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pater</td>
<td></td>
<td>patris</td>
<td></td>
<td>patri</td>
<td></td>
<td>patrem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>consulēs</td>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>consulum</td>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>consulibus</td>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>consulēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>legiōnēs</td>
<td></td>
<td>legiōnum</td>
<td></td>
<td>legiōnibus</td>
<td></td>
<td>legiōnēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ērdinēs</td>
<td></td>
<td>ērdinum</td>
<td></td>
<td>ērdinibus</td>
<td></td>
<td>ērdinēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>paterēs</td>
<td></td>
<td>patrum</td>
<td></td>
<td>patribus</td>
<td></td>
<td>patrēs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note.** For vowel and consonant changes in the nominative singular, cf. § 236. 1–3.
b. Neuters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bases or Stems</th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>flūmen, n., river</td>
<td>tempus, n., time</td>
<td>opus, n., work</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Nom. | flūmen | tempus | opus | caput |
| Gen. | flūminis | temporis | operis | capitis |
| Dat. | flūmini | temporī | operī | capitī |
| Acc. | flūmen | tempus | opus | caput |
| Abl. | flūmine | tempore | operē | capite |

| Nom. | flūmina | tempora | opera | capita |
| Gen. | flūminum | temporum | operum | capitum |
| Dat. | flūminibus | temporibus | operibus | capitibus |
| Acc. | flūmina | tempora | opera | capita |
| Abl. | flūminibus | temporibus | operibus | capitibus |

Note. For vowel and consonant changes in the nominative singular, cf. § 238. 2, 3.

465. II. I-STEMS

a. Masculines and Feminines

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>caedes, f., slaughter</th>
<th>hostis, m., enemy</th>
<th>urbs, f., city</th>
<th>cliēns, m., retainer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stems</td>
<td>caedi-</td>
<td>hosti-</td>
<td>urbi-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bases</td>
<td>caed-</td>
<td>host-</td>
<td>urb-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Nom. | caedes | hostis | urbs | cliēns |
| Gen. | caedis | hostis | urbis | clientis |
| Dat. | caedi  | hostī | urbī | clientī |
| Acc. | caadem | hostem | urbem | clientem |
| Abl. | caede  | hoste | urbe | cliente |

| Nom. | caedes | hostēs | urbēs | clientēs |
| Gen. | caedium | hostium | urbium | clientium |
| Dat. | caedibus | hostibus | urbibus | clientibus |
| Acc. | caedīs, -ēs | hostīs, -ēs | urbīs, -ēs | clientīs, -ēs |
| Abl. | caedibus | hostibus | urbibus | clientibus |

1. Avis, cīvis, finis, ignis, nāvis, have the abl. sing. in -ī or -e.
2. Turris has accusative turrim and ablative turri or turre.
### FOURTH DECLENSION

**b. Neuters**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stems</th>
<th>Bases</th>
<th>Singular Terminations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>insigne</em>, n., <em>decoration</em></td>
<td><em>animal</em>, n., <em>animal</em></td>
<td><em>calcar</em>, n., <em>spur</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>insigne</em></td>
<td><em>insignis</em></td>
<td><em>insignī</em></td>
<td><em>insignē</em></td>
<td><em>insignī</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>animal</em></td>
<td><em>animalīs</em></td>
<td><em>animalī</em></td>
<td><em>animal</em></td>
<td><em>animalī</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>calcar</em></td>
<td><em>calcāris</em></td>
<td><em>calcāri</em></td>
<td><em>calcar</em></td>
<td><em>calcāri</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plural**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>insignia</em></td>
<td><em>insignium</em></td>
<td><em>insignibus</em></td>
<td><em>insignia</em></td>
<td><em>insignibus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>animālia</em></td>
<td><em>animālium</em></td>
<td><em>animālibus</em></td>
<td><em>animālia</em></td>
<td><em>animālibus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>calcāria</em></td>
<td><em>calcārium</em></td>
<td><em>calcāribus</em></td>
<td><em>calcāria</em></td>
<td><em>calcāribus</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**466. THE FOURTH DECLENSION. U-STEMS**

*adventus*, m., *arrival*  
*cornū*, n., *horn*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Base</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Base</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>adventus</em></td>
<td><em>advent-</em></td>
<td><em>cornū</em></td>
<td><em>corn-</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular Terminations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>MASC.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>adventus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>adventus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>adventus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>adventus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>adventus</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plural**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>adventus</em></td>
<td><em>adventuum</em></td>
<td><em>adventibus</em></td>
<td><em>adventus</em></td>
<td><em>adventibus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>cornua</em></td>
<td><em>cornuum</em></td>
<td><em>cornibus</em></td>
<td><em>cornua</em></td>
<td><em>cornibus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>-ūs</em></td>
<td><em>-uum</em></td>
<td><em>-ibus</em></td>
<td><em>-ū</em></td>
<td><em>-ibus</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### THE FIFTH DECLENSION. Œ-STEMS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Base</th>
<th>Sing. Terminations</th>
<th>Nominative</th>
<th>Genitive</th>
<th>Datitive</th>
<th>Accusative</th>
<th>Ablative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>diēs, m., day</td>
<td>di-</td>
<td>rēs -ēs</td>
<td>diēs</td>
<td>reī -ēī</td>
<td>reī -ēī</td>
<td>rem -ēm</td>
<td>rē -ē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēs, f., thing</td>
<td>re-</td>
<td>-ē</td>
<td>reī</td>
<td>reī</td>
<td>rem</td>
<td>rē</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Base</th>
<th>Sing. Terminations</th>
<th>Nominative</th>
<th>Genitive</th>
<th>Datitive</th>
<th>Accusative</th>
<th>Ablative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>diēs</td>
<td>di-</td>
<td>rēs -ēs</td>
<td>diēs</td>
<td>rērum</td>
<td>rēbus</td>
<td>rēs -ē</td>
<td>-ēbus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēs</td>
<td>re-</td>
<td>-ē</td>
<td>reī</td>
<td>-ērum</td>
<td>-ēbus</td>
<td>-ēs</td>
<td>-ēbus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### SPECIAL PARADIGMS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>deus, m., god</th>
<th>domus, f., house</th>
<th>vis, f., strength</th>
<th>iter, n., way</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>deo-</td>
<td>domu-</td>
<td>vi- and vīri-</td>
<td>iter- and itiner-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base</td>
<td>Base</td>
<td>Base</td>
<td>Base</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>de-</td>
<td>dom-</td>
<td>v- and vīr-</td>
<td>iter- and itiner-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Singular

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>deus</td>
<td>dei</td>
<td>deō</td>
<td>deum</td>
<td>deō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>domus</td>
<td>domūs</td>
<td>domui, -ō</td>
<td>domum</td>
<td>domō, -ū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>viś</td>
<td>viś (rare)</td>
<td>vi (rare)</td>
<td>vīm</td>
<td>vī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iter</td>
<td>itineris</td>
<td>itinerī</td>
<td>iter</td>
<td>itinere</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dei, di</td>
<td>deōrum, deum</td>
<td>deīs, dis</td>
<td>deōs</td>
<td>deīs, dis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>domūs</td>
<td>dominum, -ōrum</td>
<td>domībus</td>
<td>domōs, -ūs</td>
<td>domībus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vīrēs</td>
<td>virium</td>
<td>viribus</td>
<td>vīris, -ēs</td>
<td>viribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>itinerā</td>
<td>itinerum</td>
<td>itineribus</td>
<td>itinera</td>
<td>itineribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*a. The vocative singular of deus is like the nominative.

b. The locative of domus is domī.*
# ADJECTIVES

## 469. FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS. O- AND Ā-STEMS

### a. Adjectives in -us

**bonus, good**  
Stems bono- m. and n., bonā- f.  
Base bon-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>MASC.</th>
<th>FEM.</th>
<th>NEUT.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong></td>
<td>bonus</td>
<td>bona</td>
<td>bonum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gen.</strong></td>
<td>bonī</td>
<td>bonae</td>
<td>bonī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dat.</strong></td>
<td>bonō</td>
<td>bonae</td>
<td>bonō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acc.</strong></td>
<td>bonum</td>
<td>bonam</td>
<td>bonum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abl.</strong></td>
<td>bonō</td>
<td>bona</td>
<td>bonō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>MASC.</th>
<th>FEM.</th>
<th>NEUT.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong></td>
<td>bonī</td>
<td>bonae</td>
<td>bona</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gen.</strong></td>
<td>bonōrum</td>
<td>bonārum</td>
<td>bonōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dat.</strong></td>
<td>bonīs</td>
<td>bonīs</td>
<td>bonīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acc.</strong></td>
<td>bonōs</td>
<td>bonās</td>
<td>bona</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abl.</strong></td>
<td>bonīs</td>
<td>bonīs</td>
<td>bonīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### b. Adjectives in -er

**liber, free**  
Stems libero- m. and n., liberā- f.  
Base liber-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>MASC.</th>
<th>FEM.</th>
<th>NEUT.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong></td>
<td>liber</td>
<td>libera</td>
<td>liberum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gen.</strong></td>
<td>liberī</td>
<td>liberae</td>
<td>liberī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dat.</strong></td>
<td>liberō</td>
<td>liberae</td>
<td>liberō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acc.</strong></td>
<td>liberum</td>
<td>liberam</td>
<td>liberum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abl.</strong></td>
<td>liberō</td>
<td>liberā</td>
<td>liberō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>MASC.</th>
<th>FEM.</th>
<th>NEUT.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong></td>
<td>liberī</td>
<td>liberae</td>
<td>libera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gen.</strong></td>
<td>liberōrum</td>
<td>liberārum</td>
<td>liberōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dat.</strong></td>
<td>liberīs</td>
<td>liberīs</td>
<td>liberīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acc.</strong></td>
<td>liberōs</td>
<td>liberās</td>
<td>libera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abl.</strong></td>
<td>liberīs</td>
<td>liberīs</td>
<td>liberīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**APPENDIX I**

**pulcher, pretty**  
**STEMS** pulchro- **m. and n., pulchrā- **f.**  
**BASE** pulchr-

### Singlular

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>pulcher</td>
<td>pulchra</td>
<td>pulchrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>pulchrī</td>
<td>pulchrae</td>
<td>pulchrī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>pulchrō</td>
<td>pulchrae</td>
<td>pulchrō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>pulchrum</td>
<td>pulchram</td>
<td>pulchrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>pulchrō</td>
<td>pulchrā</td>
<td>pulchrō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>pulchrī</td>
<td>pulchrae</td>
<td>pulchra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>pulchrōrum</td>
<td>pulchrārum</td>
<td>pulchrōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>pulchrīs</td>
<td>pulchrīs</td>
<td>pulchrīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>pulchrōs</td>
<td>pulchrōs</td>
<td>pulchrōs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>pulchrīs</td>
<td>pulchrīs</td>
<td>pulchrīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

470.  
**THE NINE IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES**

**alisus, another**  
**STEMS** alio- **m. and n., aliā- **f.**  
**BASE** ali-

### Singular

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>alius</td>
<td>alia</td>
<td>aliud</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>aliius</td>
<td>alius</td>
<td>alius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>aliī</td>
<td>aliī</td>
<td>aliī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>alium</td>
<td>aliam</td>
<td>aliuđ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>aliō</td>
<td>aliā</td>
<td>aliō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>unus</td>
<td>una</td>
<td>unum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>unius</td>
<td>unius</td>
<td>unius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>uni</td>
<td>uni</td>
<td>uni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>unum</td>
<td>unam</td>
<td>unum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>unō</td>
<td>ūnā</td>
<td>ūnō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*a. For the complete list see § 108.*
### Declension of Adjectives

**471. Adjectives of the Third Declension. i-Stems**

#### I. Three Endings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ácer</td>
<td>ácris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gen.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ácris</td>
<td>ácris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dat.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ácri</td>
<td>ácri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acc.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ácrem</td>
<td>ácrem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abl.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ácri</td>
<td>ácri</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### II. Two Endings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>omnis</td>
<td>omne</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>omnis</td>
<td>omnis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>omni</td>
<td>omni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>omnem</td>
<td>omne</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>omni</td>
<td>omni</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### III. One Ending

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pār</td>
<td>pār</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paris</td>
<td>paris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pari</td>
<td>pari</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parem</td>
<td>pār</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pari</td>
<td>pari</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Observe that all i-stem adjectives have -ī in the ablative singular.
472. **PRESENT ACTIVE PARTICIPLES**

amāns, loving  

**STEM amanti-**  
**BASE amant-**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>SINGULAR</strong></th>
<th><strong>PLURAL</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>MASC. AND FEM.</strong></td>
<td><strong>NEUT.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom. amāns</td>
<td>amāns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. amantis</td>
<td>amantis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. amanti</td>
<td>amanti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. amantem</td>
<td>amāns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. amante, -ī</td>
<td>amante, -ī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

iēns, going  

**STEM ienti-, eunti-**  
**BASE ient-, eunt-**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>SINGULAR</strong></th>
<th><strong>PLURAL</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>MASC. AND FEM.</strong></td>
<td><strong>NEUT.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom. iēns</td>
<td>iēns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. euntis</td>
<td>euntis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. euntī</td>
<td>euntī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. euntem</td>
<td>iēns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. eunte, -ī</td>
<td>eunte, -ī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

473. **REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>POSITIVE</strong></th>
<th><strong>COMPARATIVE</strong></th>
<th><strong>SUPERLATIVE</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>MASC.</strong></td>
<td><strong>MASC. AND FEM.</strong></td>
<td><strong>NEUT.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>altus (alto-)</td>
<td>altior</td>
<td>altius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liber (libero-)</td>
<td>liberior</td>
<td>liberius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pulcher (pulchro-)</td>
<td>pulchrior</td>
<td>pulchrius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audāx (audāci-)</td>
<td>audācior</td>
<td>audācius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brevis (brevi-)</td>
<td>breviar</td>
<td>brevius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ācer (ācri-)</td>
<td>ācrior</td>
<td>ācrius</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

474. **DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES**

altior, higher

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>SINGULAR</strong></th>
<th><strong>PLURAL</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>MASC. AND FEM.</strong></td>
<td><strong>NEUT.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom. altior</td>
<td>altius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. altiōris</td>
<td>altiōris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. altiōrī</td>
<td>altiōrī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. altiōrem</td>
<td>altius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. altiōre</td>
<td>altiōre</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES 237

plüs, more
Nom. —— plüs plürès plûra
Gen. —— plûris plûrium plûrium
Dat. —— —— plûribus plûribus
Acc. —— plüs plûris (-ês) plûra
Abl. —— plûre plûribus plûribus

475. IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

Positive  Comparative  Superlative
bonus, -a, -um, good melior, melius, better optimus, -a, -um, best
malus, -a, -um, bad peior, peius, worse pessimus, -a, -um, worst
magnus, -a, -um, great maior, maius, greater maximus, -a, -um, greatest
multus, -a, -um, much ——, plús, more ——, plûrs, most
parvus, -a, -um, small minor, minus, smaller minimus, -a, -um, smallest
senex, senis, old senior maximus nâtû
iuuenis, -e, young iûnior minimus nâtû
vetus, veteris, old vetustior, -ius veterrimus, -a, -um
facilis, -e, easy facilior, -ius facillimus, -a, -um
difficilis, -e, difficult difficilior, -ius difficillimus, -a, -um
similis, -e, similar similior, -ius simillimus, -a, -um
dissimilis, -e, dissimilar dissimilior, -ius dissimillimus, -a, -um
humilis, -e, low humilior, -ius humillimus, -a, -um
gracilis, -e, slender gracilior, -ius gracillimus, -a, -um
exterus, outward exterior, outer, exterior extimus \{ last
inferus, below inferior, lower infimus \{ lowest
posterus, following posterior, later postrémus \{ last
superus, above superior, higher suprémus \{ highest
[cis, citrâ, on this side] citerior, hither citimus, hithermost
[in, intrà, in, within] interior, inner intimus, inmost
[præ, prô, before] prior, former prîmus, first
[prope, near] propior, nearer proximus, next
[ultrâ, beyond] ulterior, further ultimus, furthest
### APPENDIX I

#### 476. **Regular Comparison of Adverbs**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cărē (cārus), dearly</td>
<td>cărius</td>
<td>căriiśīmē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miserē (miser), wretchedly</td>
<td>miserius</td>
<td>miserrīmē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ācriter (ācer), sharply</td>
<td>ācrius</td>
<td>ācerrīmē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facile (facilis), easily</td>
<td>facilius</td>
<td>faciliimē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 477. **Irregular Comparison of Adverbs**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>diū, long, a long time</td>
<td>diūtius</td>
<td>diūtissīmē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bene (bonus), well</td>
<td>melius, better</td>
<td>optimē, best</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>male (malus), ill</td>
<td>peius, worse</td>
<td>pessimē, worst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>magnopere, greatly</td>
<td>magis, more</td>
<td>maximē, most</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multum (multus), much</td>
<td>plūs, more</td>
<td>plūrīmum, most</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parum, little</td>
<td>minus, less</td>
<td>minimē, least</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saepe, often</td>
<td>saepius</td>
<td>saepissīmē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 478. **Numerals**

The cardinal numerals are indeclinable excepting ānus, duo, trēs, the hundreds above one hundred, and mīlle used as a noun. The ordinals are declined like bonus, -a, -um.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cardinals (How many)</th>
<th>Ordinals (In what order)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1, ānus, -a, -um</td>
<td>prīmus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2, duo, duae, duo</td>
<td>secundus (or alter)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3, trēs, tria</td>
<td>tertius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4, quattuor</td>
<td>quārtus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5, quīnque</td>
<td>quintus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6, sex</td>
<td>sextus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7, septem</td>
<td>septīmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8, octō</td>
<td>octāvus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9, novem</td>
<td>nōnus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10, decem</td>
<td>decimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11, āndecim</td>
<td>āndecimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12, duodecim</td>
<td>duodecimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13, tredecim (decem (et) trēs)</td>
<td>tertius decimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14, quattuordecim</td>
<td>quàrtus decimus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### NUMERALS

#### Cardinals

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Numeral</th>
<th>Roman Numerals</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>quindecim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>sedecim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>septendecim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>duodeviginti (octodecim)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>undeviginti (novendecim)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>viginti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>viginti unus or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>unus et viginti, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>triginta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>quadraginta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>quinquaginta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>sexaginta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>septuaginta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>octoginta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>nonaginta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>centum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101</td>
<td>centum (et) unus, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120</td>
<td>centum (et) viginti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121</td>
<td>centum (et) viginti unus, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200</td>
<td>ducenti, -ae, -a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300</td>
<td>trecenti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400</td>
<td>quadringenti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500</td>
<td>quingenti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>600</td>
<td>sescenti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>700</td>
<td>septingenti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>800</td>
<td>octingenti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>900</td>
<td>nongenti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1000</td>
<td>mille</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Ordinals

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Roman Numerals</th>
<th>Ordinal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>quintus decimus</td>
<td>15th</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sextus decimus</td>
<td>6th</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>septimus decimus</td>
<td>7th</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duodécimensimus</td>
<td>12th</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>undécimensimus</td>
<td>11th</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vigensimus</td>
<td>1st</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vicensimus primum or unus et vicensimus, etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tricensimus</td>
<td>3rd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quadragesimus</td>
<td>4th</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quingentesimus</td>
<td>5th</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sexagensesimus</td>
<td>6th</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>septuagesimus</td>
<td>7th</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>octogensesimus</td>
<td>8th</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nonagesimus</td>
<td>9th</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>centensimus</td>
<td>100th</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>centensimus (et) primus, etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>centensimus vicensimus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>centensimus (et) vicensimus primus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ducentensimus</td>
<td>200th</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trecentensimus</td>
<td>300th</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quadringentensimus</td>
<td>400th</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quingentensimus</td>
<td>500th</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sescentensimus</td>
<td>600th</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>septingentensimus</td>
<td>700th</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>octingentensimus</td>
<td>800th</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nongentensimus</td>
<td>900th</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>millensimus</td>
<td>1000th</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 479. Declension of duo, two, trés, three, and mille, a thousand.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td>duo</td>
<td>duae</td>
<td>duo</td>
<td>tres</td>
<td>tría</td>
<td>mille</td>
<td>milia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>duórum</td>
<td>duárum</td>
<td>duórum</td>
<td>trium</td>
<td>trium</td>
<td>mille</td>
<td>milium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>duóbus</td>
<td>duábus</td>
<td>duóbus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
<td>mille</td>
<td>milibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A.</td>
<td>duós or duo</td>
<td>duáis</td>
<td>duo</td>
<td>trís or tres</td>
<td>tría</td>
<td>mille</td>
<td>milia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A.</td>
<td>duóbus</td>
<td>duábus</td>
<td>duóbus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
<td>mille</td>
<td>milibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note.** Mille is used in the plural as a noun with a modifying genitive, and is occasionally so used in the nominative and accusative singular. For the declension of unus cf. § 470.
PRONOUNS

480.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PERSONAL</th>
<th>suī, of himself, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>ego, I</strong></td>
<td><strong>tū, you</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sing.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Plur.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>ego</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>meī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>mihi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>mē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>mē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that suī is always reflexive.

481.

DEMONSTRATIVE

Demonstratives belong to the first and second declensions, but have the pronominal endings -īus and -ī in the gen. and dat. sing.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>ipse, self</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sing.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>hic, this (here), he</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sing.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>iste, this, that (of yours), he</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sing.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Relative Pronoun

**ille, that (yonder), he**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>masc.</strong></td>
<td><strong>fem.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom. ille</td>
<td>illa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. illius</td>
<td>illius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. illī</td>
<td>illī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. illum</td>
<td>illam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. illō</td>
<td>illā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**is, this, that, he**

| Nom. is | ea | id | iī, ei | eae | ea |
| Gen. eius | eius | eius | eōrum | eārum | eōrum |
| Dat. ei | ei | ei | iīs, eīs | iīs, eīs | iīs, eīs |
| Acc. eum | eam | id | eōs | eās | ea |
| Abl. eō | eā | eō | iīs, eīs | iīs, eīs | iīs, eīs |

**īdem, the same**

| Nom. īdem | e'adem | īdem | eae'dem | īdem |
| Gen. eius'adem | eius'adem | eius'adem | eōrun'adem | eārun'adem | eōrun'adem |
| Dat. ei'dem | ei'dem | ei'dem | iīs'dem | iīs'dem | iīs'dem |
| Acc. eun'dem | ean'dem | īdem | eōs'dem | eās'dem | e'adem |
| Abl. eō'dem | eā'dem | eō'dem | īis'dem | iīs'dem | iīs'dem |

Note. In the plural of *is* and *īdem* the forms with two *i*’s are preferred, the two *i*’s being pronounced as one.

---

### Relative

**qui, who, which, that**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>masc.</strong></td>
<td><strong>fem.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom. qui</td>
<td>quae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. cuius</td>
<td>cuius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. cui</td>
<td>cui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. quem</td>
<td>quam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. quō</td>
<td>quā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
483. **INTERROGATIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong></td>
<td><strong>MASC.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quis</td>
<td>quid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>cuius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>cui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>quem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>quō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The interrogative adjective qui, quae, quod, is declined like the relative.

484. **INDEFINITES**

quis and qui, as declined above,\(^1\) are used also as indefinites (some, any). The other indefinites are compounds of quis and qui.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>quisque, each</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>SUBSTANTIVE</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>MASC. AND FEM.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom. quisque</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. cuius’que</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. cuique</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. quemque</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. quōque</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

485. **quidam, a certain one, a certain**

Observe that in the neuter singular the adjective has quoddam and the substantive quiddam.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>NEUT.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>MASC.</strong></td>
<td><strong>FEM.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom. quidam</td>
<td>quaedam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. cuius’dam</td>
<td>cuius’dam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. cuidam</td>
<td>cuidam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. quendam</td>
<td>quandam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. quōdam</td>
<td>quādam</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^1\) qua is generally used instead of quae in the feminine nominative singular and in the neuter nominative and accusative plural.
INDEFINITE PRONOUNS 243

**Plural**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>quidam</th>
<th>quaedam</th>
<th>quaedam</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>quórundam</td>
<td>quárundam</td>
<td>quórundam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>quibus'dam</td>
<td>quibus'dam</td>
<td>quibus'dam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>quósdam</td>
<td>quásdam</td>
<td>quaedam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>quibus'dam</td>
<td>quibus'dam</td>
<td>quibus'dam</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

486. *quisquam*, substantive, *any one* (at all)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masc. and Fem.</th>
<th>Neut.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. quisquam</td>
<td>quicquam (quidquam)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. cuius'quam</td>
<td>cuius'quam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. cuiquam</td>
<td>cuiquam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. quemquam</td>
<td>quicquam (quidquam)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. quoquam</td>
<td>quoquam</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

487. *aliquis*, substantive, *some one*. *aliquí*, adjective, *some*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Substantive</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. aliquis</td>
<td>aliquid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. alicu’ius</td>
<td>alicu’ius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. alicui</td>
<td>alicui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. aliquem</td>
<td>aliquid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. aliíquó</td>
<td>aliíquó</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plural for both Substantive and Adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. *quis* (qui), *any one*, *any*, is the least definite (§ 297. b). *aliquis* (aliquí), *some one*, *some*, is more definite than *quis*. *quisquam*, *any one* (at all), and its adjective *illus*, *any*, occur mostly with a negative, expressed or implied, and in clauses of comparison.
## Appended Regular Verbs

### 488. First Conjugation. \( \text{ā}-\text{verbs} \)  \\ **AMÔ**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Principal Parts</th>
<th>amô, amâre, amâvi, amâtus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres. Stem</td>
<td>amâ-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf. Stem</td>
<td>amâv-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part. Stem</td>
<td>amât-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### ACTIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INDICATIVE</th>
<th>PASSIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>I love, am loving, do love, etc.</em></td>
<td><em>I am loved, etc.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amô</td>
<td>amor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amâs</td>
<td>amâris, -re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amat</td>
<td>amâtur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amamus</td>
<td>amâmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amatis</td>
<td>amâmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amant</td>
<td>amantur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **IMPERFECT**     |               |
| *I loved, was loving, did love, etc.* | *I was loved, etc.* |
| amâbâm            | amâbâmus      |
| amâbâs            | amâbâtis      |
| amâbat            | amâbant       |
| amabam           | amabâs        |
| amabatis         | amabâtis      |
| amabat           | amabant       |
| amabar          | amabâmur      |
| amâbâris, -re   | amâbâmini     |
| amâbâtur        | amâbârur      |
| amabîmus       | amabimur      |
| amabîtis        | amabiminî     |
| amabînt         | amabîntur     |

| **FUTURE**       |               |
| *I shall love, etc.* | *I shall be loved, etc.* |
| amâbô            | amâbimus      |
| amâbis           | amâbitis      |
| amâbit           | amâbunt       |
| amâbor           | amâbimur      |
| amâberis, -re   | amâbiminî     |
| amâbitur        | amâbîntur     |

| **PERFECT**      |               |
| *I have loved, loved, did love, etc.* | *I have been (was) loved, etc.* |
| amâvî            | amâvîmus      |
| amâvistî         | amâvistis     |
| amâvit           | amâvîrunt, -re|
| amâvîsum        | amâtus, \{sum es\} |
| amâvîstis       | amâtus, \{-a, -um\} |
| amâvît          | amâtus, \{-a, -um\} |
| amâvîrunt, -re  | amâtus, \{-a, -um\} |
| amâtis, \{sum es\} est | amâtis, \{-ae, -a\} |
| amâtis, \{-a, -um\} | amâtis, \{-ae, -a\} |

| **PLUSPERFECT**  |               |
| *I had loved, etc.* | *I had been loved, etc.* |
| amâveram         | amâverāmus    |
| amâverâs         | amâverâtis    |
| amâverat         | amâverant     |
| amâveram         | amâverāmus    |
| amâverâs         | amâverâtis    |
| amâverat         | amâverant     |
| amâveram         | amâverāmus    |
| amâverâs         | amâverâtis    |
| amâverat         | amâverant     |
| amâveram         | amâverāmus    |
| amâverâs         | amâverâtis    |
| amâverat         | amâverant     |

| **FUTURE PERFECT** |               |
| *I shall have loved, etc.* | *I shall have been loved, etc.* |
| amâverô           | amâverimus    |
| amâveris          | amâveritis    |
| amâverit          | amâverint     |
| amâverô           | amâverimus    |
| amâveris          | amâveritis    |
| amâverit          | amâverint     |
| amâverô           | amâverimus    |
| amâveris          | amâveritis    |
| amâverit          | amâverint     |
## FIRST CONJUGATION
### SUBJUNCTIVE

#### PRESENT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>amem</strong></td>
<td><strong>amer</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>amēs</strong></td>
<td><strong>amēris,</strong> <strong>-re</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>amet</strong></td>
<td><strong>amēntur</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>amārem</strong></td>
<td><strong>amārer</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>amārēs</strong></td>
<td><strong>amārēris,</strong> <strong>-re</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>amāret</strong></td>
<td><strong>amārentur</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>amāverim</strong></td>
<td><strong>amāverimus</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>amāveris</strong></td>
<td><strong>amāveritis</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>amāverit</strong></td>
<td><strong>amāverint</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>amāvissem</strong></td>
<td><strong>amāvissemus</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>amāvisssēs</strong></td>
<td><strong>amāvisstitis</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>amāvisset</strong></td>
<td><strong>amāvisstent</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### IMPERFECT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>amem</strong></td>
<td><strong>amemus</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>amēs</strong></td>
<td><strong>amētis</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>amet</strong></td>
<td><strong>ament</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>amārem</strong></td>
<td><strong>amāremus</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>amārēs</strong></td>
<td><strong>amārētis</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>amāret</strong></td>
<td><strong>amārent</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>amāverem</strong></td>
<td><strong>amāverimus</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>amāverês</strong></td>
<td><strong>amāveritis</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>amāveret</strong></td>
<td><strong>amāverent</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>amāvissem</strong></td>
<td><strong>amāvissemus</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>amāvissēs</strong></td>
<td><strong>amāvissētis</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>amāvisset</strong></td>
<td><strong>amāvissent</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PERFECT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>amem</strong></td>
<td><strong>amer</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>amēs</strong></td>
<td><strong>amēris,</strong> <strong>-re</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>amet</strong></td>
<td><strong>amēntur</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>amārem</strong></td>
<td><strong>amārer</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>amārēs</strong></td>
<td><strong>amārēris,</strong> <strong>-re</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>amāret</strong></td>
<td><strong>amārentur</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>amāverem</strong></td>
<td><strong>amāverimus</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>amāverês</strong></td>
<td><strong>amāveritis</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>amāveret</strong></td>
<td><strong>amāverent</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>amāvissem</strong></td>
<td><strong>amāvissemus</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>amāvissēs</strong></td>
<td><strong>amāvissētis</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>amāvisset</strong></td>
<td><strong>amāvissent</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PLUPERFECT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>amem</strong></td>
<td><strong>amemini</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>amēs</strong></td>
<td><strong>amētis</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>amet</strong></td>
<td><strong>amentur</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>amārem</strong></td>
<td><strong>amāremur</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>amārēs</strong></td>
<td><strong>amārētus,</strong> <strong>-a,</strong> <strong>-um</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>amāret</strong></td>
<td><strong>amārentur</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>amāverem</strong></td>
<td><strong>amāverimus</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>amāverês</strong></td>
<td><strong>amāveritis</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>amāveret</strong></td>
<td><strong>amāverint</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>amāvissem</strong></td>
<td><strong>amāvissemus</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>amāvissēs</strong></td>
<td><strong>amāvissētis</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>amāvisset</strong></td>
<td><strong>amāvissent</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### IMPERATIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>amā, love thou</strong></td>
<td><strong>amātor, thou shalt love</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>amāte, love ye</strong></td>
<td><strong>amātor, he shall love</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>amāto, they shalt love</strong></td>
<td><strong>amantor, they shall be loved</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### INFINITIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>amāre,</strong> <strong>to love</strong></td>
<td><strong>amāri,</strong> <strong>to be loved</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>amāvisse,</strong> <strong>to have loved</strong></td>
<td><strong>amātus,</strong> <strong>-a,</strong> <strong>-um</strong> <strong>esse,</strong> <strong>to have been loved</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>amātūrus,</strong> <strong>-a,</strong> <strong>-um</strong> <strong>esse,</strong> <strong>to be about to love</strong></td>
<td><strong>[amātum ēri], to be about to be loved</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PARTICIPLES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Gerundive¹</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>amāns,</strong> <strong>-antis,</strong> <strong>loving</strong></td>
<td><strong>amātūrus,</strong> <strong>-a,</strong> <strong>-um,</strong> <strong>about to love</strong></td>
<td><strong>amandus,</strong> <strong>-a,</strong> <strong>-um,</strong> <strong>to be loved</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>amandūris,</strong> <strong>-a,</strong> <strong>-um,</strong> <strong>about to love</strong></td>
<td><strong>amandūris,</strong> <strong>-a,</strong> <strong>-um,</strong> <strong>about to love</strong></td>
<td><strong>amandūs,</strong> <strong>-a,</strong> <strong>-um,</strong> <strong>having been loved,</strong> <strong>loved</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### GERUND

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>amandi,</strong> <strong>of loving</strong></td>
<td><strong>amandō,</strong> <strong>for loving</strong></td>
<td><strong>amandum,</strong> <strong>loving</strong></td>
<td><strong>amandō,</strong> <strong>by loving</strong></td>
<td><strong>amandō,</strong> <strong>by loving</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ Sometimes called the future passive participle.
### Second Conjugation. E-Verbs. Moneó

**Principal Parts**
- moneó, monēre, monuī, monitus

**Pres. Stem** monē-  **Perf. Stem** monu-  **Part. Stem** monit-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>I advise, etc.</strong></td>
<td><strong>I am advised, etc.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moneó</td>
<td>monēmus</td>
<td>moneor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēs</td>
<td>monētis</td>
<td>monēris, -re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monet</td>
<td>monent</td>
<td>monētur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>I was advising, etc.</strong></td>
<td><strong>I was advised, etc.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbam</td>
<td>monēbāmus</td>
<td>monēbar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbās</td>
<td>monēbātis</td>
<td>monēbāris, -re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbat</td>
<td>monēbant</td>
<td>monēbātur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>I shall advise, etc.</strong></td>
<td><strong>I shall be advised, etc.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbō</td>
<td>monēbimus</td>
<td>monēbor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbis</td>
<td>monēbitis</td>
<td>monēberis, -re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbit</td>
<td>monēbunt</td>
<td>monēbitur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>I have advised, I advised, etc.</strong></td>
<td><strong>I have been (was) advised, etc.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuī</td>
<td>monuimus</td>
<td>monitus, {sum -a, -um sumus, estis}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuistī</td>
<td>monuīstis</td>
<td>es, -ae, -a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuīt</td>
<td>monuērunt, -re</td>
<td>sunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>I had advised, etc.</strong></td>
<td><strong>I had been advised, etc.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monueram</td>
<td>monuerāmus</td>
<td>monitus, {eram -a, -um erāmus, erātis}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuerās</td>
<td>monuerātis</td>
<td>eras, -ae, -a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuerat</td>
<td>monuerant</td>
<td>erat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pluperfect</strong></td>
<td><strong>Future perfect</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>I shall have advised, etc.</strong></td>
<td><strong>I shall have been advised, etc.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuerō</td>
<td>monuerimus</td>
<td>monitus, {erō -a, -um erōmus, eritis}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monueris</td>
<td>monueritis</td>
<td>eris, -ae, -a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuerit</td>
<td>monuerint</td>
<td>erit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### SECOND CONJUGATION

#### SUBJUNCTIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Pluperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>moneam</strong></td>
<td><strong>moneámus</strong></td>
<td><strong>moncar</strong></td>
<td><strong>moneámur</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>moneás</strong></td>
<td><strong>moneáris, -re</strong></td>
<td><strong>moneáris, -re</strong></td>
<td><strong>moneámini</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>moneat</strong></td>
<td><strong>moneátor</strong></td>
<td><strong>moneántur</strong></td>
<td><strong>moneántur</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>monérem</strong></td>
<td><strong>monéremus</strong></td>
<td><strong>monére, to advise thou</strong></td>
<td><strong>monére, to be advised</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>monéres</strong></td>
<td><strong>monéretis</strong></td>
<td><strong>monére, to advise ye</strong></td>
<td><strong>monémini, be ye advised</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>monéret</strong></td>
<td><strong>monérent</strong></td>
<td><strong>monére, he shall advise</strong></td>
<td><strong>monétor, he shall be advised</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>monuerim</strong></td>
<td><strong>monuerimus</strong></td>
<td><strong>monére, you shall advise</strong></td>
<td><strong>monétor, they shall be advised</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>monueris</strong></td>
<td><strong>monueritis</strong></td>
<td><strong>monére, they shall advise</strong></td>
<td><strong>monétor, thay shall be advised</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>monuerit</strong></td>
<td><strong>monuerint</strong></td>
<td><strong>monére, to advise</strong></td>
<td><strong>monéri, to be advised</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>monuissem</strong></td>
<td><strong>monuissemus</strong></td>
<td><strong>monéri, having been advised, advised</strong></td>
<td><strong>monéri, having been advised, advised</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>monusses</strong></td>
<td><strong>monussétis</strong></td>
<td><strong>monéri, to have advised</strong></td>
<td><strong>monéri, to have advised</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>monissset</strong></td>
<td><strong>monissent</strong></td>
<td><strong>monéri, to have been advised, advised</strong></td>
<td><strong>monéri, to have been advised, advised</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### IMPERATIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Fut.</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Participles</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>monē, advise thou</strong></td>
<td><strong>monētor</strong></td>
<td><strong>monēri, to advise</strong></td>
<td><strong>monéns, -entis, advising</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>monête, advise ye</strong></td>
<td><strong>monētor</strong></td>
<td><strong>monéri, to be advised</strong></td>
<td><strong>monéns, -entis, advising</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>monēto, thou shalt advise</strong></td>
<td><strong>monētor</strong></td>
<td><strong>monéri, having been advised, advised</strong></td>
<td><strong>monéns, -entis, advising</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>monētot, you shall advise</strong></td>
<td><strong>monētor</strong></td>
<td><strong>monéri, to advise</strong></td>
<td><strong>monéns, -entis, advising</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>monētō, they shall advise</strong></td>
<td><strong>monētor</strong></td>
<td><strong>monéri, to have advised</strong></td>
<td><strong>monéns, -entis, advising</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PARTICIPLES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>Ger.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>monēns, -entis, advising</strong></td>
<td><strong>monendus, -a, -um, to be advised</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>monētus, -a, -um, about to advise</strong></td>
<td><strong>monendus, -a, -um, to be advised</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### GERUND

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>monendĭ, of advising</strong></td>
<td><strong>monendum, advising</strong></td>
<td><strong>monendo, for advising</strong></td>
<td><strong>monendum, advising</strong></td>
<td><strong>monendo, by advising</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### SUPINE (Active Voice)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>monitum, in the advising</strong></td>
<td><strong>monitum, to advise</strong></td>
<td><strong>monitum, to advise</strong></td>
<td><strong>monitum, to advise</strong></td>
<td><strong>monitum, to advise</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Appendix I

#### 490. Third Conjugation. Ė-Verbs. Regō

**Principal Parts**: regō, regere, rēxi, rēctus

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Stem</th>
<th>Perf. Stem</th>
<th>Part. Stem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>rego</strong></td>
<td><strong>rex-</strong></td>
<td><strong>rect-</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Active**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>active</th>
<th>indicative</th>
<th>passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>I rule, etc.</strong></td>
<td><strong>I was ruling, etc.</strong></td>
<td><strong>I shall rule, etc.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regō</td>
<td>regimus</td>
<td>re'gor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regis</td>
<td>regitis</td>
<td>re'geris, -re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēgit</td>
<td>regunt</td>
<td>re'gitur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>imperfect</th>
<th>active</th>
<th>indicative</th>
<th>passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>I was ruling, etc.</strong></td>
<td><strong>I was ruled, etc.</strong></td>
<td><strong>I shall be ruled, etc.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regēbam</td>
<td>regēbāmus</td>
<td>regē'bar</td>
<td>regēbā'mur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regēbās</td>
<td>regēbātis</td>
<td>regēbā'tis, -re</td>
<td>regēbā'mini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regēbat</td>
<td>regēbānt</td>
<td>regēbā'tur</td>
<td>regēban'tur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>future</th>
<th>active</th>
<th>indicative</th>
<th>passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>I shall rule, etc.</strong></td>
<td><strong>I was ruled, etc.</strong></td>
<td><strong>I shall be ruled, etc.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regam</td>
<td>regēmus</td>
<td>re'gar</td>
<td>regē'mur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regēs</td>
<td>regētis</td>
<td>re'geris, -re</td>
<td>regē'mini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reget</td>
<td>regent</td>
<td>regē'tur</td>
<td>regen'tur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>perfect</th>
<th>active</th>
<th>indicative</th>
<th>passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>I have ruled, etc.</strong></td>
<td><strong>I have been ruled, etc.</strong></td>
<td><strong>I shall have been ruled, etc.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxī</td>
<td>rēximus</td>
<td>rēctus, {sum est</td>
<td>sumus estis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxistī</td>
<td>rēxistis</td>
<td>-a, -um {ae, -a</td>
<td>sunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxīt</td>
<td>rēxērunt, -re</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Pluperfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>pluperfect</th>
<th>active</th>
<th>indicative</th>
<th>passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>I had ruled, etc.</strong></td>
<td><strong>I had been ruled, etc.</strong></td>
<td><strong>I shall have been ruled, etc.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxeram</td>
<td>rēxerāmus</td>
<td>rēctus, {eram est</td>
<td>erāmus erat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxerās</td>
<td>rēxerātis</td>
<td>-a, -um {ae, -a</td>
<td>erātis erant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxerat</td>
<td>rēxerant</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>future perfect</th>
<th>active</th>
<th>indicative</th>
<th>passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>I shall have ruled, etc.</strong></td>
<td><strong>I shall have been ruled, etc.</strong></td>
<td><strong>I shall have been ruled, etc.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxerō</td>
<td>rēxerimus</td>
<td>rēctus, {erō est</td>
<td>erimus erat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxeris</td>
<td>rēxeritis</td>
<td>-a, -um {ae, -a</td>
<td>eritis erant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxerit</td>
<td>rēxerint</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# THIRD CONJUGATION

## SUBJUNCTIVE

### PRESENT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>1st Pl.</th>
<th>2nd Pl.</th>
<th>3rd Pl.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>regam</td>
<td>regamur</td>
<td>regar</td>
<td>regamus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regäs</td>
<td>regämmini</td>
<td>regāris, -re</td>
<td>regātur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regat</td>
<td>regantur</td>
<td>regant</td>
<td>regārit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### IMPERFECT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>1st Pl.</th>
<th>2nd Pl.</th>
<th>3rd Pl.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>regerem</td>
<td>regerēmur</td>
<td>regerere</td>
<td>regerēminī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regerēs</td>
<td>regerētis</td>
<td>regerēris, -re</td>
<td>regerētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regeret</td>
<td>regerentur</td>
<td>regerent</td>
<td>regerent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PERFECT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>1st Pl.</th>
<th>2nd Pl.</th>
<th>3rd Pl.</th>
<th>3rd Pl. Definitive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>regem</td>
<td>regemus</td>
<td>sim</td>
<td>rēctus, -a, -um</td>
<td>sîmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regemus</td>
<td>regemus</td>
<td>sîs</td>
<td>rēctī, -ae, -a</td>
<td>sit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rexerim</td>
<td>rexerimus</td>
<td>essem</td>
<td>rēctūs, -ae, -a</td>
<td>essēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rexeris</td>
<td>rexeritis</td>
<td>essēs</td>
<td>rēctūs, -ae, -a</td>
<td>essēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rexerit</td>
<td>rexerint</td>
<td>esset</td>
<td>rēctūs, -ae, -a</td>
<td>essent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PLUPERFECT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>1st Pl.</th>
<th>2nd Pl.</th>
<th>3rd Pl.</th>
<th>3rd Pl. Definitive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rexissēm</td>
<td>rexissēmus</td>
<td>rēctus, -a, -um</td>
<td>essēmus</td>
<td>essēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rexissēs</td>
<td>rexissētis</td>
<td>essēs</td>
<td>essēs</td>
<td>essent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rexisset</td>
<td>rexisset</td>
<td>esset</td>
<td>esset</td>
<td>essent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### IMPERATIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rega, rule thou</td>
<td>regere, be thou ruled</td>
<td>regitor, thou shalt be ruled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regās, rule ye</td>
<td>regāmini, be ye ruled</td>
<td>regitor, he shall be ruled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regat</td>
<td>regant</td>
<td>reguntor, they shall be ruled</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### INFINITIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>regere, to rule</td>
<td>rēctūs, -a, -um esse, to be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>rēxisse, to have ruled</td>
<td>[rēctum ēri], to be about to be ruled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>regi, to be ruled</td>
<td>[rēctum ēri], to be about to be ruled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>rēctūrus, -a, -um esse, to be</td>
<td>[rēctum ēri], to be about to be ruled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>rēctūrus, -a, -um, about to rule</td>
<td>[rēctum ēri], to be about to be ruled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>rēctūrus, -a, -um, about to rule</td>
<td>[rēctum ēri], to be about to be ruled</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PARTICIPLES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>regēns, -entis, ruling</td>
<td>regendus, -a, -um, to be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>rēctūrus, -a, -um, about to rule</td>
<td>rēctus, -a, -um, having been ruled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>rēctūrus, -a, -um, about to rule</td>
<td>rēctus, -a, -um, having been ruled</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### GERUND

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>regendī</td>
<td>regendi, of ruling</td>
<td>regendō</td>
<td>regendō, for ruling</td>
<td>regendum, ruling</td>
<td>regendō, by ruling</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### SUPINE (Active Voice)

- Nom. [rēctum], to rule
- Gen. [rēctū], to rule, in the ruling
### APPENDIX I

#### 491. FOURTH CONJUGATION. Ī-VERBS. AUDĪŌ

**Principal Parts**
- audiō, audīre, audīvi, auditūs

**Pres. Stem** audi-  
**Perf. Stem** audīv-  
**Part. Stem** audit-

### ACTIVE

**INDICATIVE**

#### PRESENT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I hear, etc.</th>
<th>I am heard, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audiō</td>
<td>au'dior</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audis</td>
<td>audī'ris, -re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audit</td>
<td>audī'tur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīmus</td>
<td>audi'mur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audītis</td>
<td>audi'mini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiant</td>
<td>audiun'tur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### IMPERFECT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I was hearing, etc.</th>
<th>I was heard, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audiēbam</td>
<td>audīē'bāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēbās</td>
<td>audīē'bātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēbat</td>
<td>audīē'bat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiē'bar</td>
<td>audīē'bā'mur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēbā'ris, -re</td>
<td>audīē'bā'mini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēbā'tur</td>
<td>audīē'ban'tur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### FUTURE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I shall hear, etc.</th>
<th>I shall be heard, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audiām</td>
<td>au'diar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēs</td>
<td>audiē'ris, -re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiet</td>
<td>audiē'tur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēmus</td>
<td>audiē'mur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiētis</td>
<td>audiē'mini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audient</td>
<td>audien'tur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PERFECT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I have heard, etc.</th>
<th>I have been heard, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audīvi</td>
<td>audīvīmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīvistī</td>
<td>audīvistis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīvit</td>
<td>audīvērunt, -re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audītus, sum</td>
<td>audiīti, sumum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-a, -um est</td>
<td>-ae, -a sunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pluperfect</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### FUTURE PERFECT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I shall have heard, etc.</th>
<th>I shall have been heard, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audīverō</td>
<td>audīverimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīverēs</td>
<td>audīverētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīverat</td>
<td>audīverant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audītus, erō</td>
<td>audiīti, erimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-a, -um eris</td>
<td>-ae, -a eritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>futurum</td>
<td>erunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### FOURTH CONJUGATION

#### SUBJUNCTIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Pluperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audiam</td>
<td>audīrem</td>
<td>audīverim</td>
<td>audīvissem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiāmus</td>
<td>audiāremus</td>
<td>audīverimus</td>
<td>audīvissēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiātis</td>
<td>audiātēsis</td>
<td>audīverētis</td>
<td>audīvissētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiānt</td>
<td>audiārent</td>
<td>audīverent</td>
<td>audīvissent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Imperative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audī, hear thou</td>
<td>audītō, thou shalt hear</td>
<td>audītō, he shall hear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīte, hear ye</td>
<td>audītōte, ye shall hear</td>
<td>audīuntō, they shall hear</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>Fut.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audire, to hear</td>
<td>audītūrus, -a, -um esse, to be about to hear</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Participles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audiēns, -entis, hearing</td>
<td>auditūrus, -a, -um, about to hear</td>
<td>audiendus, -a, -um, to be heard</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Gerund

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audiēndi, of hearing</td>
<td>audiēndū, of hearing</td>
<td>audiēndum, hearing</td>
<td>audiēndum, hearing</td>
<td>audiēndū, by hearing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Supine (Active Voice)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[auditum], to hear</td>
<td>[auditum], to hear</td>
<td>[auditum], to hear</td>
<td>[auditum], to hear</td>
<td>[auditum], to hear</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Third Conjugation: Verbs in -io. Capio

**Principal Parts**: capio, capere, cepi, captus  
**Pres. Stem**: Cape-  
**Perf. Stem**: Cepe-  
**Part. Stem**: Capt-  

## Active

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verbs</th>
<th>Principal Parts</th>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capio</td>
<td>capimus</td>
<td>capior</td>
<td>capimur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capis</td>
<td>capitis</td>
<td>caperis, -re</td>
<td>capi'mini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capit</td>
<td>capiunt</td>
<td>capitur</td>
<td>capiun'tur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Imperfect</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiebam</td>
<td>capiebamus</td>
<td>capiebar</td>
<td>capieb'amur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiebas</td>
<td>capiebatis</td>
<td>capieba'ris, -re</td>
<td>capieba'mini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiebat</td>
<td>capiebant</td>
<td>capieba'tur</td>
<td>capieban'tur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiam</td>
<td>capiemus</td>
<td>capiar</td>
<td>capi'mur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capies</td>
<td>capietis</td>
<td>capie'ris, -re</td>
<td>capi'mini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiet</td>
<td>capient</td>
<td>capie'tur</td>
<td>capien'tur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perfect</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cepi, cepisti, cepit, etc.</td>
<td></td>
<td>captus, -a, -um sum, es, est, etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pluperfect</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ceperam, ceperas, ceperat, etc.</td>
<td></td>
<td>captus, -a, -um eram, eras, erat, etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Subjunctive</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiam, capias, capiat, etc.</td>
<td></td>
<td>capiar, -iaris, -re, -iatur, etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Imperfect</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caperem, caperes, caperet, etc.</td>
<td></td>
<td>caperer, -eriris, -re, -eretur, etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perfect</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ceperim, ceperis, ceperit, etc.</td>
<td></td>
<td>captus, -a, -um sim, sis, sit, etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pluperfect</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cepissem, cepisses, cepisset, etc.</td>
<td></td>
<td>captus, -a, -um essem, esses, esset, etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Imperative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2d Pers.</th>
<th>3rd Pers.</th>
<th>1st Pers.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cape</td>
<td>capere</td>
<td>capimini</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### DEPONENT VERBS

#### FUTURE

| 2d Pers. | capitō | capitōte | capitor |
| 3d Pers. | capitō | capiuntō | capiuntor |

#### INFINITIVE

| Pres. | capere | capiēns, -ientis |
| Perf. | cēpisse | captūrus, -a, -um esse |
| Fut.  | captūrus, -a, -um esse | [captum īri] |

#### PARTICIPLES

| Pres. | captūris, -a, -um |
| Perf. | captūris, -a, -um |

#### GERUND

Gen. | capiēndī etc. |

#### SUPINE (Active Voice)

| Gen. | capiēndūs, -a, -um |
| Abl. | capiēndū |

### DEPONENT VERBS

**Principal Parts**

1. hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum, urge
2. vereor, verērī, veritus sum, fear
3. sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, follow
4. partior, partīrī, partitus sum, share, divide

**Indicative**

| Pres. | hortor | vereor | sequor | partior |
| hortāris, -re | verēris, -re | sequeris, -re | partīris, -re |
| hortātur | verētur | sequitur | partītur |
| hortāmur | verēmur | sequimur | partīmur |
| hortāmini | verēmini | sequimini | partīmini |
| hortantur | verentur | sequuntur | partiuntur |

| Impf. | hortābar | verēbar | sequēbar | partiar |
| hortābor | verēbor | sequar | partiēbar |

| Fut. | hortābor | verēbor | sequar |
| partiar |

| Perf. | hortātus sum | veritus sum | secūtus sum |
| partitus sum |

| Plup. | hortātus eram | veritus eram | secūtus eram |
| partitus eram |

| F. P. | hortātus erō | veritus erō | secūtus erō |
| partitus erō |

**Note.** In addition to the passive conjugation, deponent verbs use certain forms from the active. These are marked with a star. Deponent -īō verbs of the third conjugation are inflected like the passive of capiō.
### APPENDIX I

#### Subjunctive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>hortēre</td>
<td>verēre</td>
<td>sequēre</td>
<td>partīre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>hortātor</td>
<td>verētor</td>
<td>sequitor</td>
<td>partītor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>hortātus esse</td>
<td>veritūs esse</td>
<td>secūtūs esse</td>
<td>partītūs esse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Imperative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>hortēre</td>
<td>verēre</td>
<td>sequēre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>hortātor</td>
<td>verētor</td>
<td>sequitor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>hortāri</td>
<td>verēri</td>
<td>sequī</td>
<td>partīri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>hortātus esse</td>
<td>veritūs esse</td>
<td>secūtūs esse</td>
<td>partītūs esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>*hortātūrus esse</td>
<td>*veritūrūsus esse</td>
<td>*secūtūrūsus esse</td>
<td>*partītūrūsus esse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Participles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>*hortāns</td>
<td>*verēns</td>
<td>*sequēns</td>
<td>*partīēns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>*hortātūrus</td>
<td>*veritūrūsus</td>
<td>*secūtūrūsus</td>
<td>*partītūrūsus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>hortātus</td>
<td>veritūs</td>
<td>secūtūs</td>
<td>partītūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ger.</td>
<td>hortandus</td>
<td>verendūs</td>
<td>sequendūs</td>
<td>partiendūs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Gerund

*hortandī, etc.  *verendī, etc.  *sequendī, etc.  *partiendī, etc.

#### Supine

*[hortātum, -tū] *[veritum, -tū] *[secūtum, -tū] *[partītum, -tū]

#### Irregular Verbs

494.

**sum, am, be**

**Principal Parts** sum, esse, fuī, futūrus

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>sum</td>
<td>sum</td>
<td>sunt</td>
<td>erāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>es</td>
<td>am</td>
<td>estis</td>
<td>erātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>est</td>
<td>est</td>
<td>sunt</td>
<td>erant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Indicative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>sum</td>
<td>sum</td>
<td>sunt</td>
<td>erāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>es</td>
<td>am</td>
<td>estis</td>
<td>erātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>est</td>
<td>est</td>
<td>sunt</td>
<td>erant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PLURAL**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>sumus</td>
<td>sumus</td>
<td>esumus</td>
<td>eramus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>estis</td>
<td>estis</td>
<td>erestis</td>
<td>erat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>sunt</td>
<td>sunt</td>
<td>erant</td>
<td>erant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
IRREGULAR VERBS

**Future**
erō, I shall be
eris, thou wilt be
erit, he will be
erimus, we shall be
eritis, you will be
erunt, they will be

**Perfect**
fuī, I have been, was
fuisti, thou hast been, wast
fuit, he has been, was
fuimus, we have been, were
fuistis, you have been, were
fuērunt,

**Pluperfect**
fueram, I had been
fuerās, thou hadst been
fuerat, he had been
fuerāmus, we had been
fuerātis, you had been
fuerant, they had been

**Future-Perfect**
fuerō, I shall have been
fueris, thou wilt have been
fuerit, he will have been
fuerimus, we shall have been
fueritis, you will have been
fuerint, they will have been

**Present**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sim</td>
<td>simus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sis</td>
<td>sītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sit</td>
<td>sint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperfect**
simus
sītis
sint

**Pluperfect**
fuerim
fueris
fuerit
fuisset

**Imperative**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRESENT</th>
<th>FUTURE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2d Pers. Sing. est, be thou</td>
<td>2d Pers. Sing. estō, thou shalt be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2d Pers. Plur. este, be ye</td>
<td>3d Pers. Sing. estō, he shall be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2d Pers. Plur. estōte, ye shall be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3d Pers. Plur. suntō, they shall be</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Infinitive**

Pres. esse, to be
Perf. fuissete, to have been

**Participle**
futūrus, -a, -um, about to be
### APPENDIX I

#### 495.

**possum, be able, can**

**Principal Parts** `possum, posse, potui,` —

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Singular</strong></td>
<td><strong>Plural</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pres.</strong></td>
<td>possum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>potes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>potest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Impf.</strong></td>
<td>poteram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fut.</strong></td>
<td>poterō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perf.</strong></td>
<td>potui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plup.</strong></td>
<td>potueram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>F. P.</strong></td>
<td>potuerō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Infinitive**

**Pres.** posse  
**Perf.** potuisset

**Participle**

**Pres.** potēns, gen. -entis, (adjective) powerful

#### 496.

**prosum, benefit**

**Principal Parts** `prosum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfutūrus`

**Pres. Stem** `prōdes-`  **Perf. Stem** `prōfu-`  **Part. Stem** `prōfut-`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Singular</strong></td>
<td><strong>Plural</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pres.</strong></td>
<td>prōsum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>prōdes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>prōdest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Impf.</strong></td>
<td>prōderam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fut.</strong></td>
<td>prōderō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perf.</strong></td>
<td>prōfuī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plup.</strong></td>
<td>prōfaieram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>F. P.</strong></td>
<td>prōfuerō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperative**

**Pres. 2d Pers.** prōdes, prōdeste  
**Fut. 2d Pers.** prōdestō, prōdestōte

**Infinitive**

**Pres.** prōdesse  
**Perf.** prōfuisset  
**Fut.** prōfutūrus, -a, -um esse

**Future Participle** prōfutūrus, -a, -um
IRREGULAR VERBS

497. Principal Parts

\{ volō, velle, volü, —, be willing, will, wish \\
  nölo, nölle, nölüi, —, be unwilling, will not \\
  mālo, mālle, mālui, —, be more willing, prefer \}

Nölo and mālo are compounds of volō. Nölo is for ne (not) + volō, and
mālo for mā (from magis, more) + volō. The second person vis is from a
different root.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>singular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plural</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impf.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plup.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F. P.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>singular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plural</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impf.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plup.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Imperative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### APPENDIX I

#### Infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>velle</th>
<th>Perf.</th>
<th>voluisse</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>mālle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nōlle</td>
<td></td>
<td>nōluisse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>māluisse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Participle

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>volēns, -entis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nōlēns, -entis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Principal Parts

**ferō**, bear, carry, endure

**Principal Parts**: ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres. Stem</th>
<th>fer-</th>
<th>Perf. Stem</th>
<th>tul-</th>
<th>Part. Stem</th>
<th>lāt-</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ACTIVE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>ferō</td>
<td>ferimus</td>
<td></td>
<td>feró</td>
<td>ferō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fers</td>
<td>ferts</td>
<td></td>
<td>fere</td>
<td>fere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fert</td>
<td>ferunt</td>
<td></td>
<td>ferte</td>
<td>ferte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperf.</td>
<td>ferēbam</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ferēbar</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>feram, ferēs, etc.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ferar, ferēris, etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>tuli</td>
<td>tuleram</td>
<td></td>
<td>lātus, -a, -um sum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pluperf.</td>
<td>tulerō</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>lātus, -a, -um erō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INDICATIVE</th>
<th>PASSIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>feron, ferimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fers, ferts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fert, ferunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ferēbar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>feram, ferēs, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>tuli</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pluperf.</td>
<td>tulerō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUBJUNCTIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperf.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pluperf.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IMPERATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres. 2d Pers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3d Pers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INFINITIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PARTICIPLES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
IRREGULAR VERBS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gerund</th>
<th>Supine (Active Voice)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen. ferendi</td>
<td>Acc. ferendum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. ferendō</td>
<td>Abl. ferendō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

499.

**eō, go**

Principal Parts eō, ire, ii (ivi), itum (n. perf. part.)

Pres. Stem i-   Perf. stem i- or iv-   Part. Stem it-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
<th>Imperative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres. eō</td>
<td>imus</td>
<td>cam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ī</td>
<td>ītis</td>
<td>ĭrem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>īt</td>
<td>eunt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impf. ibām</td>
<td></td>
<td>ĭrem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. ibō</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf. ii (ivi)</td>
<td></td>
<td>ierim (īverim)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plup. ieram (īveram)</td>
<td></td>
<td>ĭssem (īvissem)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F. P. ierō (īverō)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Infinitive**

Pres. īre
Perf. īsse (īvisse)
Fut. ītūrus, -a, -um esse

**Participles**

Pres. iēns, gen. euntis (§ 472)
Fut. itūrus, -a, -um esse
Ger. eundum

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gerund</th>
<th>Supine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen. eundī</td>
<td>Acc. eundum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. eundō</td>
<td>Abl. eundō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. The verb eō is used impersonally in the third person singular of the passive, as ītur, itum est, etc.
b. In the perfect system the forms with v are very rare.

500. fīō, passive of faciō; be made, become, happen

Principal Parts fīō, fierī, factus sum

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
<th>Imperative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres. fīō</td>
<td></td>
<td>fiam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fit</td>
<td>fiunt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impf. fiēbam</td>
<td></td>
<td>fierem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. fiam</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tense</td>
<td>Indicative</td>
<td>Subjunctive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>factus, -a, -um sum</td>
<td>factus, -a, -um sim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plup.</td>
<td>factus, -a, -um eram</td>
<td>factus, -a, -um essem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F. P.</td>
<td>factus, -a, -um erō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Infinitive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>fierī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>factus, -a, -um esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>[factum īrī]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Participles**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>factus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ger.</td>
<td>faciendus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CASTRA MURO FOSSAQUE MUNIUNTUR
APPENDIX II

501. RULES OF SYNTAX

Note. The rules of syntax are here classified and numbered consecutively. The number of the text section in which the rule appears is given at the end of each.

Nominative Case

1. The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative and answers the question Who? or What? § 36.

Agreement

2. A finite verb must always be in the same person and number as its subject. § 28.
3. A predicate noun agrees in case with the subject of the verb. § 76.
4. An appositive agrees in case with the noun which it explains. § 81.
5. Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case. § 65.
6. A predicate adjective completing a complementary infinitive agrees in gender, number, and case with the subject of the main verb. § 215. a.
7. A relative pronoun must agree with its antecedent in gender and number; but its case is determined by the way it is used in its own clause. § 224.

Prepositions

8. A noun governed by a preposition must be in the accusative or ablative case. § 52.

Genitive Case

9. The word denoting the owner or possessor of something is in the genitive and answers the question Whose? § 38.
10. The possessive genitive often stands in the predicate, especially after the forms of sum, and is then called the predicate genitive. § 409.
11. Words denoting a part are often used with the genitive of the whole, known as the partitive genitive. § 331.
12. Numerical descriptions of measure are expressed by the genitive with a modifying adjective. § 443.
Dative Case

13. The indirect object of a verb is in the dative. § 45.
14. The dative of the indirect object is used with the intransitive verbs creō, faveō, noceō, pāreō, persuādeō, resistō, studeō, and others of like meaning. § 154.
15. Some verbs compounded with ad, ante, con, dē, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super, admit the dative of the indirect object. Transitive compounds may take both an accusative and a dative. § 426.
16. The dative is used with adjectives to denote the object toward which the given quality is directed. Such are, especially, those meaning near, also fit, friendly, pleasing, like, and their opposites. § 143.
17. The dative is used to denote the purpose or end for which; often with another dative denoting the person or thing affected. § 437.

Accusative Case

18. The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative and answers the question Whom? or What? § 37.
19. The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative. § 214.
20. The place to which is expressed by ad or in with the accusative. Before names of towns, small islands, domus, and rūs the preposition is omitted. §§ 263, 266.
21. Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the accusative. § 336.
22. Verbs of making, choosing, calling, showing, and the like, may take a predicate accusative along with the direct object. With the passive voice the two accusatives become nominatives. § 392.

Ablative Case

23. Cause is denoted by the ablative without a preposition. This answers the question Because of what? § 102.
24. Means is denoted by the ablative without a preposition. This answers the question By means of what? or With what? § 103.
25. Accompaniment is denoted by the ablative with cum. This answers the question With whom? § 104.
26. The ablative with cum is used to denote the manner of an action. Cum may be omitted, if an adjective is used with the ablative. This answers the question How? or In what manner? § 105.
27. With comparatives and words implying comparison the ablative is used to denote the measure of difference. § 317.
28. The ablative of a noun or pronoun with a present or perfect particle in agreement is used to express attendant circumstance. This is called the ablative absolute. § 381.

29. 1. Descriptions of physical characteristics are expressed by the ablative with a modifying adjective. § 444.

2. Descriptions involving neither numerical statements nor physical characteristics may be expressed by either the genitive or the ablative with a modifying adjective. § 445.

30. The ablative is used to denote in what respect something is true. § 398.

31. The place from which is expressed by à or ab, dē, ē or ex with the separative ablative. This answers the question Whence? Before names of towns, small islands, domus, and rūs the preposition is omitted. §§ 264, 266.

32. Words expressing separation or deprivation require an ablative to complete their meaning. This is called the ablative of separation. § 180.

33. The word expressing the person from whom an action starts, when not the subject, is put in the ablative with the preposition à or ab. This is called the ablative of the personal agent. § 181.

34. The comparative degree, if quam is omitted, is followed by the separative ablative. § 309.

35. The time when or within which anything happens is expressed by the ablative without a preposition. § 275.

36. 1. The place at or in which is expressed by the ablative with in. This answers the question Where? Before names of towns, small islands, and rūs the preposition is omitted. §§ 265, 266.

2. Names of towns and small islands, if singular and of the first or second declension, and the word domus express the place in which by the locative. § 268.

Gerund and Gerundive

37. 1. The gerund is a verbal noun and is used only in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular. The constructions of these cases are in general the same as those of other nouns. § 406. 1.

2. The gerundive is a verbal adjective and must be used instead of gerund + object, excepting in the genitive and in the ablative without a preposition. Even in these instances the gerundive construction is more usual. § 406. 2.

38. The accusative of the gerund or gerundive with ad, or the genitive with causā, is used to express purpose. § 407.
Moods and Tenses of Verbs

39. Primary tenses are followed by primary tenses, and secondary by secondary. § 358.

40. The subjunctive is used in a dependent clause to express the purpose of the action in the principal clause. § 349.

41. A substantive clause of purpose with the subjunctive is used as object with verbs of commanding, urging, asking, persuading, or advising, where in English we should usually have the infinitive. § 366.

42. Verbs of fearing are followed by a substantive clause of purpose introduced by ut (that not) or nē (that or lest). § 372.

43. Consecutive clauses of result are introduced by ut or ut nōn, and have the verb in the subjunctive. § 385.

44. Object clauses of result with ut or ut nōn are found after verbs of effecting or bringing about. § 386.

45. A relative clause with the subjunctive is often used to describe an antecedent. This is called the subjunctive of characteristic or description. § 390.

46. The conjunction cum means when, since, or although. It is followed by the subjunctive unless it means when and its clause fixes the time at which the main action took place. § 396.

47. When a direct statement becomes indirect, the principal verb is changed to the infinitive, and its subject nominative becomes subject accusative of the infinitive. § 416.

48. The accusative-with-infinitive construction in indirect statements is found after verbs of saying, telling, knowing, thinking, and perceiving. § 419.

49. A present indicative of a direct statement becomes present infinitive of the indirect, a past indicative becomes perfect infinitive, and a future indicative becomes future infinitive. § 418.

50. In an indirect question the verb is in the subjunctive and its tense is determined by the law for tense sequence. § 432.
APPENDIX III

REVIEWS ¹

I. REVIEW OF VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR THROUGH LESSON VIII

502. Give the English of the following words: ²

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nouns</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>agricola</td>
<td>dea</td>
<td>gallina</td>
<td>pugna</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ancilla</td>
<td>domina</td>
<td>iniūria</td>
<td>sagittā</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aqua</td>
<td>fābula</td>
<td>īnsula</td>
<td>silva</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>casa</td>
<td>fera</td>
<td>lūna</td>
<td>terra</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>causa</td>
<td>filia</td>
<td>nauta</td>
<td>tuba</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cēna</td>
<td>fortūna</td>
<td>pecūnia</td>
<td>via</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>corōna</td>
<td>fuga</td>
<td>puella</td>
<td>victōria</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjectives</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>alta</td>
<td>clāra</td>
<td>lāta</td>
<td>magna</td>
<td>nova</td>
<td>pulchra</td>
<td>sōla</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bona</td>
<td>grāta</td>
<td>longa</td>
<td>mala</td>
<td>parva</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verbs</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amat</td>
<td>est</td>
<td>labōrat</td>
<td>narrat</td>
<td>nūntiat</td>
<td>portat</td>
<td>sunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat</td>
<td>habitat</td>
<td>laudat</td>
<td>necat</td>
<td>parat</td>
<td>pugnat</td>
<td>vocat</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Prepositions</th>
<th>Pronouns</th>
<th>Adverbs</th>
<th>Conjunctions</th>
<th>Interrogative Particle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a or ab</td>
<td>mea</td>
<td>cūr</td>
<td>et</td>
<td>-ne</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ad</td>
<td>tua</td>
<td>deinde</td>
<td>quia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cum</td>
<td>quis</td>
<td>nōn</td>
<td>quod</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dē</td>
<td>cuius</td>
<td>ubi</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ē or ex</td>
<td>quam</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in</td>
<td>quid</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ It is suggested that each of these reviews be assigned for a written test.
² Proper nouns and proper adjectives are not repeated in the reviews. Words
used in Cæsar's "Gallic War" are in heavy type.

265
503. Give the Latin of the following words: ¹

Underline the words you do not remember. Do not look up a single word till you have gone through the entire list. Then drill on the words you have underlined.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>flight</td>
<td>tells</td>
<td>goddess</td>
<td>what</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>story</td>
<td>money</td>
<td>wild beast</td>
<td>way</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>new</td>
<td>calls</td>
<td>praises (verb)</td>
<td>bad</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lives (verb)</td>
<td>with</td>
<td>alone</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>away from</td>
<td>your</td>
<td>pleasing</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>who</td>
<td>then, in the</td>
<td>prepares</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>why</td>
<td>next place</td>
<td>are</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forest</td>
<td>daughter</td>
<td>to</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wreath</td>
<td>to whom</td>
<td>because</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deep, high</td>
<td>fortune</td>
<td>arrow</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dinner</td>
<td>famous</td>
<td>cottage</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>out from</td>
<td>labors (verb)</td>
<td>gives</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>my</td>
<td>kills</td>
<td>girl</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>where</td>
<td>not</td>
<td>good</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trumpet</td>
<td>in</td>
<td>carries</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lady, mistress</td>
<td>and</td>
<td>chicken</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>whom</td>
<td>sailor</td>
<td>victory</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>island</td>
<td>farmer</td>
<td>land</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wide</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

504. Review Questions. How many syllables has a Latin word? How are words divided into syllables? What is the ultima? the penult? the antepenult? When is a syllable short? When is a syllable long? What is the law of Latin accent? Define the subject of a sentence; the predicate; the object; the copula. What is inflection? declension? conjugation? What is the ending of the verb in the third person singular, and what in the plural? What does the form of a noun show? Name the Latin cases. What case is used for the subject? the direct object? the possessor? What relation is expressed by the dative case? Give the rule for the indirect object. How are questions answered in Latin? What is a predicate adjective? an attributive adjective? What is meant by agreement? Give the rule for the agreement of the adjective. What are the three relations expressed by the ablative? What can you say of the position of the possessive pronoun? the modifying genitive? the adjective? What is the base? What is grammatical gender? What is the rule for gender in the first declension? What are the general principles of Latin word order?

¹ The translations of words used in Cæsar are in italics.
REVIEWS

505. Fill out the following summary of the first declension:

The First or Ā-Decension

1. Ending in the nominative singular
2. Rule for gender
3. Case terminations
   a. Singular
   b. Plural
4. Irregular nouns

II. REVIEW OF LESSONS IX-XVII

506. Give the English of the following words:

Nouns of the First Declension

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>agrī cultūra</th>
<th>cōpia</th>
<th>fāma</th>
<th>galea</th>
<th>lacrima</th>
<th>patria</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cōnstantia</td>
<td>diligēntia</td>
<td>fēmina</td>
<td>inopia</td>
<td>lōrīca</td>
<td>praeda</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Nouns of the Second Declension

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ager</th>
<th>cibus</th>
<th>frūmentum</th>
<th>oppidānus</th>
<th>scūtum</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amīcus</td>
<td>cōnsilium</td>
<td>gladius</td>
<td>oppidum</td>
<td>servus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arma (plural)</td>
<td>domicilium</td>
<td>lēgātus</td>
<td>pīlum</td>
<td>studium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auxilium</td>
<td>dominus</td>
<td>liberī</td>
<td>populus</td>
<td>tēlum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bellum</td>
<td>equus</td>
<td>magister</td>
<td>praemium</td>
<td>vīcus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carrus</td>
<td>filius</td>
<td>mūrus</td>
<td>proelium</td>
<td>vir</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>castrum</td>
<td>fluvius</td>
<td>numerus</td>
<td>puer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions

| aeger, aegra, aegrum | neuter, neutra, neutrum |
| alius, alia, aliud   | noster, nostra, nostrum |
| alter, altera, alterum | nullus, -a, -um |
| armātus, -a, -um     | pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum |
| crēber, crēbra, crēbrum | sūlus, -a, -um |
| dūrus, -a, -um       | suus, -a, -um |
| finītimus, -a, -um   | tōtus, -a, -um |
| īnfirmus, -a, -um    | tuus, -a, -um |
| legiōnārius, -a, -um | ūllus, -a, -um |
| liber, libera, liberum | ūnus, -a, -um |
| mātūrus, -a, -um     | uter, utra, utrum |
| meus, -a, -um        | validus, -a, -um |
| miser, misera, miserum | vester, vestra, vestrum |
| multus, -a, -um      |                      |
### Verbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin Word</th>
<th>Demonstrative Pronoun</th>
<th>Latin Word</th>
<th>Demonstrative Pronoun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>arat</td>
<td>is, ea, id</td>
<td>curat</td>
<td>is, ea, id</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>désiderat</td>
<td>is, ea, id</td>
<td>mâturat</td>
<td>is, ea, id</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>properat</td>
<td>an</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Adverbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin Word</th>
<th>Latin Word</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>iam</td>
<td>quiō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saepe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Conjunctions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin Word</th>
<th>Latin Word</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>an</td>
<td>-que</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Preposition

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin Word</th>
<th>Latin Word</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>apud</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

507. Give the Latin of the following words:

- sword
- corselet
- man
- your (plural)
- hasten
- but
- among
- tear (noun)
- village
- strong
- long for
- and (enclitic)
- often
- want (noun)
- which (of two)
- care for
- or (in a question)
- whither
- wagon
- townsman
- wretched
- ripe

- war
- number
- my
- free (adj.)
- children
- wall
- grain
- weapon
- one
- plow (verb)
- this or that
- already
- helmet
- river
- zeal
- any
- he
- son
- slave
- your (singular)
- she
- woman

- shield (noun)
- whole
- it
- aid (noun)
- legionary
- weak
- arms
- master (of school)
- friend
- neighboring
- sick
- lieutenant
- field
- report, rumor
- abode
- boy
- his own
- alone
- prize (noun)
- master (owner)
- carefulness
- plenty
- troops

508. Review Questions. How many declensions are there? What three things must be known about a noun before it can be declined? What three cases of neuter nouns are always alike, and in what do they end in the plural? What two plural cases are always alike? When is the vocative singular not like the nominative? What is a predicate noun? With what does it agree? What is an appositive? Give the rule for the agreement of an appositive. How can we tell whether a noun in -er is declined like puer or like ager?
Decline bonus, liber, pulcher. How can we tell whether an adjective in -er is declined like liber or like pulcher? Why must we say nauta bonus and not nauta bona? Name the Latin possessive pronouns. How are they declined? With what does the possessive pronoun agree? When do we use tuus and when vester? Why is suus called a reflexive possessive? What is the non-reflexive possessive of the third person? When are possessives omitted? What four uses of the ablative case are covered by the relations expressed in English by with? Give an illustration in Latin of the ablative of manner; of the ablative of cause; of the ablative of means; of the ablative of accompaniment. What ablative regularly has cum? What ablative sometimes has cum? What uses of the ablative never have cum? Name the nine pronominal adjectives, with their meanings. Decline alius, nūllus. Decline is. What does mean as a demonstrative adjective or pronoun? What other important use has it?

509. Fill out the following summary of the second declension:

The Second or O-Declension

1. Endings in the nominative
2. Rule for gender
3. Case terminations of nouns
   a. Singular in -us:
   b. Plural
   a. The vocative singular of nouns in -us
4. Case terminations of nouns
   a. Singular in -um:
   b. Plural
5. Peculiarities of nouns in -er and -ir
6. Peculiarities of nouns in -ius and -ium

III. REVIEW OF LESSONS XVIII–XXVI

510. Give the English of the following words:

**Nouns of the First Declension**

- disciplīna
- förma
- poena
- rēgina
- trīstitia
- regula
- potestas
- superbia

**Nouns of the Second Declension**

- lūdus
- ornāmentum
- sacrum
- socius
- verbum

**Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions**

- amīcus
- grātus
- interfectus
- molestus
- septem
- antiquus
- idōneus
- irātus
- perpetuus
- superbus
- finītīmus
- inimīcus
- laetus
- proximus
511. Give the Latin of the following words. In the case of verbs always give the first form and the present infinitive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English Word</th>
<th>Latin Word</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ancient</td>
<td>sum, esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come</td>
<td>non solum . . . sed etiam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>resist</td>
<td>moveo, -ere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see</td>
<td>moveo, -ere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be</td>
<td>moveo, -ere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fly</td>
<td>moveo, -ere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>moveo, -ere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proud</td>
<td>moveo, -ere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>word</td>
<td>moveo, -ere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sadness</td>
<td>moveo, -ere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>find</td>
<td>moveo, -ere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rule (verb)</td>
<td>moveo, -ere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be eager</td>
<td>moveo, -ere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>for</td>
<td>moveo, -ere</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

512. Review Questions. What is conjugation? Name two important differences between conjugation in Latin and in English. What is tense?
What is mood? What are the Latin moods? When do we use the indicative mood? Name the six tenses of the indicative. What are personal endings? Name those you have had. Inflect sum in the three tenses you have learned. How many regular conjugations are there? How are they distinguished? How is the present stem found? What tenses are formed from the present stem? What is the tense sign of the imperfect? What is the meaning of the imperfect? What is the tense sign of the future in the first two conjugations? in the last two? Before what letters is a final long vowel of the stem shortened? What are the three possible translations of a present, as of pugnō? Inflect arō, sedeō, mittō, faciō, and veniō, in the present, imperfect, and future active. What forms of -iō verbs of the third conjugation are like audiō? What like regō? Give the rule for the dative with adjectives. Name the special intransitive verbs that govern the dative. What does the imperative mood express? How is the present active imperative formed in the singular? in the plural? What three verbs have a shortened present active imperative? Give the present active imperative of portō, dēleō, agō, faciō, mūniō.

IV. REVIEW OF LESSONS XXVII–XXXVI

513. Give the English of the following words:

Nouns of the First Declension
āla cūra mora porta prōvincia vīta

Nouns of the Second Declension
animus bracchium locus nāvigium periculum vīnum
aurum deus mōnstrum ōrāculum ventus

Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions
adversus commōtus dubius plēnus
attentus dēfessus maximus saevus
cārus dexter perfidus sinister

Adverbs
anteā diū ita subītō
CELERITER frūstrā longē tamen
dēnique graviter semper tum

Conjunctions
autem sī ubi
## APPENDIX III

### Prepositions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>dē</th>
<th>per</th>
<th>prō</th>
<th>sine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>adpropinquō</td>
<td>recūsō</td>
<td>superō</td>
<td>CONTJ. I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nāvīgō</td>
<td>reportō</td>
<td>temptō</td>
<td>CONTJ. II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>occupō</td>
<td>servō</td>
<td>vāstō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>postulō</td>
<td>stō</td>
<td>vulnerō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Verbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONJ. I</th>
<th></th>
<th>CONTJ. III</th>
<th></th>
<th>IRREGULAR VERB</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sine</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adpropinquō</td>
<td>recūsō</td>
<td>superō</td>
<td>contineō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nāvīgō</td>
<td>reportō</td>
<td>temptō</td>
<td>egeō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>occupō</td>
<td>servō</td>
<td>vāstō</td>
<td>prohibēō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>postulō</td>
<td>stō</td>
<td>vulnerō</td>
<td>respondeō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### CONJ. III

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>discēdō</th>
<th>gerō</th>
<th>interficiō</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

### 514. Translate the following words. Give the genitive and the gender of the nouns and the principal parts of the verbs.

- be away
- wind
- through
- if
- Savage
- wound (verb)
- wine
- delay
- faithless
- right
- seize
- quickly
- before, in
- behalf of
- battle
- down from or concerning

### 515. Give the principal parts and meaning of the following verbs:

- sum
- dō
- teneō
- iubeō
- agō
- mittō
- müniō

- moveō
- crēdō
- rapiō
- reperiō
- dēleō
- resistō
- audiō

- moneō
- capiō
- doceō
- faveō
- noceō
- dicō

- pāreō
- dūcō
- faciō
- persuaēō
- sedeō
- studeō
- fugiō

- veniō
- iaciō
- videō
- absum
- egeō
- gerō
- sto
516. Review Questions. What are the personal endings in the passive voice? What is the letter -r sometimes called? What are the distinguishing vowels of the four conjugations? What forms constitute the principal parts? What are the three different conjugation stems? How may they be found? What are the tenses of the indicative? of the infinitive? What tense of the imperative have you learned? What forms are built on the present stem? on the perfect stem? on the participial stem? What are the endings of the perfect active indicative? What is the tense sign of the pluperfect active? of the future perfect active? How is the present active infinitive formed? the present passive infinitive? How is the present active imperative formed? the present passive imperative? How is the perfect active infinitive formed? the perfect passive infinitive? How is the future active infinitive formed? What is a participle? How are participles in -us declined? Give the rule for the agreement of the participle. How are the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect passive indicative formed? Conjugate the verb sum in all moods and tenses as far as you have learned it (§ 494). What is meant by the separative ablative? How is the place from which expressed in Latin? Give the rule for the ablative of separation; for the ablative of the personal agent. How can we distinguish between the ablative of means and the ablative of the personal agent? What is the perfect definite? the perfect indefinite? What is the difference in meaning between the perfect indefinite and the imperfect? What two cases in Latin may be governed by a preposition? Name the prepositions that govern the ablative. What does the preposition in mean when it governs the ablative? the accusative? What are the three interrogatives used to introduce yes-and-no questions? Explain the force of each. What words are sometimes used for yes and no? What are the different meanings and uses of ubi?

V. REVIEW OF LESSONS XXXVII-XLIV

517. Give the English of the following words:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FIRST DECLENSION</th>
<th>NOUNS</th>
<th>SECOND DECLENSION</th>
<th>NOUNS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ripa</td>
<td>barbari</td>
<td>castellum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>animal</td>
<td>calamitás</td>
<td>cliëns</td>
<td>fōns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arbor</td>
<td>calcar</td>
<td>collis</td>
<td>frāter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avis</td>
<td>caput</td>
<td>consul</td>
<td>homō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caedēs</td>
<td>civis</td>
<td>dens</td>
<td>insignē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>flūmen</td>
<td>hostis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>iter</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
APPENDIX III

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>iūdex</th>
<th>māter</th>
<th>opus</th>
<th>pēs</th>
<th>sanguis</th>
<th>urbs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>labor</td>
<td>mēnsis</td>
<td>ōrātor</td>
<td>pōns</td>
<td>soror</td>
<td>victor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lapis</td>
<td>mīles</td>
<td>ōrdō</td>
<td>princeps</td>
<td>tempus</td>
<td>virtūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>legiō</td>
<td>mōns</td>
<td>pater</td>
<td>rēx</td>
<td>terror</td>
<td>vis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mare</td>
<td>nāvis</td>
<td>pedes</td>
<td>salūs</td>
<td>turris</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions

| barbarus | dexter | sinister | summus |

Prepositions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>in with the abl.</th>
<th>in with the acc.</th>
<th>trāns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cotidiēc</td>
<td>numquam</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Conjunctions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>nec, neque</th>
<th>nec . . . nec, or neque . . . neque</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Verbs

| cessō           | oppugnō              | accipiō  | petō    | vincō   |
|                 | confirmō             | incipiō  | pōnō    | vivō    |

518. Translate the following words. Give the genitive and the gender of the nouns and the principal parts of the verbs:

forbid
rank, row
brother
force
across
savages
horseman
never
mountain
manliness,
courage
leader
put, place
time
savage, barbarous
sister
seek
captive
hindrance,
baggage

man-of-war
judge
defeat, disaster
fire
tree
foot soldier
receive
general
highest
fountain
orator
neither . . . nor
and not
left

conquer
consul
mother
retainer
citizen
assail,
storm
begin
march
decoration
bridge
bird
cease
man
river
work (noun)
and
ship
bank
519. Review Questions. Give the conjugation of *possum*. What is an infinitive? What three uses has the Latin infinitive that are like the English? What is the case of the subject of the infinitive? What is meant by a complementary infinitive? In the sentence *The bad boy cannot be happy*, what is the case of *happy*? Give the rule. Decline *quī*. Give the rule for the agreement of the relative. What are the two uses of the interrogative? Decline *quis*. What is the base of a noun? How is the stem formed from the base? Are the stem and the base ever the same? How many declensions of nouns are there? Name them. What are the two chief divisions of the third declension? How are the consonant stems classified? Explain the formation of *lapis* from the stem *lapid-*., *miles* from *mīlit-*, *rēx* from *rēg-*. What nouns have *i*-stems? What peculiarities of form do *i*-stems have, — masc., fem., and neut.? Name the five nouns that have -ī and -ē in the abl. Decline *turris*. Give the rules for gender in the third declension. Decline *miles*, *lapis*, *rēx*, *virtūs*, *cōnsul*, *lēgīō*, *hōmō*, *pater*, *fūmēn*, *opus*, *tempus*, *caput*, *caedēs*, *urbs*, *hostīs*, *mare*, *animal*, *vīs*, *iter*.

520. Fill out the following scheme:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gender Endings</th>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>The Third Declension</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>I. Consonant Stems</td>
<td>a. Masc. and fem.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>II. <em>i</em>-Stems</td>
<td>a. Masc. and fem.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| | | | | IRREGULAR Nouns |}

VI. REVIEW OF LESSONS XLV–LII

521. Give the English of the following words:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nouns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>FIRST DECLENSION</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amīcitia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hōra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>littera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## APPENDIX III

### THIRD DECLENSION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>singular</th>
<th>plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aestas</td>
<td>nox</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>corpus</td>
<td>pars</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hiems</td>
<td>pax</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>libertas</td>
<td>rūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lūx,</td>
<td>sōl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prīma lūx</td>
<td>vōx</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōmen</td>
<td>vulnus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### FOURTH DECLENSION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>singular</th>
<th>plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>adventus</td>
<td>impetus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cornū</td>
<td>lacus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>domus</td>
<td>manus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>equitātus</td>
<td>metus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exercitus</td>
<td>portus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fluctus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### FIFTH DECLENSION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>singular</th>
<th>plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aciēs</td>
<td>rēs, spēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diēs</td>
<td>rēs gestae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fidēs, in fidem venīre</td>
<td>rēs adversae, rēs secundae, rēs pública</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### INDECLINABLE NOUN

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nihil</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### ADJECTIVES

#### FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>singular</th>
<th>plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dēnus</td>
<td>prīstinus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>invīsus</td>
<td>pūblicus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mirus</td>
<td>secundus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pauči</td>
<td>tantus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prūmus</td>
<td>vērus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### THIRD DECLENSION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>singular</th>
<th>plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ācer, ācris, ācre</td>
<td>gravis, grave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brevis, breve</td>
<td>incolumis, incolume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>difficilis, difficile</td>
<td>omnis, omne</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facilis, facile</td>
<td>pār, pār</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fortis, forte</td>
<td>vēlōx, vēlōx</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PRONOUNS

#### PERSONAL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>singular</th>
<th>plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ego</td>
<td>hic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōs</td>
<td>īdem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suī</td>
<td>ille</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tū</td>
<td>iste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vōs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### DEMONSTRATIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>singular</th>
<th>plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>alīquis, alīquī</td>
<td>quīdam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quis, quī</td>
<td>quisquam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quisque</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### ADVERBS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>singular</th>
<th>plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nē... quidem</td>
<td>paene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ōlim</td>
<td>quoque</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>satis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vērō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>itaque</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nisi</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### CONJUNCTIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>singular</th>
<th>plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ante</td>
<td>post</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prōpter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### VERBS

#### CONJ. I

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>singular</th>
<th>plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>conlocō</td>
<td>dēbeō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>convocō</td>
<td>exercēō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cremō</td>
<td>maneō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēmōnstrō</td>
<td>placeō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mandō</td>
<td>sustineō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### CONJ. II

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>singular</th>
<th>plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>committē,</td>
<td>committere proelium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēcidō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ēripīō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sūmō, sūmere supplicium dē</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trādūcō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vertō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
522. Translate the following words. Give the genitive and the gender of the nouns and the principal parts of the verbs.

if not, unless
on account of
unharmened
public
commonwealth
leap down, dismount
lead across
remain
call together
friendship
footprint, trace
each
fear (noun)
hope
therefore
behind, after
so great
equal
in truth, indeed
that (yonder)
a certain
fall down
owe, ought
measure, mode
eye
name
wave, billow
thing, matter
exploits
republic
prosperity
adversity
former, old-time
all, every
any one (at all)
this (of mine)
heavy, serious
hateful, detested
true
burn
snatch from
letter
punishment
inflict punishment on
suffer punishment
liberty
sun
sustain
take up, assume
hour
reign, realm
messenger
part, direction
body
harbor
faith, protection
of himself
also, too
sufficiently
burn
that (of yours)
before
you (plur.)
light
daybreak
winter
attack
line of battle
army
drill, train
join battle
house, home
midday
wonderful
brave
almost
the same
some, any
if any one
self, very
not even
easy
dense
point out, ex-
plain
difficult
first
arrange, station
please
year
peace
back
turn the back,
retreat
night
hand, force
lake
day
commit, intrust
a few only
sharp, eager
we
turn
you (sing.)
I
signal
summer
cavalry
wound
horn, wing
country
second, favor-
able
short
voice
formerly, once
arrival
come under the
protection of
swift
nothing

523. Review Questions. By what declensions are Latin adjectives declined? What can you say about the stem of adjectives of the third declension? Into what classes are these adjectives divided? How can you tell to which of the classes an adjective belongs? Decline ácer, omnis, pár. What are the nominative endings and genders of nouns of the fourth
or u-declension? What nouns are feminine by exception? Decline adven-
tus, lacus, cornū, domus. Give the rules for the ordinary expression of
the place to which, the place from which, the place in which. What
special rules apply to names of towns, small islands, and rūs? What
is the locative case? What words have a locative case? What is the
form of the locative case? Translate Galba lives at home, Galba lives at
Rome, Galba lives at Pompeii. What is the rule for gender in the fifth
or ē-declension? Decline diēs, rēs. When is the long ē shortened? What
can you say about the plural of the fifth declension? Decline tuba, servus,
pīlum, ager, puer, mīles, cōnsul, flūmen, caedēs, animal. How is the time
when expressed? Name the classes of pronouns and define each class.
Decline ego, tū, is. What are the reflexives of the first and second per-
sons? What is the reflexive of the third person? Decline it. Translate
I see myself, he sees himself, he sees him. Decline ipse. How is ipse
used? Decline idem. Decline hic, iste, ille. Explain the use of these
words. Name and translate the commoner indefinite pronouns. Decline
aliquis, quisquam, quīdam, quisque.

VII. REVIEW OF LESSONS LIII–LX

524. Give the English of the following words:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FIRST DECLENSION</th>
<th>SECOND DECLENSION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aquila</td>
<td>fossa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>THIRD DECLENSION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>agmen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>celeritās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>civitās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clāmōr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cohōrs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>difficūltās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>explōrātor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FOURTH DECLENSION</th>
<th>FIFTH DECLENSION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aditus</td>
<td>passus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>commeātus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Adjectives

#### FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aequus</td>
<td>maximus</td>
<td>plŭrimus</td>
<td>singulī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>binī</td>
<td>medius</td>
<td>posterus</td>
<td>superus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ducentī</td>
<td>minimus</td>
<td>prīmus</td>
<td>tardus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duo</td>
<td>opportūnus</td>
<td>reliquus</td>
<td>tertiī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exterus</td>
<td>optimus</td>
<td>secundus</td>
<td>unus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### THIRD DECLENSION

| Singular | Adjective 
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aequus</td>
<td>maximus, plŭrimus, singulī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>binī</td>
<td>medius, posterus, superus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ducentī</td>
<td>minimus, prīmus, tardus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duo</td>
<td>opportūnus, reliquus, tertiī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exterus</td>
<td>optimus, secundus, unus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### THIRD DECLENSION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>alacer</td>
<td>alacris, alacre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audāx</td>
<td>audāx</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>celer</td>
<td>celeris, celere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>citerior</td>
<td>citerius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>difficilis</td>
<td>difficile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dissimilis</td>
<td>dissimile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facilis</td>
<td>facile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gracilis</td>
<td>gracile</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

### Adverbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adverb</th>
<th>Adverb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ācriter</td>
<td>magis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audācter</td>
<td>magnopere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bene</td>
<td>magnimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facile</td>
<td>melius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ferē</td>
<td>minimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fortiter</td>
<td>multum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Conjunctions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conjunction</th>
<th>Preposition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>atque, ac</td>
<td>quam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aut</td>
<td>inter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aut ... aut</td>
<td>ob</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>et ... et</td>
<td>trans</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Verbs

#### CONJ. I

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cōnor</td>
<td>moror</td>
<td>obtineō</td>
<td>valeō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortor</td>
<td>vexō</td>
<td>perterreō</td>
<td>revertor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### CONJ. II

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cōnor</td>
<td>moror</td>
<td>obtineō</td>
<td>valeō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortor</td>
<td>vexō</td>
<td>perterreō</td>
<td>revertor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### CONJ. III

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>abdō</td>
<td>dēdō</td>
<td>patior</td>
<td>revertor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cadō</td>
<td>dēfendō</td>
<td>premō</td>
<td>sequor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cognōscō</td>
<td>īgrēdior</td>
<td>proficiscor</td>
<td>statuō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnsequor</td>
<td>īncendō</td>
<td>prōgredior</td>
<td>subsequor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contendō</td>
<td>īncolō</td>
<td>quaelevō</td>
<td>suscipiō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cupiō</td>
<td>īnsequor</td>
<td>recipiō</td>
<td>trādō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>currō</td>
<td>occīdō</td>
<td>relinquō</td>
<td>trahō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### CONJ. IV

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>orior</td>
<td>pervenīō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### APPENDIX III

525. Translate the following words. Give the genitive and the gender of the nouns and the principal parts of the verbs:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Genitive</th>
<th>Gender</th>
<th>Principal Parts</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>on account of</td>
<td>width</td>
<td>feminine</td>
<td>move forward, advance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nearly</td>
<td>scout</td>
<td>feminine</td>
<td>be strong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keenly, sharply</td>
<td>cohort</td>
<td>masculine</td>
<td>possess, hold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thousand</td>
<td>tribe, nation</td>
<td>neuter</td>
<td>give over, surrender</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>two</td>
<td>business</td>
<td>masculine</td>
<td>surrender</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opportune</td>
<td>by a little</td>
<td>neuter</td>
<td>give over, surrender</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>remaining</td>
<td>somewhat</td>
<td>feminine</td>
<td>surrender</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>above (adj.)</td>
<td>crime</td>
<td>masculine</td>
<td>with hard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>next</td>
<td>difficult</td>
<td>neuter</td>
<td>fall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grain supply</td>
<td>equal</td>
<td>neuter</td>
<td>set fire to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pace</td>
<td>move forward,</td>
<td>feminine</td>
<td>defend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shout (noun)</td>
<td>advance</td>
<td>feminine</td>
<td>carry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>from all sides</td>
<td>multitude</td>
<td>masculine</td>
<td>possess, hold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>against</td>
<td>woman</td>
<td>feminine</td>
<td>delay (verb)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>around</td>
<td>desire (verb)</td>
<td>neuter</td>
<td>nearest (adv.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>three</td>
<td>give over, surrender</td>
<td>feminine</td>
<td>nearer (adv.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>further</td>
<td>kill</td>
<td>masculine</td>
<td>better (adv.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>line of march</td>
<td>overtake</td>
<td>masculine</td>
<td>well</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rumor</td>
<td>hasten, strive</td>
<td>masculine</td>
<td>very much</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>region</td>
<td>hide</td>
<td>feminine</td>
<td>much</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fortification</td>
<td>one</td>
<td>masculine</td>
<td>unlike</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eagle</td>
<td>first</td>
<td>feminine</td>
<td>like (adj.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>almost</td>
<td>second, favorable</td>
<td>neuter</td>
<td>slow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boldly</td>
<td>two hundred</td>
<td>feminine</td>
<td>very greatly, exceedingly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bravely</td>
<td>former</td>
<td>masculine</td>
<td>building</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>across</td>
<td>inner</td>
<td>neuter</td>
<td>mind (noun)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>between, among</td>
<td>middle</td>
<td>feminine</td>
<td>easily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hither (adj.)</td>
<td>low</td>
<td>masculine</td>
<td>easy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>so</td>
<td>outward</td>
<td>neuter</td>
<td>recent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>less</td>
<td>three by three</td>
<td>feminine</td>
<td>huge, great</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>more</td>
<td>provisions</td>
<td>masculine</td>
<td>bold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>most</td>
<td>speed</td>
<td>neuter</td>
<td>immediately</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>worst</td>
<td>ditch</td>
<td>feminine</td>
<td>as soon as</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>difficulty</td>
<td>wherefore or</td>
<td>neuter</td>
<td>for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hostage</td>
<td>therefore</td>
<td>feminine</td>
<td>than</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>death</td>
<td>for this reason</td>
<td>masculine</td>
<td>best (adj.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>command, power</td>
<td>fear (noun)</td>
<td>feminine</td>
<td>greatest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>captive</td>
<td>return</td>
<td>masculine</td>
<td>follow close</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or</td>
<td>inquire</td>
<td>neuter</td>
<td>encourage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and</td>
<td>set out</td>
<td>feminine</td>
<td>annoy, ravage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arrive</td>
<td>move out, disembark</td>
<td>masculine</td>
<td>hide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attempt, try</td>
<td>length</td>
<td>neuter</td>
<td>follow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run</td>
<td>frantic, decide</td>
<td>feminine</td>
<td>pursue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>both . . . and</td>
<td>rampart</td>
<td>masculine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
526. Review Questions. What is meant by comparison? In what two ways may adjectives be compared? Compare clārus, brevis, vēloāx, and explain the formation of the comparative and the superlative. What are the adverbs used in comparison? Compare brevis by adverbs. Decline the comparative of vēloāx. How are adjectives in -er compared? Compare ācer, pulcher, liber. What are possible translations for the comparative and superlative? Name the six adjectives that form the superlative in -limus. Translate in two ways Nothing is brighter than the sun. Give the rule for the ablative with comparatives. Compare bonus, magnus, malus, multus, parvus, exterus, īnerus, posterus, superus. Decline plūs. Compare citerior, interior, proprior, ulterior. Translate That route to Italy is much shorter. Give the rule for the expression of measure of difference. Name five words that are especially common in this construction. How are adverbs usually formed from adjectives of the first and second declensions? from adjectives of the third declension? Compare the adverbs cārē, liberē, fortiter, audāctēr. What cases of adjectives are sometimes used as adverbs? What are the adverbs from facilis? multus? prīmus? plūrimus? bonus? magnus? parvus? Compare prope, saepe, maguopere. How are numerals classified? Give the first twenty cardinals. Decline ānus, duo, trēs, mille. How are the hundreds declined? What is meant by the partitive genitive? Give the rule for the partitive genitive. What sort of words are commonly used with this construction? What construction is used with quidam and cardinal numbers excepting mille? Give the first twenty ordinals. How are they declined? How are the distributives declined? Give the rule for the expression of duration of time and extent of space. What is the difference between the ablative of time and the accusative of time? What is a deponent verb? Give the synopsis of one. What form always has a passive meaning? Conjugate amō, moneō, regō, capiō, audīō, in the active and passive.

VIII. REVIEW OF LESSONS LXI–LXIX


528. Review Questions. Name the tenses of the subjunctive. What time is denoted by these tenses? What are the mood signs of the present subjunctive? How may the imperfect subjunctive be formed? How do the perfect subjunctive and the future perfect indicative active differ in form? How is the pluperfect subjunctive active formed? Inflect the subjunctive active and passive of cūrō, dēleō, vincō, rapiō, mūniō. Inflect the
subjective tenses of sum; of possum. What are the tenses of the participles in the active? What in the passive? Give the active and passive participles of amō, moneō, regō, capiō, audiō. Decline regēns. What participles do deponent verbs have? What is the difference in meaning between the perfect participle of a deponent verb and of one not deponent? Give the participles of vereor. How should participles usually be translated? Conjugate volō, nōlo, mālo, fiō.

What is the difference between the indicative and subjunctive in their fundamental ideas? How is purpose usually expressed in English? How is it expressed in Latin? By what words is a Latin purpose clause introduced? When should quō be used? What is meant by sequence of tenses? Name the primary tenses of the indicative and of the subjunctive; the secondary tenses. What Latin verbs are regularly followed by substantive clauses of purpose? What construction follows iubeō? What construction follows verbs of fearing? How is consequence or result expressed in Latin? How is a result clause introduced? What words are often found in the principal clause foreshadowing the coming of a result clause? How may negative purpose be distinguished from negative result? What is meant by the subjunctive of characteristic or description? How are such clauses introduced? Explain the ablative absolute. Why is the ablative absolute of such frequent occurrence in Latin? Explain the predicate accusative. After what verbs are two accusatives commonly found? What do these accusatives become when the verb is passive?
## SPECIAL VOCABULARIES

The words in heavy type are used in Caesar's "Gallic War."

### LESSON IV, § 39

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nouns</th>
<th>Verbs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>dea</em>, goddess (deity)</td>
<td><em>est</em>, he (she, it) <em>is</em>; <em>sunt</em>, they <em>are</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Déa</em>’na, <em>Diana</em></td>
<td><em>necat</em>, he (she, it) <em>kills</em>, is killing, does kill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>fera</em>, a wild beast (fierce)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Látô</em>’na, <em>Latona</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>sagit’ta</em>, arrow</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### LESSON V, § 47

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nouns</th>
<th>Verbs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>corö’na</em>, wreath, garland, crown</td>
<td><em>dat</em>, he (she, it) <em>gives</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>fā’bula</em>, story (fable)</td>
<td><em>narrat</em>, he (she, it) <em>tells</em> (narrate)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>pecū’nia</em>, money (pecuniary)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>pugna</em>, battle (pugnacious)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>victö’ria</em>, victory</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### LESSON VI, § 56

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjectives</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>bona</em>, good</td>
<td><em>parva</em>, small, little</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>grāta</em>, pleasing</td>
<td><em>pulchra</em>, beautiful, pretty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>magna</em>, large, great</td>
<td><em>sōla</em>, alone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>mala</em>, bad, wicked</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

1 A *conjunction* is a word which connects words, parts of sentences, or sentences.
Nouns
ancîr'la, maidservant
Iûliâ, Julia

Adverbs
cur, why; nûn, not

-ne, the question sign, an enclitic (§ 16) added to the first word, which, in a question, is usually the verb, as amat, he loves, but amat'ne? does he love? est, he is; estne? is he? Of course -ne is not used when the sentence contains quis, cur, or some other interrogative word.

LESSON VII, § 62
Nouns
casa, -ae, f., cottage
cêna, -ae, f., dinner
galli'na, -ae, f., hen, chicken
în'sula, -ae, f., island (pen-insula)

Adverbs
dein'de, then, in the next place
ubi, where

Preposition
ad, to, with acc. to express motion toward

Verbs
ha'bitat, he (she, it) lives, is living, does live (inhabit)
laudat, he (she, it) praises, is praising, does praise (laud)
parat, he (she, it) prepares, is preparing, does prepare
vocat, he (she, it) calls, is calling, does call; invites, is inviting, does invite (vocation)

Pronoun
quem, interrog. pronoun, acc. sing., whom?

LESSON VIII, § 69
Nouns
Italiâ, -ae, f., Italy
Sicilia, -ae, f., Sicily
tuba, -ae, f., trumpet (tube)
via, -ae, f., way, road, street (viaduct)

Adjectives
alta, high, deep (altitude)
clâra, clear, bright; famous
lata, wide (latitude)
longa, long (longitude)
nova, new (novelty)

1 An adverb is a word used to modify a verb, an adjective, or another adverb; as, She sings sweetly; she is very talented; she began to sing very early.
### LESSON IX, §77

**Nouns**

- *bellum, -i, n.*, *war* (re-bel)
- *cōnstantia, -ae, f.*, *firmness*, *constancy, steadiness*
- *dominus, -i, m.*, *master, lord* (dominate)
- *equus, -i, m.*, *horse* (equine)
- *frūmentum, -i, n.*, *grain*
- *lēgātus, -i, m.*, *lieutenant, ambassador* (legate)
- *Mārcus, -i, m.*, *Marcus, Mark*
- *mūrus, -i, m.*, *wall* (mural)
- *oppidānus, -i, m.*, *townsman*
- *oppidum, -i, n.*, *town*
- *pīlum, -i, n.*, *spear* (pile driver)
- *servus, -i, m.*, *slave, servant*
- *Sextus, -i, m.*, *Sextus*

**Verbs**

- *cūrat, he* *(she, it) cares for*, with acc.
- *properat, he* *(she, it) hastens*

### LESSON X, §82

**Nouns**

- *amicus, -i, m.*, *friend* (amicable)
- *Germania, -ae, f.*, *Germany*
- *patria, -ae, f.*, *fatherland*
- *populus, -i, m.*, *people*
- *Rhēnus, -i, m.*, *the Rhine*
- *vicus, -i, m.*, *village*

### LESSON XI, §86

**Nouns**

- *arma, armōrum, n., plur.*, *arms*, especially defensive weapons
- *fāma, -ae, f.*, *rumor; reputation, fame*
- *galea, -ae, f.*, *helmet*
- *praedā, -ae, f.*, *booty, spoils* (predatory)
- *tēlum, -i, n.*, *weapon of offense, spear*

**Adjectives**

- *dūrus, -a, -um*, *hard, rough; unfeeling, cruel; severe, toilsome* (durable)
- *Rōmānus, -a, -um*, *Roman*. As a noun, *Rōmānus, -i, m.*, *a Roman*

### LESSON XII, §90

**Nouns**

- *filius, filī, m.*, *son* (filial)
- *fluvius, fluvī, m.*, *river* (fluent)
- *gladius, gladi, m.*, *sword* (gladiator)
- *praesiādium, praesiādī, n.*, *garrison, guard, protection*
- *proelium, proelī, n.*, *battle*

**Adjectives**

- *finitimus, -a, -um*, *bordering upon, neighboring, near to*. As a noun, *finitimī, -orum, m.*, *plur.*, *neighbors*

**Germanus, -a, -um*, *German*. As a noun, *Germanus, -i, m.*, *a German*

**Adverb**

- *saepe, often*
LESSON XIII, § 95

Nouns
ager, agrí, m., field (acre)
cōpia, -ae, f., plenty, abundance (copious); plur., troops, forces
Cornēlius, Cornē'li, m., Cornelius
lōri'ca, -ae, f., coat of mail, corselet
praemium, praemī, n., reward, prize (premium)
puer, puerī, m., boy (puerile)
Rōma, -ae, f., Rome
scūtum, -i, n., shield (escutcheon)
vir, virī, m., man, hero (virile)

Adjectives
legiōnārius, -a, -um,1 legionary, belonging to the legion. As a noun, legiōnārii, -ōrum, m., plur., legionary soldiers
pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum, pretty, beautiful

Preposition
apud, among, with acc.

Conjunction
sed, but.

LESSON XIV, § 99

Nouns
auxilium, auxi'li, n., help, aid (auxiliary)
castrum, -i, n., fort (castle); plur., camp (lit. forts)
cibus, -i, m., food
cōnsilium, cōnsi'li, n., plan (counsel)
diligentia, -ae, f., diligence, industry
magister, magistri, m., master, teacher2

Adjectives
miser, misera, miserum, wretched, unfortunate (miser)
aeger, aegra, aegrum, sick
creber, crēbra, crēbrum, frequent

LESSON XV, § 107

Nouns
carrus, -i, m., cart, wagon
inopia, -ae, f., want, lack; the opposite of cōpia
studium, studi, n., zeal, eagerness (study)

Adjectives
armātus, -a, -um, armed
infirmus, -a, -um, weak, feeble (infirm)
validus, -a, -um, strong, sturdy

1 The genitive singular masculine of adjectives in -ius ends in -ii and the vocative in -ie; not in -i, as in nouns.
2 Observe that dominus, as distinguished from magister, means master in the sense of owner.
LESSON XVII, § 117

Nouns
agri cultura, -ae, f., agriculture
 domicilium, domicil'i, n., abode, dwelling place (domicile)
fémina, -ae, f., woman (female)

Adjective
mätūrus, -a, -um, ripe, mature

Verbs
arat, he (she, it) plows (arable)
désiderat, he (she, it) misses, longs for (desire), with acc.

LESSON XVIII, § 124

Nouns
lūdus, -i, m., school
 socius, soci, m., companion, ally (social)

Adjectives
īrātus, -a, -um, angry, furious (irate)
laetus, -a, -um, happy, glad

Adverbs
hodie, to-day

LESSON XX, § 136

Nouns
förma, -ae, f., form, beauty
 poena, -ae, f., punishment, penalty
 potentia, -ae, f., power (potent)

Adjectives
septem, indeclinable, seven
superbus, -a, -um, proud, haughty (superb)

Adverbs
nunc, now, the present moment
nūper, lately, recently, of the immediate past

Conjunctions
nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam, not only . . . but also
LESSON XXI, § 140

Nouns

sacrum, -i, n., sacrifice, offering, rite
verbūm, -ī, n., word (verb)

Verbs

sedeō, -ere, sit (sediment)
volo, -äre, fly (volatile)

ego, personal pronoun, I (egotism). Always emphatic in the nominative.

LESSON XXII, § 146

Nouns

disciplina, -ae, f., training, culture, discipline
önāmentum, -ī, n., ornament, jewel

Verb

doceō, -ere, teach (doctrine)

Adjective

maximē, most of all, especially

antiquus, -qua, -quum, old, ancient (antique)

LESSON XXVII, § 168

Nouns

āla, -ae, f., wing
deus, -ī, m., god (deity)
mōnstrum, -ī, n., omen, prodigy; monster
önāculum, -ī, n., oracle

Verb

vastō, -äre, lay waste, devastate

Adjectives

commōtus, -ā, -um, moved, excited
maximus, -a, -um, greatest (maximum)
saevus, -a, -um, fierce, savage

Adverbs

ita, thus, in this way, as follows

LESSON XXVIII, § 171

Verbs

respondeō, -ere, respond, reply
servō, -äre, save, preserve

Adjective

cārus, -a, -um, dear (cherish)

Conjunction

autem, but, moreover, now. Usually stands second, never first

Noun

vīta, -ae, f., life (vital)

For the declension of deus, see § 468
LESSON XXIX, § 176

**Verb**

superō, -āre, conquer, overcome (in-superable)

cūra, -ae, f., care, trouble

locus, -ī, m., place, spot (location).

Locus is neuter in the plural and is declined loca, -ōrum, etc.

periculum, -ī, n., danger, peril

**Adverbs**

semper, always

tamen, yet, nevertheless

**Prepositions**

dē, with abl., down from; concerning

per, with acc., through

**Conjunction**

si, if

LESSON XXX, § 182

**Verbs**

absum, abesse, irreg., be away, be absent, be distant, with separative abl.

adpropinquo, -āre, draw near, approach (propinquity), with dative

contineō, -ēre, hold together, hem in, keep (contain)

**Adjectives**

defessus, -a, -um, weary, worn out

**Adverbs**

longē, far, by far, far away

**Preposition**

sine, with abl., without

1 This verb governs the dative because the idea of nearness to is stronger than that of motion to. If the latter idea were the stronger, the word would be used with ad and the accusative.
LESSON XXXII, § 193

**Nouns**

animus, -i, m., mind, heart; spirit, feeling (animate)

brachium, bracchi, n., forearm, arm

porta, -ae, f., gate (portal)

**Adjectives**

adversus, -a, -um, opposite; adverse, contrary

plenus, -a, -um, full (plenty)

**Preposition**

prō, with abl., before; in behalf of;

instead of

**Adverb**

dīū, for a long time, long

LESSON XXXIV, § 200

**Adverbs**

celeriter, quickly (celerity)

denique, finally

**Verb**

reportō, -āre, -āvī, bring back, restore; win, gain (report)

LESSON XXXVI, § 211

**Nouns**

dexter, dextra, dextrum, right (dextrous)

sinister, sinistra, sinistrum, left

**Adjectives**

frūstrā, adv., in vain (frustrate)

**Verb**

gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus, bear; carry on; wear; bellum gerere, to wage war

occupō, occupāre, occupāvī, occupātus, seize, take possession of (occupy)

postulō, postulāre, postulāvī, postulātus, demand (ex-postulate)

recūsō, recūsāre, recūsāvī, recūsātus, refuse

stō, stāre, stetī, status, stand

temptō, temptāre, temptāvī, temptātus, try, tempt, test; attempt

teneō, tenēre, tenuī, ——, keep, hold (tenacious)

The word ubi, which we have used so much in the sense of where in asking a question, has two other uses equally important:

1. ubi = when, as a relative conjunction denoting time; as,
   Ubi mōnstrum audīvērunt, fūgērunt, when they heard the monster, they fled

2. ubi = where, as a relative conjunction denoting place; as,
   Videō oppidum ubi Galba habitat, I see the town where Galba lives

Ubi is called a relative conjunction because it is equivalent to a relative pronoun. When in the first sentence is equivalent to at the time at which; and in the second, where is equivalent to the place in which.
neque or nec, conj., neither, nor, castellum,-i, n., redoubt, fort (castle)
and ... not; neque ... neque,
cotidiē, adv., daily
neither ... nor
cessō, cessāre, cessāvī, cessātus, cease, with the infin.
incipiō, incipere, incēpī, inceptus, begin (incipient), with the infin.
oppugnō, oppugnāre, oppugnāvī, oppugnātus, storm, assail
petō, petere, petīvi or petīi, petitus, aim at, assail, storm, attack; seek,
ask (petition)
pōnō, pōnerere, posuī, positus, place, put (position); castra pōnerere, to pitch camp
possum, posse, potui, ——, be able, can (potent), with the infin.
vētō, vētāre, vētuī, vetitus, forbid (veto), with the infin.; opposite of iūbeō, command
vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus, conquer (in-vincible)
vīvō, vīvere, vīxī, ——, live, be alive (re-vive)

LESSON XXXIX, § 234

barbarus, -a, -um, strange, foreign, barbarous. As a noun, barbarī,
-ōrum, m., plur., savages, barbarians
dux, ducis, m., leader (duke). Cf. the verb dūcō
eques, equitis, m., horseman, cavalryman (equestrian)
iūdex, iūdīcis, m., judge
lapis, lapidis, m., stone (lapidary)
miles, militis, m., soldier (militia)

LESSON XL, § 237

Caesar, -aris, m., Caesar
captīvus, -i, m., captive, prisoner
cōnsul, -is, m., consul
frāter, frātris, m., brother (fraternity)
hēmō, hominis, m., man, human being

impedimentum, -i, n., hindrance (impediment); plur. impedimenta,
-ōrum, baggage
imperātor, imperātōris, m., commander in chief, general (emperor)

1 Observe that e is long in the nom. sing. and short in the other cases.
SPECIAL VOCABULARIES

SPECIAL VOCABULARIES

292

SPECIAL VOCABULARIES

legiō, legiōnis, f., legion
māter, mātris, f., mother (maternal)
ōrdō, ōrdinis, m., row, rank (order)
pater, patris, m., father (paternal)
salūs, salūtis, f., safety (salutary)
soror, sorōris, f., sister (sorority)

LESSON XLI, § 239

calamitās, calamitātis, f., loss, disaster, defeat (calamity)
ōrātor, ōrātōris, m., orator
ripa, -ae, f., bank (of a stream)
tempus, temporis, n., time (temporal)
terror, terrōris, m., terror, fear
victor, victōris, m., victor

accipīō, accipere, accepi, acceptus, receive, accept
confirmō, confirmare, confirmavi, confirmatus, strengthen, establish, encourage (confirm)

LESSON XLIII, § 245

animal, animālis (-ium1), n., animal
avis, avis (-ium), f., bird (aviation)
caedes, caedis (-ium), f., slaughter
calcar, calcaris (-ium), n., spur
civis, civis (-ium), m. and f., citizen (civic)
cliēns, cliēntis (-ium), m., retainer, dependent (client)
finis, finis (-ium), m., end, limit (final); plur., country, territory
hostis, hostis (-ium), m. and f., enemy in war (hostile). Distinguish from
inimīcus, which means a personal enemy
ignis, ignis (-ium), m., fire (ignite)
ingne, insignis (-ium), n., decoration, badge (ensign)
mare, maris (-ium2), n., sea (marine)
nāvis, nāvis (-ium), f., ship (naval); nāvis longa, man-of-war
turris, turris (-ium), f., tower (turret)
urbs, urbis (-ium), f., city (suburb). An urbs is larger than an oppidum

LESSON XLIV, § 249

arbor, arboris, f., tree (arbor)
collis, collis (-ium), m., hill
dēns, dentis (-ium), m., tooth (dentist)
fōns, fontis (-ium), m., fountain, spring; source
iter, itineris, n., march, journey, route (itinerary)
mēnsis, mēnsis (-ium), m., month
moenia, -ium, n., plur., walls, fortifications. Cf. mūrus
mōns, montis (-ium), m., mountain; summus mōns, top of the mountain
numquam, adv., never
pōns, pontis, m., bridge (pontoon)

1 The genitive plural ending -ium is written to mark the i-stems. 2 The genitive plural of mare is not in use.
sanguis, sanguinis, m., blood (sanguinary)

summus, -a, -um, highest, greatest (summit)

trāns, prep. with acc., across (transatlantic)

vis(vis), gen. plur. vīrium, f., strength, force, violence (vim)

LESSON XLV, § 258

ācer, ācris, ācre, sharp, keen, eager
brevis, breve, short, brief
difficilis, difficile, difficult
facilis, facile, facile, easy
fortis, forte, brave (fortitude)
gravis, grave, heavy, severe, serious (grave)

omnis, omne, every, all (omnibus)
pār, gen. paris, equal (par)
paucī, -ae, -a, few, only a few (paucity)
secundus, -a, -um, second; favorable, opposite of adversus
signum, -i, n., signal, sign, standard
velōx, gen. velōcis, swift (velocity)

conlocō, conlocāre, conlocāvi, conlocātus, arrange, station, place (collocation)
dēmōnstrō, dēmōnstrāre, dēmōnstrāvi, dēmōnstrātus, point out, explain (demonstrate)
mandō, mandāre, mandāvi, mandātus, commit, intrust (mandate)

LESSON XLVI, § 261

adventus, -ūs, m., approach, arrival (advent)
ante, prep. with acc., before (antedate)
cornū, -ūs, n., horn, wing of an army (cornucopia); ā dextro cornū, on the right wing; ā sinistro cornū, on the left wing
equitātus, -ūs, m., cavalry

impetus, -ūs, m., attack (impetus); impetum facere in, with acc., to make an attack on
lacus, -ūs, dat. and abl. plur. lacubus, m., lake
manus, -ūs, f., hand; band, force (manual)

portus, -ūs, m., harbor (port)

post, prep. with acc., behind, after (post-mortem)

cremō, cremāre, cremāvi, cremātus, burn (cremate)
exerceō, exercēre, exercui, exercitus, practice, drill, train (exercise)

LESSON XLVII, § 270

Athēnae, -ārum, f., plur., Athens
Corinthus, -ī, f., Corinth

domus, -ūs, locative domī, f., house, home (dome). Cf. domicilium

Genāva, -ae, f., Geneva

Pompēii, -ōrum, m., plur., Pompeii, a city in Campania. See map
propter, prep. with acc., on account of, because of
rūs, rūris, in the plur. only nom. and acc. rūra, n., country (rustic)

committō, committere, commīsī, commissus, intrust, commit; proelium committere, join battle

convocō, convocāre, convocāvī, convocātus, call together, summon (convoke)
timeō, timēre, timui, —, fear; be afraid (timid)

vertō, vertere, verti, versus, turn, change (convert); terga vertere, to turn the backs, hence to retreat

LESSON XLVIII, § 276

aciēs, -ēi, f., line of battle
aestās, aestātis, f., summer
annus, -i, m., year (annual)
diēs, diēi, m., day (diary)
fidēs, fidei, no plur., f., faith, trust; promise, word; protection; in fidem venire, to come under the protection
fluctus, -ūs, m., wave, billow (fluctuate)
hiems, hiemis, f., winter
hōra, -ae, f., hour

LESSON XLIX, § 283

amicitia, -ae, f., friendship (amicable)
itaque, conj., and so, therefore, accordingly
littera, -ae, f., a letter of the alphabet; plur., a letter, an epistle
metus, metūs, m., fear
nihil, indeclinable, n., nothing (nihilist)

nuntium, nuntiī, m., messenger. Cf. nuntiō
pāx, pācis, f., peace (pacify)
rēgnum, -ī, n., reign, sovereignty, kingdom

supplicium, suppliō, n., punishment; supplicium sūmere dē, with abl., inflict punishment on; supplicium dare, suffer punishment. Cf. poena

placeō, placère, placui, placitus, be pleasing to, please, with dative. Cf. § 154
sumō, sūmere, sūmpsi, sūmptus, take up, assume
sustineō, sustinēre, sustinui, sustentus, sustain
LESSON L, § 288

corpus, corporis, n., body (corporal)
dēnsus, -a, -um, dense
idem, e’adem, idem, demonstrative pronoun, the same (identity)
ipse, ipsa, ipsum, intensive pronoun, self; even, very
mirus, -a, -um, wonderful, marvelous (miracle)

ölim, adv., formerly, once upon a time
pars, partis (-ium), f., part, region, direction
quoque, adv., also. Stands after the word which it emphasizes
sōl, sōlis, m., sun (solar)
vērus, -a, -um, true, real (verity)

dēbeō, dēbère, dēbuī, dēbitus, owe, ought (debt)
éripio, éripere, éripui, éreptus, snatch from

LESSON LI, § 294

hic, haec, hoc, demonstrative pronoun, this (of mine); he, she, it
ille, illa, illud, demonstrative pronoun, that (yonder); he, she, it
invīsus, -a, -um, hateful, detested, with dative. Cf. § 143
iste, ista, istud, demonstrative pronoun, that (of yours); he, she, it
libertās, -ātis, f., liberty
modus, -ī, m., measure; manner, way, mode

nomen, nōminis, n., name (nominate)
oculus, -ī, m., eye (oculist)
prīstinus, -a, -um, former, old-time (pristine)
pūblicus, -a, -um, public, belonging to the state; rēs pūblica, rēi pūblicae, f., the commonwealth, the state, the republic
vestigium, vestī’gī, n., footprint, track; trace, vestige
vōx, vōcis, f., voice

LESSON LII, § 298

incolumis, -e, unharmed
nē ... quidem, adv., not even. The emphatic word stands between nē and quidem
nisi, conj., unless, if ... not
paene, adv., almost (peninsula)

satis, adv., enough, sufficiently (satisfaction)
tantus, -a, -um, so great
vērō, adv., truly, indeed, in fact.
As a conj. but, however, usually stands second, never first.

dēcidō, dēcidere, dēcīdī, ---, fall down (deciduous)
dēsiliō, dēsilire, dēsilui, dēsultus, leap down, dismount
maneō, maneere, mānsi, mānsūrus, remain
trādūcō, trādūcere, trādūxi, trāductus, lead across
LESSON LIII, § 306

aquíla, -ae, f., eagle (aquiline)
audáx, gen. audácis, adj., bold, audacious
celer, celeris; celere, swift, quick (celerity). Cf. vélox
explórator, -óris, m., scout, spy (explorer)
ingéns, gen. ingentis, adj., huge, vast
medius, -a, -um, middle, middle part of (medium)
quaerō, quaerere, quaesívī, quaesītus, ask, inquire, seek (question). Cf. petō

LESSON LIV, § 310

alacer, alacris, alacre, eager, spirited, excited (alacrity)
celerítas, -átis, f., speed (celerity)
clámor, clámòris, m., shout, clamor lenís, lēne, mild, gentle (lenient)
mulier, mulí’eris, f., woman
multitúdō, multitúdinis, f., multitude
némō, dat. nēmini, acc. nēminem
cupió, cupere, cupívī, cupítus, desire, wish (cupidity)

LESSON LV, § 314

aedificium, aedifi’cī, n., building, dwelling (edifice)
imperium, imperi, n., command, chief power; empire
mors, mortis (-ium), f., death (mortal)
abdi, abdere, abdidi, abditus, hide
contendō, contendere, contendí, contentus, strain, struggle; hasten (contend)
occíō, occidere, occídi, occíssus, cut down, kill. Cf. necō, interficiō
perterreō, perterrēre, perterruí, perterrítus, terrify, frighten
recipió, recipere, recépī, receptus, receive, recover; sē recipere, betake one’s self, withdraw, retreat
trádō, trádere, trádidi, tráditus, give over, surrender, deliver (traitor)
LESSON LVI, § 318

aditus, -ūs, m., approach, access; 
nam, conj., for
civilīs, civilītis, f., citizenship; 
obses, obsidīs, m. and f., hostage
body of citizens, state (city)
inter, prep. with acc., between;
olecule, -us, m., approach, access;
among (interstate commerce)
incolō, incolere, incoluī, ——, transitive, inhabit; intransitive, dwell. Cf.
habītō, vivō
relinquō, relinquire, reliqui, relictus, leave, abandon (relinquish)
statūō, statuere, statuī, statūtus, fix, decide (statute), usually with infin.

LESSON LVII, § 326

aequus, -a, -um, even, level; equal
gēns, gentis (-ium), f., race, tribe,
cohors, cohortis (-ium), f., cohort, a
nation (Gentile)
tenth part of a legion, about 360
men
currō, currere, cucurri, cursus, run
(coarse)
regiō, -ōnis, f., region, district
difficultās, -ātis, f., difficulty
 Cf. ōma
fossa, -ae, f., ditch (fosse)
rūmor, rūmōris, m., rumor, report.
suscipio, suscipere, suscepī, susceptus, undertake
trahō, trahere, trāxi, trāctus, drag, draw (ex-tract)
susceptus, -ātus, m., receive, accept
valēō, valēre, valuī, valētūrus, be strong; plurimum valēre, to be most
powerful, have great influence (value). Cf. validus

cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitus, learn; in the perfect tenses, know
(re-cognize)
cogō, cogere, coēgī, coāctus, collect; compel (cogent)
dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendi, dēfēnsus, defend

LESSON LVIII, § 332

commeātus, -ūs, m., provisions
lātitūdō, -inis, f., width (latitude)
mercātor, mercātōris, m., trader,
longitūdō, -inis, f., length (longi-
mechanic
tude)
münitiō, -ōnis, f., fortification (muni-
magnitūdō, -inis, f., size, magni-
tion)
tude
cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitus, learn; in the perfect tenses, know
(cognize)
cogō, cogere, coēgī, coāctus, collect; compel (cogent)
dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendi, dēfēnsus, defend
incendō, incendere, incendī, incēnsus, set fire to, burn (incendiary). Cf. cremō obtineō, obtinēre, obtinuī, obtentus, possess, occupy, hold (obtain)
perveniō, pervenire, pervēnī, perventus, come through, arrive

**LESSON LIX, § 337**

agmen, agminis, n., line of march; prīnum agmen, the van; novissimum agmen, the rear
atque, ac, conj., and; atque is used before vowels and consonants, ac before consonants only. Cf. et and
concilium, concili, n., council, assembly

cadō, cadere, cecidi, cāsūrus, fall (decadence)
dēdō, dēdere, dēdī, dēditus, surrender, give up; with a reflexive pronoun, surrender one’s self, submit, with the dative of the indirect object
premō, premere, pressī, pressus, press hard, harass
vexō, vexāre, vexāvi, vexātus, annoy, ravage (vex)

**LESSON LX, § 341**

aut, conj., or; aut ... aut, either
... or
causā, abl. of causa, for the sake of, because of. Always stands after the gen. which modifies it
ferē, adv., nearly, almost
cōnārī, cōnāris, cōnātus sum, attempt, try
ēgreō, ēgreō, ēgressus sum, move out, disembark; prōgreō, move forward, advance (egress, progress)
morō, morārī, morātus sum, delay
orīrī, ortus sum, arise, spring; begin; be born (from) (origin)
proficiscor, proficiscī, profectus sum, set out
revertō, revertī, reversus sum, return (revert). The forms of this verb are usually active, and not deponent, in the perfect system. Perf. act., revertī sequō, sequī, secūtus sum, follow (sequence). Note the following compounds of sequō and the force of the different prefixes: cōsequō (follow with), overtake; insequō (follow against), pursue; subsequō (follow under), follow close after

Helvētiī, -īorum, m., the Helvetii, a Gallic tribe
passus, passūs, m., a pace, five Roman feet; mille passuum, a thousand (of) paces, a Roman mile
quā dē causā, for this reason, for what reason
vāllum, -ī, n., earthworks, rampart

opiniō, -ōnis, f., opinion, supposition, expectation
rēs frumentāria, rēi frumentāriae, f. (lit. the grain affair), grain supply
timor, -ōris, m., fear. Cf. timeō undique, adv., from all sides

cōnārī, cōnāris, cōnātus sum, attempt, try
ēgreō, ēgreō, ēgressus sum, move out, disembark; prōgreō, move forward, advance (egress, progress)
morō, morārī, morātus sum, delay
orīrī, ortus sum, arise, spring; begin; be born (from) (origin)
proficiscor, proficiscī, profectus sum, set out
revertō, revertī, reversus sum, return (revert). The forms of this verb are usually active, and not deponent, in the perfect system. Perf. act., revertī sequō, sequī, secūtus sum, follow (sequence). Note the following compounds of sequō and the force of the different prefixes: cōsequō (follow with), overtake; insequō (follow against), pursue; subsequō (follow under), follow close after
LATIN–ENGLISH VOCABULARY

Translations inclosed within parentheses are not to be used as such; they are inserted to show etymological meanings.

A

äd or ab, prep. with abl. from, by, off. Translated on in ā dextrō cornū, on the right wing; ā fronte, on the front or in front; ā dextrā, on the right; ā latere, on the side; etc.

āb-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, hide, conceal
āb-ducō, -ere, -duxi, -ductus, lead off, lead away

āb-cidō, -ere, -cidī,-cisus [ab(s), off, + caedo, cut], cut off

āb-sum, -esse, āfui, āfuturus, be away, be absent, be distant, be off; with ā or ab and abl., § 501. 32

ac, conj., see atque

ac-cipio, -ere, -cepi, -ceptus [ad, to, + capio, take], receive, accept

ācer, ācris, ācre, adj. sharp; figuratively, keen, active, eager (§ 471)

acerbus, -a, -um, adj. bitter, sour

aciēs,-ēi, f. [ācer, sharp], edge; line of battle

ācriter, adv. [ācer, sharp], compared ācruis, ācerrime, sharply, fiercely

ad, prep. with acc. to, towards, near.

With the gerund or gerundive, to, for

ad-aequō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, make equal, make level with

ad-ducō, -ere, -duxi, -ductus, lead to; move, induce

ad-eō, -ire, -iī, -itus, go to, approach, draw near, visit, with acc. (§ 413)

ad-ferō, ad-ferre, at-tuli, ad-lātus, bring, convey; report, announce; render, give (§ 426)

ad-ficīō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [ad, to, + facīō, do], affect, visit

adficītātus, -ā, -um, adj. [part. of adficīō, shatter], shattered

ad-fligō, -ere, -flixi, -flictus, dash upon, strike upon; harass, distress

ad-hibēō, -ere, -ui, -itus [ad, to, + habeō, hold], apply, employ, use

ad-hūc, adv. hitherto, as yet, thus far

aditus, -ūs, m. [adeō, approach], approach, access; entrance. Cf. adventus

ad-ligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, bind to, fasten

ad-loquor, -loqui, -locutus sum, dep. verb [ad, to, + loquor, speak], speak to, address, with acc.

ad-ministrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, manage, direct

admirātiō, -onis, f. [admīrō, wonder at], admiration, astonishment

ad-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, move to; apply, employ

ad-propinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, come near, approach, with dat.

ad-sum, -esse, -fui, -futūrūs, be present; assist; with dat., § 426

adulēscēns, -entis, m. and f. [part. of adulēscō, grow], a youth, young man, young person
adventus, -ús, m. [ad, to, + veniō, come], approach, arrival (§ 466)
adversus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of advertō, turn to], turned towards, facing;
contrary, adverse. rés adversae, adversity
aedificium, aedifici'cium, n. [aedificō, build], building, edifice
aedificō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [aedēs, house, + faciō, make], build
aeger, aegra, aegrum, adj. sick, feeble
aēquilis, -e, adj. equal, like. As a noun, aequālis, -is, m. or f. one of the same age
aēquus, -a, -um, adj. even, level; equal
Aēsopus, -i, m. Aēsop, a writer of fables
aestas, -ātis, f. summer. initiā aestātē, at the beginning of summer
aētās, -ātis, f. age
Aethiopia, -ae, f. Ethiopia, a country in Africa
Āfrica, -ae, f. Africa
Āfri'cānus, -a, -um, adj. of Africa.
A name given to Scipio for his victories in Africa
ager, agrī, m. field, farm, land (§ 462. c)
agger, -eris, m. mound
agmen, -inis, n. [agō, drive], an army on the march, column. prīmum agmen, the van
agō, -ere, ēgi, āctus, drive, lead; do, perform. vitam agere, pass life
agricōla, -ae, m. [ager, field, + colō, cultivate], farmer
agrī cultūra, -ae, f. agriculture
ālā, -ae, f. wing
alacer, -cris, -cre, adj. active, eager.
Cf. ācer
alacrītās, -ātis, f. [alacer, active], eagerness, alacrity
alacrītus, -ātis, f. [alacer, active], eagerness, alacrity
alacriter, adv. [alacer, active], compact
alacrīus, alacerrīmē, actively, eagerly
albus, -a, -um, adj., white
alcēs, -is, f. elk
Alcēna, -ae, f. Alcēna, the mother of Hercules
aliquis (-quī), -qua, -quid (-quod), indef. pron. some one, some (§ 487)
alius, -a, -ud (gen. -ius, dat. -i), adj. another, other. alius...alium, one...another. aliī...alia, some...others (§ 110)
Alpēs, -ium, f. plur. the Alps
alter, -era, -erum (gen. -ius, dat. -i), adj. the one, the other (of two). alter...alter, the one...the other (§ 110)
altitūdō, -inis, f. [altus, high], height
altus, -a, -um, adj. high, tall, deep
Amazōnēs, -um, f. plur. Amazons, a fabled tribe of warlike women
ambō, -ae, -ō, adj. (decl. like duo), both
amicē, adv. [amicus, friendly], superl. amicissimē, in a friendly manner
amicō, -ire, -i, -icus [am-, about, + iacio, throw], throw around, wrap about, clothe
amicitia, -ae, f. [amicus, friend], friendship
amicus, -a, -um, adj. [amō, love], friendly. As a noun, amicus, -i, m. friend
ā-mittō, -ere, -misi, -missus, send away; lose
amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, love, like, be fond of (§ 488)
amphitheātrum, -i, n. amphitheater
amplus, -a, -um, adj. large, ample; honorable, noble
an, conj. or, introducing the second part of a double question
ancilla, -ae, f. maidservant
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ancora</td>
<td>anchor</td>
<td>f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Andromeda</td>
<td>Andromeda, daughter of Cepheus and wife of Perseus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>angulus</td>
<td>angle, corner</td>
<td>m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anim-advertō</td>
<td>[animus, mind, + advertō, turn to], turn the mind to, notice</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>animal</td>
<td>animal</td>
<td>[anima, breath], animal (§ 465. b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>animōsus</td>
<td>spiritual</td>
<td>-a, -um, adj.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>animus</td>
<td>mind, spirit, courage, feeling</td>
<td>-i, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>annus</td>
<td>year</td>
<td>-i, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ante</td>
<td>before</td>
<td>prep. with acc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>antēa</td>
<td>formerly</td>
<td>adv. [ante], before</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>antiquus</td>
<td>ancient, old</td>
<td>-a, -um, adj. [ante, before], former</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aper</td>
<td>wild boar</td>
<td>m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apollo</td>
<td>Apollo, son of Jupiter and Latona, brother of Diana</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ap-pāreō</td>
<td>appear</td>
<td>-ère, -uī, — [ad + pāreō, appear]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ap-pellō</td>
<td>call by name, name</td>
<td>-āre, -āvī, -ātus, call by name, name. Cf. nōminō, vocō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appius</td>
<td>Appian</td>
<td>-a, -um, adj. Appian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ap-plicō</td>
<td>apply, direct, turn</td>
<td>-āre, -āvī, -ātus, apply, direct, turn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apud</td>
<td>among; at the house of</td>
<td>prep. with acc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aqua</td>
<td>water</td>
<td>-ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aquila</td>
<td>eagle</td>
<td>-ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>āra</td>
<td>spirit, courage, feeling</td>
<td>-ae, f. altar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arbitror</td>
<td>think, suppose</td>
<td>-āri, -ātus sum, think, suppose (§ 420. c). Cf. existimō, putō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arbor</td>
<td>tree</td>
<td>-oris, f. tree (§ 247. 1. a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arcadia</td>
<td>Arcadia, a district in southern Greece</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ārdeō</td>
<td>be on fire, blaze, burn</td>
<td>-ère, ārsē, ārsūrus, be on fire, \ blaze, burn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arduus</td>
<td>steep</td>
<td>-a, -um, adj.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aricia</td>
<td>Aricia, a town on the Appian Way, near Rome</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arma</td>
<td>weapons</td>
<td>-ōrum, n. plur. arms, armor, weapons. Cf. tēlum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>armātus</td>
<td>armed, equipped</td>
<td>-a, -um, adj. [armō, arm], armed, equipped</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arō</td>
<td>plow, till</td>
<td>-āre, -āvī, -ātus, plow, till</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ars</td>
<td>art, skill</td>
<td>artis, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>articulus</td>
<td>joint</td>
<td>-i, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ascribō</td>
<td>enroll, enlist</td>
<td>-ere, -scripsi, -scriptus [ad, in addition, + scribō, write], enroll, enlist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asia</td>
<td>Asia, i.e. Asia Minor</td>
<td>-ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at</td>
<td>but</td>
<td>conj. but.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Athēnae</td>
<td>Athens</td>
<td>-ārum, f. plur. Athens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atlās</td>
<td>Titan</td>
<td>-antis, m. Atlas, a Titan who was said to hold up the sky</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>atque</td>
<td>and, and also, and what is more.</td>
<td>ac, conj. and, and also, and what is more. atque may be used before either vowels or consonants, ac before consonants only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attentus</td>
<td>careful</td>
<td>-a, -um, adj. [part. of attendō, direct (the mind) toward], attentive, intent on, careful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at-tonitus</td>
<td>thunderstruck, astounded</td>
<td>-a, -um, adj. thunderstruck, astounded</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audācia</td>
<td>boldness, audacity</td>
<td>-ae, f. [audāx, bold], boldness, audacity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audācter</td>
<td>compared</td>
<td>adv. [audāx, bold], compared audācius, audācissimē, boldly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audāx</td>
<td>boldly</td>
<td>-ācis, adj. bold, daring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audeō</td>
<td>dare</td>
<td>-ère, ausūs sum, dare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīō</td>
<td>hear, listen</td>
<td>-īre, -īvi or -īī, -ītus, hear, listen to (§§ 420. d, 491)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Augēas</td>
<td>Angelas, a king whose stables Hercules cleaned</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aura</td>
<td>air, breeze</td>
<td>-ae, f. air, breeze</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aurātus</td>
<td>adorned with gold</td>
<td>-a, -um, adj. [aurum, gold], adorned with gold</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
LATIN–ENGLISH VOCABULARY

aureus

aureus, -a, -um, adj. [aurum, gold], golden
aurum, -i, n. gold
aut, conj. or. aut ... aut, either ... or
autem, conj., usually second, never first, in the clause, but, moreover, however, now. Cf. at, sed
auxilium, auxili, n. help, aid, assistance; plur. auxiliaries
ä-vertō, -ere, -ti, -sus, turn away, turn aside
avis, -is, f. bird (§ 243. 1)

B

ballista, -ae, f. ballista, an engine for hurling missiles (p. 220)
balteus, -i, m. belt, sword belt
barbarus, -i, m. barbarian, savage
bellum, -i, n. war. bellum inferre, with dat. make war upon
bene, adv. [for bonē, from bonus], compared melius, optimē, well
benignē, adv. [benignus, kind], compared benignus, benignissimē, kindly
benignus, -a, -um, adj. good-natured, kind, often used with dat.
bīnī, -ae, -a, distributive numeral adj. two each, two at a time (§ 334)
bis, adv. twice
bonus, -a, -um, adj. compared melior, optimus, good, kind (§ 469. a)
bōs, bovis (gen. plur. boum or bovum, dat. and abl. plur. bōbus or būbus), m. and f. ox, cow
bracchium, brachī, n. arm
brevis, -e, adj. short
Brundisium, -i, n. Brundisium, a seaport in southern Italy. See map
bulla, -ae, f. bulla, a locket made of small concave plates of metal fastened by a spring (p. 212)

C

casa

c. abbreviation for Gāius, Eng. Caius
cadō, -ere, ce’cidi, cāsūrus, fall
caedēs, -is, f. [caedō, cut], (a cutting down), slaughter, carnage (§ 465. a)
caelum, -i, n. sky, heavens
Caesar, -aris, m. Caesar, the famous general, statesman, and writer
calamitās, -atis, f. loss, calamity, defeat, disaster
calcar, -āris, n. spur (§ 465. b)
Campānia, -ae, f. Campania, a district of central Italy. See map
Campānus, -a, -um, adj. of Campania
campus, -i, m. plain, field, esp. the Campus Martius, along the Tiber just outside the walls of Rome
canis, -is, m. and f. dog
canō, -ere, ce’cini, —, sing
cantō, -ēre, -avī, -ātus [canō, sing], sing
Capēnus, -a, -um, adj. of Capena, esp. the Porta Capē’na, the gate at Rome leading to the Appian Way
capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus, take, seize, capture (§ 492)
Capitōlinus, -a, -um, adj. belonging to the Capitol, Capitoline
Capitōlīum, Capitō’ti, n. [caput, head], the Capitol, the hill at Rome on which stood the temple of Jupiter Capitolinus and the citadel
capsa, -ae, f. box for books
captivus, -i, m. [capiō, take], captive
Capua, -ae, f. Capua, a large city of Campania. See map
caput, -itis, n. head (§ 464. 2. b)
carcer, -eris, m. prison, jail
carrus, -i, m. cart, wagon
cārus, -a, -um, adj. dear, precious
casa, -ae, f. hut, cottage
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

castellum, -i, n. [dim. of castrum, fort], redoubt, fort

ciastrum, -a, n. fort. Usually in the plural, castra, -orum, a military camp. castra pōnere, to pitch camp
cāsus, -ūs, m. [cadō, fall], chance; misfortune, loss

catapulta, -ae, f. catapult, an engine for hurling stones

catēna, -ae, f. chain
cauptōna, -ae, f. inn
causa, -ae, f. cause, reason. quā dē causā, for this reason

cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessūrūs, give way, retire
celer, -eris, -ere, adj. swift, fleet
celerītās, -ātis, f. [celer, swift], swiftness, speed

celeriter, adv. [celer, swift], compared
celerius, celerimē, swiftly
cēna, -ae, f. dinner
centum, indecl. numeral adj. hundred

centuriō, -onis, m. centurion, captain

cēpeus (dissyl.), -ēi (acc. Cēpea), m. Cēpeus, a king of Ethiopia and father of Andromeda

cērberus, -i, m. Cērberus, the fabled three-headed dog that guarded the entrance to Hades

certāmen, -inis, n. [certō, struggle], struggle, contest, rivalry
certē, adv. [certus, sure], compared
certius, cerryssimē, surely, certainly
certus, -a, -um, adj. fixed, certain, sure: aliquem certūrem facere (to make some one more certain), to inform some one
cervus, -i, m. stag, deer
cessō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, delay, cease
cibāria, -ōrum, n. plur. food, provisions
cibus, -i, m. food, victuals

collum

Cimbrī, -ōrum, m. plur. the Cimbri
Cimbricus, -a, -um, adj. Cimbrian
cīntus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of cingō, surround], gird, surrounded
cingō, -ere, cinxī, cinctus, gird, surround
circiter, adv. about
circum, prep. with acc. around
circum-dō, -dare, -dēdi, -datus, place around, surround, inclose
circum-eō, -ire, -iī, -itus, go around
circum-sistō, -ere, circum'stētī, ——, stand around, surround
circum-veniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventus (come around), surround
citerior, -ius, adj. in comp., superl.
citimus, hither, nearer (§ 475)
civīlis, -e, adj. [civis], civil
civis, -is, m. and f. citizen (§ 243. 1)
civitās, -ātis, f. [civis, citizen], (body of citizens), state; citizenship
clāmor, -ōris, m. shout, cry
clārus, -a, -um, adj. clear; famous, renowned; bright, shining
classis, -is, f. fleet
claudō, -ere, -si, -sus, shut, close
clāvus, -i, m. stripe
cliēns, -entis, m. dependent, retainer, client (§ 465. a)
Cocles, -itis, m. (blind in one eye), Cocles, the surname of Horatius
co-gnōscō, -ere, -gnōvi, -gnitus, learn, know, understand. Cf. sció (§ 420. b)
cogō, -ere, coēgī, coāctus [co(m)-, together, + agō, drive], (drive together), collect; compel, drive
cohors, cohortis, f. cohort, the tenth part of a legion, about 360 men
collis, -is, m. hill. in summō colle, on top of the hill (§ 247. 2. a)
collum, -i, n. neck
colō

con-currō, -ere, -currī, -cursus [com-, together, + currō, run], run together; rally, gather

condicio, -onis, f. [com-, together, + dicō, talk], agreement, condition, terms

com-commo, -are, -āvī, -ātus, pardon

come, -ae, f. hair

comes, -itus, m. and f. [com-, together, + eō, go], companion, comrade

com-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, join together; commit, intrust. proelium committere, join battle. se committere with dat., trust one’s self to

commodē, adv. [commodus, fit], compared commodius, commodissimē, conveniently, fitly

commodus, -a, -um, adj. suitable, fit

com-mōtus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of com-moveō, move], aroused, moved

com-parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com-, intensive, + parō, prepare], prepare; provide, get

com-pleō, -ēre, -plēvī, -plētus [com-, intensive, + pleō, fill], fill up

complexus, -ūs, m. embrace

com-primō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus [com-, together, + premō, press], press together, grasp, seize

con-cidō, -ere, -cidi, — [com-, intensive, + cadō, fall], fall down

concilium, concīlium, n. meeting, council

con-clūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsus [com-, intensive, + claudō, close], shut up, close; end, finish

con-scidēre, embark, go on board
cön-scribō

cön-scribō, -ere, -scripsi, -scriptus

[com-, together, + scribō, write], (write together), enroll, enlist

cön-secrō, -äre, -āvī, -ātus [com-, intensive, + sacrō, consecrate], consecrate, devote

cön-sequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, dep. verb [com-, intensive, + sequor, follow], pursue; overtake; win

cön-servō, -äre, -āvī, -ātus [com-, intensive, + servō, save], preserve, save

cōnsilium, cōnsīlī, n. plan, purpose, design; wisdom

cōn-sistō, -ere, -stītī, -stītatus [com-, intensive, + sistō, cause to stand], stand firmly, hall, take one's stand

cön-spiciō, -ere, -spēxi, -spectus [com-, intensive, + spiciō, spy], look at attentively, perceive, see

cōnstantia, -ae, f. firmness, steadiness, perseverance

cön-stituō, -ere, -uī, -ātus [com-, intensive, + statuō, set], establish, determine, resolve

cōn-stō, -äre, -stītī, -stātūrus [com-, together, + stō, stand'], agree; be certain; consist of

cōnsul, -ulis, m. consul (§ 464. 2. a)

cōn-sūmō, -ere, -sūmpsi, -sūmptus [com-, intensive, + sūmō, take], consume; use up

cōn-tendō, -ere, -diī, -tus, strain; hasten; fight, contend, struggle

cōn-tineō, -ère, -uī, -tentus [com-, together, + teneō, hold'], hold together, hem in, contain; restrain

contrā, prep. with acc. against, contrary to

con-trahō, -ere, -trāxi, -trāctus [com-, together, + trahō, draw], draw together; of sails, shorten, furl

contrōversia, -ae, f. dispute, quarrel

con-venīō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventus [com-, together, + venīō, come], come together, meet, assemble

con-vertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus [com-, intensive, + vertō, turn], turn

con-vocō, -äre, -āvī, -ātus [com-, together, + vocō, call], call together

co-orior, -īrī, -ortus sum, dep. verb [com-, intensive, + orior, rise], rise, break forth

cōpia, -ae, f. [com-, intensive, + ops, wealth], abundance, wealth, plenty.

Plur. cōpiae, -ārum, troops

cōquo, -ere, coxi, coactus, cook

Corinthus, -i, f. Corinth, the famous city on the Isthmus of Corinth

Cornēlia, -ae, f. Cornelia, daughter of Scipio and mother of the Gracchi

Cornēlius, Cornēli̇i, m. Cornelius, a Roman name

cornū, -ūs, n. horn; wing of an army. a dextrō cornū, on the right wing (§ 466)

corōna, -ae, f. garland, wreath; crown

corōnātus, -a, -um, adj. crowned

corpus, -oris, n. body

cor-rīpiō, -ere, -uī, -reptus [com-, intensive, + rapiō, seize], seize, grasp

cotīdiānus, -a, -um, adj. daily

cotīdiē, adv. daily

crēber, -bra, -brum, adj. thick, crowded, numerous, frequent

crēdō, -ere, -dīdī, -ditus, trust, believe, with dat. (§ 501. 14)

cremō, -äre, -āvī, -ātus, burn

crēō, -äre, -āvī, -ātus, make; elect, appoint

Creōn, -ontis, m. Creon, a king of Corinth

crēscō, -ere, crēvī, crētus, rise, grow, increase
Crēta
Crēta, -ae, f. Crete, a large island in the Mediterranean
Crētæus, -a, -um, adj. Cretan
crūs, crūris, n. leg
crūstul̄um, -i, n. pastry, cake
cubile, -is, n. bed
cultūra, -ae, f. culture, cultivation
cum, conj. with the indic. or subjv. when; since; although (§ 501. 46)
cum, prep. with abl. with (§ 209)
cupidē, adv. [cupidus, desirous], compared cupidius, cupidissimē, eagerly
cupiditās, -ātis, f. [cupidus, desirous], desire, longing
cupiō, -ere, -ivī or -iī, -ītus, desire, wish. Cf. volō
cūr, adv. why, wherefore
cūra, -ae, f. care, pains; anxiety
cūria, -ae, f. senate house
cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [cūra, care], care for, attend to, look after
currō, -ere, cucurri, cursus, run
currus, -ūs, m. chariot
cursus, -ūs, m. course
custōdiō, -āre, -ivī, -ītus [custōs, guard], guard, watch

dēnsus
dē-cidō, -ere, -cidi, — [dē, down, + cadō, fall], fall down
dēcimus, -a, -um, numeral adj. tenth
dēclivis, -e, adj. sloping downward
dē-dō, -ere, -didi, -ātus, give up, surrender. sē dēdere, surrender one's self
dē-duccoli, -ere, -duīxī, -ductus [dē, down, + duō, lead], lead down, escort
dē-fendō, -ere, -dī, -fēnsus, ward off, repel, defend
dē-ferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus [dē, down, + ferō, bring], bring down; report, announce (§ 426)
dē-fessus, -a, -um, adj. tired out, weary
dē-ficiō, -ere, -feci, -fectus [dē, from, + faciō, make], fail, be wanting; revolt from
dē-fīgō, -ere, -fixī, -fixus [dē, down, + figō, fasten], fasten, fix
dē-iciō, -ere, -iēci, -iectus [dē, down, + iaciō, hurl], hurl down; bring down, kill
dē-inde, adv. (from thence), then, in the next place
dēlectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, delight
dēleō, -ere, -ēvi, -ētus, blot out, destroy
dēliberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, weigh, deliberate, ponder
dē-ligō, -ere, -lēgi, -lēctus [dē, from, + legō, gather], choose, select
Delphicus, -a, -um, adj. Delphic
dēmissus, -a, -um [part. of dēmittō, send down], downcast, humble
dē-mōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dē, out, + mōnstrō, point], point out, show
dēmum, adv. at last, not till then. tum dēmum, then at last
dēnique, adv. at last, finally. Cf. postrēmō
dēns, dentis, m. tooth (§ 247. 2. a)
dēnsus, -a, -um, adj. dense, thick
diū, adv., compared diūtius, diūtissimē, for a long time, long (§ 477)
dō, dare, dedi, datus, give. in fugam
dare, put to flight. alciui negotium
dare, employ some one

doceō, -ère, -uī, -tus, teach, show
doctrina, -ae, f. [doctor, teacher],
teaching, learning, wisdom

dolor, -ōris, m. pain, sorrow
domesticus, -a, -um, adj. [domus, house], of the house, domestic
domicilium, domici'li, n. dwelling, house, abode. Cf. domus
domina, -ae, f. mistress (of the house), lady (§ 461)
dominus, -i, m. master (of the house), owner, ruler (§ 462)
domus, -ūs, f. house, home. domī, locative, at home (§ 468)
dormiō, -ire, -ivi, -itus, sleep

dracō, -ōnis, m. serpent, dragon

dubītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, hesitate
dubius, -a, -um, adj. [duo, two], (moving two ways), doubtful, dubious
du-centī, -ae, -a, numeral adj. two hundred
dūcō, -ere, dūxi, ductus (inv. dūcō), lead, conduct
dum, conj. while, as long as
duo, duae, duo, numeral adj. two (§ 479)
duo-decim, indecl. numeral adj. twelve
dūrus, -a, -um, adj. hard, tough; harsh, pitiless, bitter
dux, ducis, m. and f. [cf. dūcō, lead], leader, commander

E

ē or ex, prep. with abl. out of, from, off, of (§ 209)
eburneus, -a, -um, adj. of ivory
eceī, adv. see! behold! there! here!
ē-ducō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus [ē, out, + dūcō, lead'], lead out, draw out
ef-ficiō, -ere, -fēci, -fectus [ex, thoroughly, + faciō, do], work out; make, cause

ef-fugīō, -ere, -fugiī, -fugitūrus [ex, from, + fugīō, flee], escape
egeō, -ère, -uī, —, be in need of, lack, with abl. (§ 501. 32)
egō, pers. pron. I. plur. nōs, we (§ 480)
eg-credior, -ī, égressus sum, dep. verb [ē, out of, + gradior, go'], go out, go forth. ē nāvi égredii, disembark
e-iciō, -ere, -iēci, -iectus [ē, forth, + iacio, hurl], hurl forth, expel
elementum, -i, n., in plur. first principles, rudiments
elephantus, -i, m. elephant

Élīs, Elīdis, f. E'lis, a district of southern Greece

emō, -ere, ēmī, emptus, buy, purchase

enim, conj., never standing first, for, in fact, indeed. Cf. nam

Ennius, Enni, m. Ennius, the father of Roman poetry, born 239 B.C.

ēō, īre, ī (īvi), ītūrus, go (§ 499)
ēō, adv. to that place, thither

Epi'rus, -i, f. Epi'rus, a district in the north of Greece

equēs, -ītis, m. [equus, horse], horseman, cavalryman

equitātus, -ās, m. [equitō, ride], cavalry

equus, -i, m. horse

ē-rigō, -ere, -rēxi, -rectus [ē, out, + regō, make straight], raise up

ē-ripīō, -ere, -uī, -reptus [ē, out of, + rapiō, seize], seize; rescue

ē-rumpō, -ere, -rūpi, -ruptus [ē, forth, + rumpō, break], burst forth

ēruptīō, -ōnis, f. sally
Latin–English Vocabulary

Erymanthus
Erymanthus, -a, -um, adj. Erymanthic, of Erymanthus, a district in southern Greece

et, conj. and, also. et ... et, both ... and. Cf. atque, ac, -que
etiam, adv. (rarely conj.) [et, also, + iam, now], yet, still; also, besides. Cf. quoque. non solum ... sed etiam, not only ... but also

Etrusci, -orum, m. the Etruscans, the people of Etruria. See map of Italy

Euripus, -ae, f. Etruria

Eurystheus, -i, m. Eurystheus, a king of Tiryns, a city in southern Greece
evadó, -ere, -vási, -vásus [ē, out, + vādō, go], forth, escape
ex, see ē

examinitus, -a, -um [part. of examinō, put out of breath (anima)], adj. out of breath, tired; lifeless

ex-cipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptus [ex, out, + capio, take], welcome, receive

exemplum, -i, n. example, model

ex-eō, -ire, -ii, -itūrus [ex, out, + eō, go], go out, go forth (§ 413)
ex-erceō, -ere, -ui, -itus [ex, out, + arceō, shut], (shut out), employ, train, exercise, use

exercitus, -ūs, m. [exerceō, train], army

ex-istimō, -äre, -āvi, -ātus [ex, out, + aessimō, reckon], estimate; think, judge (§ 420 c). Cf. arbitrōr, putō

ex-orior, -iri, -ortus sum, dep. verb [ex, forth, + orior, rise], come forth, rise

expedītus, -a, -um, adj. without baggage

ex-pellō, -ere, -puli, -pulsus [ex, out, + pellō, drive], drive out

ex-plō, -äre, -āvi, -ātus [ex, intensive, + plō, atone for], make amends for, atone for

fama

explorātor, -ōris, m. [explōrō, investigate], spy, scout

explōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, examine, explore

ex-pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex, out, + pugnō, fight], take by storm, capture

ex-silium, exsiliō, n. [exsilium, exile], banishment, exile

ex-spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex, out, + spectō, look], expect, wait

ex-struō, -ère, -struxī, -structus [ex, out, + struō, build], build up, erect

exterus, -a, -um, adj., compared exterior, extrēmus or extremus, outside, outer (§ 312)

extrā, prep. with acc. beyond, outside of

ex-trahō, -ère, -traxi, -tractus [ex, out, + trahō, drag], drag out, pull forth

extrēmus, -a, -um, adj., superl. of exterior, utmost, farthest (§ 312)

F

fābula, -ae, f. story, tale, fable

facile, adv. [facilis, easy], compared facilius, facillimē, easily (§ 322)

facilis, -e, adj. [cf. faciō, make], easy, without difficulty (§ 307)

faciō, -ere, faciō, factus (inv. fac), make, do; cause, bring about. imperium facere in, make an attack upon.

proelium facere, fight a battle. iter facere, make a march or journey.

aliquem certōrem facere, inform some one. facere verba prō, speak in behalf of. Passive füō, fieri, factus sum, be done, happen. certior fieri, be informed

fallō, -ere, fefellī, falsus, tríp, betray, deceive

fāma, -ae, f. report, rumor; renown, fame, reputation
fama, -is (abl. famés), f. hunger
familia, -ae, f. servants, slaves; household, family
fascés, -ium (plur. of fascis), f. fases (p. 225)
fastigium, fasti'gii, n. top; slope, descent
fātum, -i, n. fate, destiny
faucēs, -ium, f. plur. jaws, throat
faveō, -ere, fāvī, fātūrus, be favorable to, favor, with dat. (§ 501. 14)
fēlix, -īcis, adj. happy, lucky
fēmina, -ae, f. woman. Cf. mulier
fera, -ae, f. [ferus, wild], wild beast
ferāx, -ācis, adj. fertile
ferē, adv. about, nearly, almost
ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus, bear. graviter or molestē ferre, be annoyed (§ 498)
ferreus, -a, -um, adj. [ferrum, iron], made of iron
fidēlis, -e, adj. [fidēs, trust], faithful, true
fidēs, fidēi or fidē, trust, faith; promise, word; protection. in fidem venire, come under the protection. in fidē manēre, remain loyal
filia, -ae (dat. and abl. plur. filiābus), f. daughter (§ 461. a)
filius, fill (voc. sing. filii), m. son
finis, -is, m. boundary, limit, end; in plur. territory, country (§ 243. 1)
finitimus, -a, -um, adj. [finis, boundary], adjoining, neighboring. Plur. finitimī, -ōrum, m. neighbors
fīō, fieri, factus sum, used as passive of faciō. See faciō (§ 500)
flamma, -ae, f. fire, flame
flōs, flōris, m. flower
fluctus, -ūs, m. [cf. flūō, flow], flood, wave, billow
fūmen, -inis, n. [cf. flūō, flow], river (§ 464. 2. b)
flūō, -ere, flūxī, fluxus, flow
fluvius, fluvī, m. [cf. flūō, flow], river
fōdiō, -ere, fōdī, fossus, dig
fōns, fontis, m. fountain (§ 247. 2. a)
fōrma, -ae, f. form, shape, appearance; beauty
Formiae, -ārum, f. Formiae, a town of Latium on the Appian Way. See map
forte, adv. [abl. of foris, chance], by chance
fortis, -e, adj. strong; fearless, brave
fortiter, adv. [fortis, strong], compared fortius, fortissimē, strongly; bravely
fortūna, -ae, f. [fors, chance], chance, fate, fortune
forum, -i, n. market place, esp. the Forum Rōmānum, where the life of Rome centered
Forum Appī, Forum of Appius, a town in Latium on the Appian Way
fossa, -ae, f. [cf. fodiō, dig], ditch
fragor, -ōris, m. [cf. frangō, break], crash, noise
frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctus, break
frāter, -tris, m. brother
fremitus, -ūs, m. loud noise
frequentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, attend
frētus, -a, -um, adj. supported, trusting. Usually with abl. of means
frōns, frontis, f. fronte. a fronte, in front
frūctus, -ūs, m. fruit
frumentārius, -a, -um, adj. pertaining to grain. rēs frumentāria, grain supplies
frumentum, -i, n. grain
frūstrā, adv. in vain, vainly
fuga, -ae, f. [cf. fugiō, flee], flight. in fugam dare, put to flight
fugiō

fugiō, -ere, fūgi, fugitūrus, flee, run; avoid, shun
fūmō, -āre, —, —, smoke
fūnis, -is, m. rope
fūror, -ōris, m. [fūrō, rage], madness. in furōrem incidere, go mad

G

Gāius, Gāi, m. Gaius, a Roman name, abbreviated C., English form Caius
Galba, -ae, m. Galba, a Roman name
galea, -ae, f. helmet
Gallia, -ae, f. Gaul, the country comprising what is now Holland, Belgium, Switzerland, and France
Gallicus, -a, -um, adj. Gallic
gallīna, -ae, f. hen, chicken
Gallus, -i, m. a Gaul
gaudium, gaudi, n. joy
Genāva, -ae, f. Geneva, a city in Switzerland
gēna, gentis, f. [cf. gignō, begot], race, family; people, nation, tribe
genus, -eris, n. kind, variety
Germānia, -ae, f. Germany
Germanūs, -i, m. a German
gerō, -ere, gessē, gestus, carry, wear; wage. bellum gerēre, wage war. rēs gestae, exploits. bene gerēre, carry on successfully
gladiātōrius, -a, -um, adj. gladiatorial
gladius, glādi, m. sword
glōria, -ae, f. glory, fame
Gracchus, -ī, m. Gracchus, name of a famous Roman family
gracilis, -e, adj. slender (§ 307)
Graeca, -ōrum, n. plur. Greek writings, Greek literature
Graecē, adv. in Greek
Graecia, -ae, f. Greece
grammaticus, -i, m. grammarian

honestus

grātia, -ae, f. thanks, gratitude
grātus, -a, -um, adj. acceptable, pleasing. Often with dat. (§ 501.16)
gravīs, -ā, adj. heavy; disagreeable; serious, dangerous; earnest, weighty
graviter, adv. [gravīs, heavy], compared gravius, gravissīmē, heavily; greatly, seriously. graviter ferre, bear ill, take to heart
gubernātor, -ōris, m. [gubernō, pilot], pilot

H

habēna, -ae, f. halter, rein
habeō, -ēre, -ui, -itas, have, hold; regard, consider, deem
habitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [cf. habeō, have], dwell, abide, inhabit. Cf. incolō, vivō
hāc-tenus, adv. thus far
Helvetīti, -īorum, m. the Helvetii, a Gallic tribe
Herculēs, -is, m. Hercules, son of Jupiter and Alcmena, and god of strength
Hesperidēs, -īum, f. the Hesperides, daughters of Hesperus, who kept the garden of the golden apples
hic, haec, hoc, demonstrative adj. and pron. this (of mine); as pers. pron. he, she, it (§ 481)
hic, adv. here
hiems, -emis, f. winter
hinc, adv. [hic, here], from here, hence
Hippolytē, -ēs, f. Hippolyte, queen of the Amazons
ho-diē, adv. [modified form of hōc diē, on this day], to-day
homō, -inis, m. and f. (human being), man, person
honestus, -a, -um, adv. [honor, honor], respected, honorable
honor, -ōris, m. honor
hōra, -ae, f. hour
Horātius, Horā'ti, m. Horatius, a
Roman name
horribilis, -e, adj. terrible, horrible
hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep. verb, urge, incite, exhort, encourage
§ 493
hortus, -ī, m. garden
hospitalium, hospi'ti, n. [hospes, host], hospitality
hostis, -is, m. and f. enemy, foe
§ 465. a
humilis, -e, adj. low, humble
§ 307
Hydra, -ae, f. the Hydra, a mythical water snake slain by Hercules

I
iaciō, -ere, ieci, iactus, throw, hurl
iam, adv. now, already. nec iam, and no longer
Iāniculum, -ī, n. the Janiculum, one of the hills of Rome
iānua, -ae, f. door
ibi, adv. there, in that place
Icarus, -ī, m. Ica'rus, the son of Dādalus
ictus, -ūs, m. [cf. icō, strike], blow
idem, e'adem, idem, demonstrative pron. [is + dem], same
§ 481
idoneus, -a, -um, adj. suitable, fit
igitur, conj., seldom the first word, therefore, then. Cf. itaque
ignis, -is, m. fire
§§ 243. 1; 247. 2. a; 465. 1
ignotus, -a, -um, adj. [in-, not, + (g)nōtus, known], unknown, strange
ille, illa, illud, demonstrative adj. and pron. that (yonder); as pers. pron. he, she, it
§ 481
illūc, adv. [cf. ille], yonder, there
im-mittō, -ere, -mīsi, -missus [in, against, + mittō, send], send against; let in
immolō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [in, upon, + mola, meal], sprinkle with sacrificial meal; offer, sacrifice
im-mortālis, -c, adj. [in-, not, + mortālis, mortal], immortal
im-mortālitās, -ātis, f. [immortālis, immortal], immortality
im-parātus, -a, -um, adj. [in-, not, + parātus, prepared], unprepared
impedimentum, -ī, n. [impedīō, hinder], hindrance; in plur. baggage
impeditus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of impedīō, hinder], hindered, burdened
im-pellō, -ere, -puli, -pulsus [in, against, + pellō, strike], strike against; impel, drive, propel
imperātor, -ōris, m. [imperō, command], general
imperium, impe'ri, n. [imperō, command], command, order; realm, empire; power, authority
imperō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, command, order. Usually with dat. and an object clause of purpose
§ 501. 41. With acc. object, levy, impose
impetus, -ūs, m. attack. impetus facere in, make an attack upon
im-pōnō, -ere, -posqui, -positus [in, upon, + pōnō, place], place upon; impose, assign
in, prep. with acc. into, to, against, at, upon, towards; with abl. in, on. in reliquum tempus, for the future
in-, inseparable prefix. With nouns and adjectives often with a negative force, like English un-.
in-cautus, -a, -um, adj. [in-, not, + cautus, careful], off one's guard
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

incendium, incendi, n. flame, fire. Cf. ignis, flamma

in-cendō, -ere, -dī, -census, set fire to, burn

in-cidō, -ere, -cūdī, — [in, in, on, + cadō, fall], fall in, fall on; happen. in fūrōrem incidere, go mad

in-cipīō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus [in, on, + capiō, take], begin

in-cognitus, -a, -um, adj. [in-, not, + cognitus, known], unknown

in-colō, -ere, -uī, — [in, in, + colō, dwell], inhabit; live

incolumīs, -e, adj. sound, safe, uninjured, unharmed

in-crēdibilis, -e, adj. [in-, not, + crēdibilis, to be believed], incredible

inde, from that place, thence

induō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, put on

indūtus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of induō, put on], clothed

in-eō, -ire, -ii, -itus [in, iōte, + eō, go], go into; enter upon, begin, with acc. (§ 413)

in-fāns, -fantis, adj. [in-, not, + *fāns, speaking], not speaking. As a noun, m. and f. infant

in-fēlix, -īcis, adj. [in-, not, + fēlix, happy], unhappy, unlucky

in-fōnus, -a, -um, adj. hostile

in-ferō, inferre, in'tuli, inlā'tus [in, against, + ferō, bear], bring against or upon, inflict, with acc. and dat. (§ 501. 15). bellum in ferre, with dat., make war upon

inferus, -a, -um, adj. low, below (§ 312)

in-fīnitus, -a, -um, adj. [in-, not, + finitus, bounded], boundless, endless

in-firmus, -a, -um, adj. [in-, not, + firmus, strong], weak, infirm

in-ingenium, in-gē'ni, n. talent, ability

in-gēns, -entis, adj. vast, huge, enormous, large. Cf. magnus

in-gredior, -gredi, -gressus sum [in, in, + gradior, walk], advance, enter

inimicus, -a, -um, adj. [in-, not, + amicus, friendly], hostile. As a noun, inimicus, -i, m. enemy, foe. Cf. hostis

initium, ini'ti, entrance, beginning

initus, -a, -um, part. of ineō. initā aestate, at the beginning of summer

iniūria, -ae, f. [in, against, + iūs, law], injustice, wrong, injury. alicui iniūrias in ferre, inflict wrongs upon some one

inopia, -ae, f. [inops, needy], want, need, lack

in-opināns, -antis, adj. [in-, not, + opināns, thinking], not expecting, taken by surprise

inquit, said he, said she. Regularly inserted in a direct quotation

in-rigō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, irrigate, water

in-rumpō, -ere, -rupi, -ruptus [in, into, + rumpō, break], burst in, break in

in-ruō, -ere, -ruī, — [in, in, + ruō, rush], rush in

in-sequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, dep. verb [in, on, + sequor, follow], follow on, pursue

in-signe, -is, n. badge, decoration (§ 465. 6)

insignis, -e, adj. remarkable, noted

instāns, -antis, adj. [part. of insto, be at hand], present, immediate

in-stō, -āre, -stītī, -statūrus [in, upon, + stō, stand], stand upon; be at hand; pursue, press on

instrūmentum, -I, n. instrument

in-strūō, -ere, -strüxi, -strüctus [in, on, + strō, build], draw up
insula, -ae, f. island
integer, -gra, -grum, untouched, whole;
fresh, new
intellégō, -ere, -léxi, -léctus [inter, between, + legō, choose], perceive, understand (§ 420, d)
intentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, aim; threaten inter, prep. with acc. between, among; during, while (§ 340)
interfectus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of inter-ficio], kill, slain, dead
inter-ficio, -ere, -féci, -fectus [inter, between, + fació, make], put out of the way, kill. Cf. necō, occidō, trucidō
interim, adv. meanwhile
interior, -ius, adj. interior, inner (§ 315)
inter-mittō, -ere, -misi, -missus, leave off, suspend
interpres, -etis, m. and f. interpreter
inter-rogō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, question inter-sum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus [inter, between, + sum, be], be present, take part in, with dat. (§ 501, 15)
inter-vāllum, -i, n. interval, distance intrā, adv. and prep. with acc. within, in
intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, go into, enter in-veniō, -ire, -vēni, -ventus [in, upon, + veniō, come], find
invīsus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of invīdeo, envy], hated, detested
Iolāus, -i, m. I-o-lā'us, a friend of Hercules
ipse, -a, -um, intensive pron. that very, this very; self, himself, herself, itself, (§ 481)
īra, -ae, f. wrath, anger
īrātus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of irāscor, be angry], angered, enraged
is, ea, id, demonstrative adj. and pron. this, that; he, she, it (§ 481)

L

L., abbreviation for Lūcius
labefactus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of labefaciō, cause to shake], shaken, weakened, ready to fall
Labiēnus, -i, m. La-bi-ē'nus, one of Caesar's lieutenants
labor, -ōris, m. labor, toil
labōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [labor, labor], labor; suffer, be hard pressed
lacrima, -ae, f. tear
lacus, -ūs (dat. and abl. plur. lacibus), m. lake
laetē
laetē, adv. [laetus, glad], compared
laetius, laetissimē, gladly
laetitia, -ae, f. [laetus, glad], joy
laetus, -a, -um, adj. glad, joyful
lapis, -idis, m. stone (§§ 247. 2. a; 464.1)
Lär, Laris, m.; plur. Larēs, -um (rarely
-i-um), the Lares or household gods
lātē, adv. [lātus, wide], compared
lātius, lātissimē, widely
Latīnē, adv. in Latin. Latīnē loqui,
to speak Latin
lātitūdō, -inis, f. [lātus, wide], width
Latōna, -ae, f. Latona, mother of
Apollo and Diana
lātus, -a, -um, adj. wide
latus, -eris, n. side, flank. ab utrōque
laterē, on each side
laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [laus, praise],
praise
laurea, -ae, f. laurel
laureātus, -a, -um, adj. crowned with
laurel
laus, laudis, f. praise
lectulus, -i, m. couch, bed
lēgātus, -ī, m. ambassador; lieutenant
legiō, -onis, f. [cf. legō, gather], (body
of soldiers), legion, about 3600 men
(§ 464. 2. a)
legiōnārius, -a, -um, adj. legonary.
Plur. legiōnāriī, -orum, m. the soldiers
of the legion
legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus, read
lēnis, -e, adj. gentle, smooth, mild
lēniter, adv. [lēnis, gentle], compared
lēnus, lēnissimē, gently
Lentulus, -ī, m. Lentulus, a Roman
family name
leō, -ōnis, m. lion
Lernaean, -a, -um, adj. Lernaean, of
Lerna, in southern Greece
Lesbia, -ae, f. Lesbia, a girl’s name
magis
levis, -e, adj. light
lēx, lēgis, f. measure, law
libenter, adv. [libēns, willing], com-
pared libentius, libentissimē, will-
ingly, gladly
liber, -era, -erum, adj. free (§ 469. b)
liberī, -ōrum, m. [liber, free], children
liberos, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [liber, free], set
free, release, liberate
libertas, -ātis, f. [liber, free], freedom,
liberty
līctor, -ōris, m. līctor (p. 225)
līmus, -i, m. mud
littera, -ae, f. a letter of the alphabet;
in plur. a letter, epistle
lītus, -oris, n. seashore, beach
locus, -i, m. (plur. locī and loca, m.
and n.), place, spot
longē, adv. [longus, long], comp. longi-
us, longissimē, a long way off; by far
longinquus, -a, -um, adj. [longus, long],
distant, remote
longitūdō, -inis, f. [longus, long], length
longus, -a, -um, adj. long
loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, dep. verb,
talk, speak
lōrīca, -ae, f. [lōrum, thong], coat of
mail, corselet
lūdō, -ere, lūsī, lūsus, play
lūdus, -i, m. play; school, the elemen-
tary grades. Cf. schola
lūna, -ae, f. moon
lūx, lūcis, f. (no gen. plur.), light.
prima lūx, daybreak
Lydia, -ae, f. Lydia, a girl’s name

M
M., abbreviation for Marcus
magicus, -a, -um, adj. magic
magis, adv. in comp. degree [magnus,
great], more, in a higher degree (§ 323)
magister

magister, -trí, m. master, commander; teacher

magistrátus, -ús, m. [magister, master], magistracy; magistrate

magnitúdo, -inis, f. [magnus, great], greatness, size

magnopere, adv. [abl. of magnum opus], compared magis, magné, greatly, exceedingly (§ 323)

magnus, -a, -um, adj., compared maior, maximus, great, large; strong, loud (§ 311)

maior, maius, -öris, adj., comp. of magnus, greater, larger (§ 311)

maiörēs, -um, m. plur. of maior, ancestors

mālō, mālle, māluī, — [magis, more, + volō, wish], wish more, prefer (§ 497)

malus, -a, -um, adj., compared peior, pessimus, bad, evil, wicked (§ 311)

mandō, -äre, -āvī, -ātus [manus, hand, + dō, put], (put in hand), intrust; order, command

maneō, -ère, mānsī, mānsūrus, stay, remain, abide

Mānlius, Mānīì, m. Manlius, a Roman name

mānsuētus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of mānsuēscō, tame], tamed

manus, -ús, f. hand; force, band

Mārcus, -ī, m. Marcus, Mark, a Roman first name

mare, -is, n. (no gen. plur.), sea. mare tenēre, be out to sea

margō, -inis, m. edge, border

marītus, -ī, m. husband

Mārius, Māri, m. Marius, a Roman name, esp. C. Marius, the general

Mārtius, -a, -um, adj. of Mars, esp. the Campus Martius

māter, -trís, f. mother

mātrimōnium, mātrimṓnī, n. marriage. in mātrimōnium dūcere, marry

mātūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, hasten. Cf. contendō, properō

mātūrus, -a, -um, adj. ripe, mature

maximē, adv. in superl. degree [maximus, greatest], compared magnopere, magis, maximē, especially, very much (§ 323)

maximus, -a, -um, adj., superl. of magnus, greatest, extreme (§ 311)

medius, -ā, -um, adj. middle part; middle, intervening

melior, -ius, -öris, adj., comp. of bonus, better (§ 311)

melius, adv. in comp. degree, compared bene, melius, optimē, better (§ 323)

memoria, -ae, f. [memor, mindful], memory. memorā tenēre, remember

mēns, mentis, f. mind. Cf. animus

mēnsis, -is, m. month (§ 247. 2. a)

mercātor, -öris, m. [mercatus, trade], trader, merchant

meridiānus, -a, -um, adj. [meridēs, noon], of midday

meridiēs, — (acc. -em, abl. -ē), m. [meridiānis, medius, mid, + diēs, day], noon

metus, -ūs, m. fear, dread

meus, -a, -um, possessive adj. and pron. my, mine (§ 98)

miles, -itis, m. soldier (§ 464. 1)

militāris, -ē, adj. [miles, soldier], military. rēs militāris, science of war

militō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [miles, soldier], serve as a soldier

mille, plur. miliā, -ium, numeral adj. and subst. thousand (§ 479)

minimē, adv. in superl. degree, compared parum, minus, minimē, least, very little; by no means (§ 323)
minimus, -a, -um, adj. in superl. degree, compared parvus, minor, minimus, least, smallest (§ 311)

minor, minus, -ōris, adj. in comp. degree, compared parvus, minor, minimus, smaller, less (§ 311)

Mīnos, -īs, m. Minos, a king of Crete minus, adv. in comp. degree, compared parum, minus, minimē, less (§ 323)

Minyae, -ārum, m. the Minyae, a people of Greece

mirābilis, -e, adj. [miror, wonder at], wonderful, marvelous

mīrōr, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep. verb [mīrūs, wonderful], wonder, marvel, admire

mīrus, -a, -um, adj. wonderful

Mīṣēnum, -ī, Missēnum, a promontory and harbor on the coast of Campania. See map

miser, -era, -erum, adj. wretched, unhappy, miserable

missus, -a, -um, part. of mittō, sent

mittō, -ere, misi, missus, send

modicus, -a, -um [modus, measure], modest, ordinary

modo, adv. [abl. of modus, measure, with shortened o], only, merely, just now. modo ... modo, now ... now, sometimes ... sometimes

modus, -i, m. measure; manner, way; kind

moenia, -ium, n. plur. [cf. mūniō, fortify], walls, ramparts

molestē, adv. [molestus, troublesome], compared molestius, molestissimē, annoyingly. molestē ferre, to be annoyed

molestus, -a, -um, troublesome, annoying, unpleasant (§ 501.16)

moneō, -ère, -uī, -itus, remind, advise, warn (§ 489)

mōns, montis, m. mountain (§ 247.2.a)

mōnstrum, -ī, n. monster

mora, -ae, f. delay

moror, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep. verb [mora, delay], delay, linger; impede

mors, mortis, f. [cf. morior, die], death

mōs, mōris, m. custom, habit

mōtus, -ūs, m. [cf. moveō, move], motion, movement. terrae mōtus, earthquake

moveō, -ère, mōvī, mōtus, move

mōx, adv. soon, presently

mulier, -eris, f. woman

multūtūdō, -inis, f. [multus, much], multitude

multūm (multō), adv. [multus, much], compared plūs, plūrium, much (§ 477)

multus, -a, -um, adj., compared plūs, plūrium, much; plur. many (§ 311)

mūniō, -ērī -ivī or -īī, -ītus, fortify, defend

mūnītiō, -onis, f. [mūniō, fortify], defense, fortification

mūrus, -ī, m. wall. Cf. moenia

música, -ae, f. music

N

nam, conj. for. Cf. enim

nam-que, conj., a strengthened nam, introducing a reason or explanation, for, and in fact; seeing that

nārro, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, tell, relate

nāscor, nāsci, nātus sum, dep. verb, be born, spring from

nātūra, -ae, f. nature

nātus, part. of nāscor

nauta, -ae, m. [for nāvita, from nāvis, ship], sailor
### Latin—English Vocabulary

**nāvālis**
- **nāvālis**, -e, adj. [nāvis, ship], naval
- **nāvāgis**, nāvī'gī, n. ship, boat
- **nāvāgō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [nāvis, ship, + agō, drive], sail; cruise

**nāvis**, -is (abl. -i or -e), f. ship
- (§ 243. 1). nāvem cónsendere, embark, go on board. nāvem solvere, set sail. nāvis longa, man-of-war

**nē**, conj. and adv. in order that not, that (with verbs of fearing), lest; not. nē ... quidem, not even
- nē, interrog. adv. enclitic (see §§ 16, 210). Cf. nōnne and num

**nec** or **nēque**, conj. [nē, not, + que, and], and not, nor. nec ... nec or nēque ... nēque, neither ... nor

**necessārius**, -a, -um, adj. needful, necessary

**necō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [cf. nex, death], kill. Cf. interficiō, occidō, trucidō

**negō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, deny, say not
- (§ 420. a)

**negōtiōnem**, negō'tiēm, n. [neg, not, + otiōnem, ease], business, affair, matter. alicui negotium dare, to employ some one

**Nemaeus**, -a, -um, adj. Nemėan, of Nemē'a, in southern Greece

**nēmō**, dat. nēmīni (gen. nūllius, abl. nūllo, supplied from nūllus), m. and f. [nē, not, + homō, man], (not a man), no one, nobody

**Neptūnus**, -ī, m. Neptūne, god of the sea, brother of Jupiter

**nēque**, see nec

**neuter**, -tra, -trum (gen. -trīus, dat. -trī), adj. neither (of two) (§ 108)

**nē-ve**, conj. adv. and not, and that not, and lest

**nihil**, n. indecl. [nē, not, + hilum, a whit], nothing. nihil posse, to have no power

**nihilum**, -ī, n., see nihil

**Niobē**, -ēs, f. Ni'obe, the queen of Thebes whose children were destroyed by Apollo and Diana

**nisi**, conj. [nē, not, + si, if], if not, unless, except

**nōbilis**, -e, adj. well known; noble

**noceō**, -ēre, -ui, -itūrus [cf. necō, kill], hurt, injure, with dat. (§ 501. 14)

**noctū**, abl. used as adv. [cf. nox, night], at night, by night

**Nōla**, -ae, f. Nola, a town in central Campania. See map

**nōlō, nōlle, nōlui**, — [ne, not, + volō, wish], not to wish, be unwilling (§ 497)

**nōmen**, -inis, n. [cf. nōscō, know], (means of knowing), name

**nōminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [nomen, name], name, call. Cf. appellō, vocō

**nōn**, adv. [nē, not, + ūnum, one], not. nōn sōlum ... sed etiam, not only ... but also

**nōn-dum**, adv. not yet

**nōn-ne**, interrog. adv. suggesting an affirmative answer, not? (§ 210). Cf. -ne and num

**nōs**, pers. pron. we (see ego) (§ 480)

**noster**, -tra, -trum, possessive adj. and pron. our, ours. Plur. nostri, -trum, m. our men (§ 98)

**novem**, indecl. numeral adj. nine

**novus**, -a, -um, adj. new. novae ūres, a revolution

**nox**, noctis, f. night. multā nocte, late at night

**nūllus**, -a, -um (gen. -ius, dat. -i) adj. [nē, not, + ūllus, any], not any, none, no (§ 108)

**num**, interrog. adv. suggesting a negative answer (§ 210). Cf. -ne and nōnne. In indir. questions, whether
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>numerus</td>
<td>number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>numquam</td>
<td>adv. [nē, not + umquam, ever] never</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nunc</td>
<td>adv. now. Cf. iam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nuntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [nūntius, messenger], report, announce (§ 420. a)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nūntius, nūtī, m. messenger</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nūper</td>
<td>adv. recently, lately, just now</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nympha, -ae, f. nymph</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>omnīnō, adv. [omnis, all], altogether, wholly, entirely</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>omnis, -e, adj. all, every. Cf. tōtus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>onerāria, -ae, f. [onus, load], with nauis expressed or understood, merchant vessel, transport</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>onus, -eris, n. load, burden</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opīniō, -onis, f. [opinor, suppose], opinion, supposition, expectation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oppidānus, -i, m. [oppidum, town], townsman</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oppidum, -i, n. town, stronghold</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opportūnus, -a, -um, adj. suitable, opportune, favorable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>op-primō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus [ob, against, + premō, press], (press against), crush; surprise</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oppugnātiō, -onis, f. storming, assault</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ob, against, + pugnō, fight], fight against, assault, storm, assail</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>optimē, adv. in superl. degree, compared bene, melius, optimē, very well, best of all (§ 323)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>optimus, -a, -um, adj. in superl. degree, compared bonus, melior, optimus, best, most excellent (§ 311)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opus, -eris, n. work, labor, task (§ 464. 2. b)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ōrāculum, -i, n. [ōrō, speak], oracle</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ōrātor, -ōris, m. [ōrō, speak], orator</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>orbis, -is, m. ring, circle. orbis terrārum, the earth, world</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>orbita, -ae, f. [orbis, wheel], rut</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orcus, -i, m. Orcus, the lower world</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ortus, -inis, m. row, order, rank (§ 247. 2. a)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ōrigō, -inis, f. [orior, rise], source, origin</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>orior, -iū, ortus sum, dep. verb, arise, rise; begin; spring, be born</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ornamentum

ornamentum, -i, n. [ornō, fit out],
ornament, jewel

ornātus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of ornō, fit out], fitted out; adorned
ornō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, fit out, adorn

P

P., abbreviation for Pūblius

paene, adv. nearly, almost

palūdāmentum, -i, n. military cloak

palūs, -ūdis, f. swamp, marsh

pānis, -is, m. bread

pār, paris, adj. equal (§ 471. 111)

parātus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of parō, prepare], prepared, ready

parō, -ere, peper’ēi (parsi), parsūrus, spare, with dat. (§ 501. 14)

pāreo, -ere, -uī, —, obey, with dat. (§ 501. 14)

parō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, prepare for, prepare; provide, procure

pars, partis, f. part, share; side, direction

parum, adv., compared minus, minimē, too little, not enough (§ 323)

parvus, -a, -um, adj., compared minor, minus, small, little (§ 311)

passus, -ūs, m. step, pace. mille passuum, thousand paces, mile (331. b)

pateō, -ere, patui, —, lie open, be open; stretch, extend

pater, -tris, m. father (§ 464. 2. a)

patior, -i, passus sum, dep. verb, bear, suffer, allow, permit

patria, -ae, f. [cf. pater, father], fatherland; (one’s) country

paucus, -a, -um, adj. (generally plur.), few, only a few

paulisper, adv. for a little while

paullō, adv. by a little, little

paulum, adv. a little, somewhat

pāx, pācis, f. (no gen. plur.), peace

pecūnia, -ae, f. [pecus, cattle], money

pedes, -ītis, m. [pēs, foot], foot soldier

pedester, -tris, -tre, adj. [pēs, foot], on foot; by land

peior, peius, -oris, adj. in comp. degree, compared malus, peior, pessimus, worse (§ 311)

pellis, -is, f. skin, hide

penna, -ae, f. feather

per, prep. with acc. through, by means of, on account of. In composition it often has the force of thoroughly, completely, very (§ 340)

percussus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of percutiō, strike through], pierced

per-dūcō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus [per, through, + dūcō, lead], lead through. fossam perdūcere, to construct a ditch

per-exiguus, -a, -um, adj. [per, very, + exiguus, small], very small, very short

perfidus, -a, -um, adj. faithless, treacherous, false

per-fringō, -ere, -frēgī, -frāctus [per, through, + frangō, break], shatter

pergō, -ere, perrēxī, perrēctus [per, through, + regō, conduct], go on, proceed, hasten

periculum, -i, n. trial, test; danger

peristylum, -i, n. peristyle, an open court with columns around it

peritus, -a, -um, adj. skillful

perpetuus, -a, -um, adj. perpetual

Perseus, -ei, Perseus, a Greek hero, son of Jupiter and Danaē

persōna, -ae, f. part, character, person

per-suādeō, -ere, -suāsi, -suāsus [per, thoroughly, + suādeō, persuade], persuade, advise, with dat. (§ 501. 14), often with an object clause of purpose (§ 501. 41)
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

per-terreo

per-terreo, -ère, -uí, -itus [per, thoroughly, + terreo, frighten], thoroughly terrify, alarm

per-veniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventus [per, through, + veniō, come], arrive, reach, come to

pēs, pedis, m. foot. pedem referre, retreat (§ 247. 2. a)

pessimus, -a, -um, adj. in superl. degree, compared malus, peior, pessimus, worst (§ 311)

petō, -ere, -ivi or -ii, -itus, strive for, seek, beg, ask; make for, travel to.

Cf. postulō, quaeō, rogō

Pharsālus, -i, f. Pharsal'us or Pharsalia, a town in Thessaly, near which Cæsar defeated Pompey, 48 B.C.

philosophia, -ae, f. philosophy

philosophus, -i, m. philosopher

pictus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of pingō, paint], colored, variegated

pīlum, -i, n. spear, javelin (§ 462. b)

piscina, -ae, f. [piscis, fish], fish pond

piscis, -is, m. fish

pīstor, -ōris, m. baker

placeō, -ère, -uī, -itus, please, be pleasing, with dat. (§ 501. 14)

plānitiēs, -ēi, f. [plānus, level], plain

plānus, -a, -um, adj. level, flat

plēnus, -a, -um, adj. full

plūrimon, adv. in superl. degree, compared multum, plūs, plūrimon, very much. plūrimon valēre, be most influential (§ 322)

plūrimon, -a, -um, adj. in superl. degree, compared multus, plūs, plūrimon, most, very many (§ 311)

plūs, plūris, adj. in comp. degree, compared multus; plūs, plūrimon; sing. n. as substantive, more; plur. more, several (§ 311)

potentia

pluteus, -i, m. shield, parapet

poena, -ae, f. punishment, penalty

poēta, -ae, m. poet

pompa, -ae, f. procession

Pompēii, -ērum, m. Pompeii, a city of Campania. See map

Pompēius, Pompeii, m. Pompey, a Roman name

pōnum, -i, n. apple

pōnō, -ere, posui, positus, put, place

castra pōnere, pitch camp

pōns, pontis, m. bridge (§ 247. 2. a)

popīna, -ae, f. restaurant

populus, -i, m. people

Porsena, -ae, m. Porsena, king of Etruria, a district of Italy. See map

porta, -ae, f. gate, door

portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, bear, carry

portus, -ūs, m. [cf. porta, gate], harbor

possideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessus, have, own, possess

possum, posse, potui, —, irreg. verb [potis, able, + sum, I am], be able, can (§ 495). nihil posse, have no power

post, prep. with acc. after, behind (§ 340)

posteā, adv. [post, after, + eā, this], afterwards

(posterus), -a, -um, adj., compared posterior, postrēmus or postumus, following, next (§ 312)

postquam, conj. after, as soon as

postrēmō, adv. [abl. of postrēmus, last], at last, finally. Cf. dēmum, dēnique (§ 322)

postridie, adv. [posterō, next, + diē, day], on the next day

postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, ask, demand, require. Cf. petō, quaerō, rogō

potentīa, -ae, f. [potēns, able], might, power, force
praè-beò

praè-beò, -ère, -ui, -itus [praè, forth, + habeò, hold], offer, give
praèda, -ae, f. booty, spoil, plunder
praè-dícō, -ere, -dixi, -dixtus [praè, before, + dícō, tell], foretell, predict
praè-fício, -ere, -fécī, -fectus [praè, before, + fació, make], place in command, with acc. and dat. (§ 501. 15)
praè-mittō, -ere, -misi, -missus [praè, forward, + mittō, send], send forward
praërium, praemiö, n. reward, prize
praeruptus, -a, -um [part. of praerumpō, break off], broken off, steep
praesēns, -entis, adj. present, immediate
praesertim, adv. especially, chiefly
praesidium, praesiô’di, n. guard, garrison, protection
praestō, -āre, -stītī, -stītus [praes, before, + stō, stand], (stand before), excel, surpass, with dat. (§ 501. 15); show, exhibit
praesum, -esse, -fui, -futūrūs [praes, before, + sum, be], be over, be in command of, with dat. (§ 501. 15)
praeter, prep. with acc. beyond, contrary to (§ 340)
praeterēa, adv. [praeter, besides, + eā, this], in addition, besides, moreover
praetextus, -a, -um, adj. bordered, edged
praetōrīum, praetō’ri, n. praetorium
prandium, prandiö, n. luncheon
premō, -ere, pressi, pressus, press hard, compress; crowd, drive, harass (prex, precis), f. prayer
prímō, adv. [primus, first], at first, in the beginning (§ 322)
prínum, adv. [primus, first], first. quam prínum, as soon as possible
prínum, -a, -um, adj. in superl. degree, compared prior, primus, first (§ 315)

prō-pellō

prōnceps, -cipis, m. [primus, first, + capiō, take], (taking the first place), chief, leader (§ 464. 1)
prior, prius, -onis, adj. in comp. degree, superl. primus, former (§ 315)
pristinus, -a, -um, adj. former, previous.
prö, prep. with abl. before; for, for the sake of, in behalf of; instead of, as (§ 209). In composition, forth; forward
prō-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus [prō, forward, + cēdō, go], go forward, proceed
procul, adv. far, afar off
prō-currō, -ere, -curri (-cucurrī), -currus [prō, forward, + currō, run], run forward
proelium, proeliö, n. battle, combat.
proelium committere, join battle.
proelium facere, fight a battle
profectiō, -onis, f. departure
proficiscor, -i, -fectus sum, dep. verb, set out, march. Cf. ëgreōdiō, exèo
prō-gredior, -i, -gressus sum, dep. verb [prō, forth, + gradior, go], go forth, proceed, advance. Cf. pergō, prōcēdō
prōgressus, sec prōgredior
prohibeō, -ère, -uī, -itus [prō, forth, away from, + habeō, hold], keep away from, hinder, prevent
prō-moveō, -ère, -movī, -mōtus [prō, forward, + moveō, move], move forward, advance
prō-nūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [prō, forth, + nūntiō, announce], proclaim, declare
prope, adv., compared propius, proximē, nearly. Prep. with acc. near
prō-pellō, -ère, -puli, -pulsus [prō, forth, + pellō, drive], drive forth; move, impel
**LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY**

---

**properō**

-āre, -āvī, -ātus [properus, quick], go quickly, hasten. Cf. contendō, mātūrō

**propinquus**, -a, -um, adj. [prope, near], near, neighboring

**propior**, -ius, -ōris, adj. in comp. degree, superl. proximus, nearer (§ 315)

**propius**, adv. in comp. degree, compared prope, propius, proximē, nearer (§ 323)

**propter**, prep. with acc. on account of, because of (§ 340)

**prō-scribō**, -ere, -scripsī, -scriptus [prō, forth, + scribō, write], proclaim, publish. Cf. pronuntio

**prō-seuqōr**, -sequī, -secutus sum, dep. verb [prō, forth, + sequor, follow], escort, attend

**prō-sum**, prōdesse, prōfui, prōfutūrus [prō, for, + sum, be], be useful, benefit, with dat. (§§ 496; 501. 15)

**prō-tegō**, -ere, -tēxi, -tectus [prō, in front, + tegō, cover], cover in front, protect

**prōvinciā**, -ae, f. territory, province

**proximē**, adv. in superl. degree, compared prope, propius, proximē, nearest, next; last, most recently (§ 323)

**proximus**, -a, -um, adj. in superl. degree, compared propior, proximus, nearest, next (§ 315)

**públicus**, -a, -um, adj. [populus, people], of the people, public. rēs pūblica, the commonwealth

**puella**, -ae, f. [diminutive of puer, boy], girl, maiden

**puer**, -erī, m. boy; slave (§ 462. c)

**pugna**, -ae, f. fight, battle. Cf. proelium

**pugnō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [pugna, battle], fight. Cf. contendō, dimicō

---

**qui**

**pulcher**, -chra, -chrum, adj. beautiful, pretty (§§ 469. b; 304)

**Pullō**, -onis, m. Pullo, a centurion

**pulsō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, strike, beat

**puppis**, -is (acc. -im, abl. -i), f. stern of a ship, deck

**pūrē**, adv. [pūrus, pure], comp. pūrius, purely

**pūrgō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, cleanse, clean

**purpureus**, -a, -um, adj. purple, dark red

**putō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, reckon, think (§ 420, c). Cf. arbitror, existimō

**Pythia**, -ae, f. Pythia, the inspired priestess of Apollo at Delphi

---

**quā dē causā, for this reason, wherefor**

**quā rē, therefore, for this reason**

**quae**erō, -ere, -sivi, -situs, seek; ask, inquire. Cf. petō, postulō, rogō

**quālis**, -e, interrog. pronom. adj. of what sort, what kind of. tālis...

**quālis, such... as**

**quam**, adv. how; after a comparative, than; with a superlative, translated as... as possible. quam primum, as soon as possible

**quantus**, -a, -um, adj. [quam, how], how great, how much. tantus...

**quantus, as great as**

**quārtus**, -a, -um, numeral adj. [quat-tuor, four], fourth

**quattuor**, indecl. numeral adj. four

**quattuor-decim**, indecl. numeral adj. fourteen

**-que, conj., enclitic, and (§ 16). Cf. ac, atque, et**

**quī, quae, quod, rel. pron. and adj. who, which, what, that (§ 482)**
LATIN–ENGLISH VOCABULARY

quia
quia, conj. because. Cf. quod
quidam, quaedam, quiddam (quoddam),
   indef. pron. and adj. a certain one,
   a certain, a ($485$
quidem, adv. to be sure, certainly, in-
   deed. nē . . . quidem, not even
quieres, ĕtis, f. rest, repose
quiētus, -a, -um, adj. quiet, restful
quinde, indef. numeral adj. fifteen
quōgentī, -ae, -a, numeral adj. five
hundred
quīnītus, -a, -um, numeral adj. fifth
quis (qui), qua, quid (quod), interrog.
   pron. and adj. who? what? which?
   ($483$
quis (qui), qua (quae), quid (quod),
   indef. pron. and adj., used after si,
   nisi, nē, num, anyone, anything, some
   one, something; any, some ($484$
quīsquam, quicquam or quidquam (no
   fem. or plur.), indef. pron. any one
   (at all), anything (at all) ($486$
quīisque, quaeque, quidque (quoque),
   indef. pron. and adj. each, each one,
   every ($484$
quō, interrog. and rel. adv. whither,
   where
quō, conj. in order to, that, with comp.
   degree ($350$
quod, conj. because, in that. Cf. quia
quoque, conj., following an emphatic
   word, also, too. Cf. etiam
quōt-annīs, adv. [quot, how many +
   annus, year], every year, yearly
quōtiēns, interrog. and rel. adv. how
   often? as often as

R
rādīx, -īcis, f. root; foot
rapiō, -ere, -ui, -tus, seize, snatch
re-linquo
rārō, adv. [rārus, rare], rarely
rārus, -a, -um, adj. rare
re- or red-, an inseparable prefix,
   again, back, anew, in return
rebelliō, -onis, f. renewal of war, rebel-
   lion
recēns, -entis, adj. recent
re-cipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus [re-, back,
   + capiō, take], take back, receive. sē
recipere, withdraw, retreat
re-clinātus, -a, -um, part. of reclinō,
   leaning back
re-creātus, -a, -um, part. of recreō,
   refreshed
re-cūtus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of regō, keep
   straight], straight, direct
re-cūsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, refuse
red-āctus, -a, -um, part. of redigō, re-
   duced, subdued
red-eō, -ire, -iī, -itus [red-, back, + eō,
   go], go back, return ($413$). Cf. revertō
reditus, -ūs, m. [cf. redeō, return],
   return, going back
re-duōcō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus [re-, back,
   + dūco, lead], lead back
re-ferō, -ferre, rettiuli, -lātus [re-, back,
   + ferō, bear], bear back; report. pedem
   referre, withdraw, retreat
re-fīciō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [re-, again,
   + faciō, make], make again, repair.
   sē reficere, refresh one’s self
rēgina, -ae, f. [rēx, king], queen
rēgiō, -ōnis, f. region; district
rēgnum, -i, n. sovereignty; kingdom
rēgō, -ere, rēxi, rēctus [cf. rēx, king],
   govern, rule ($490$
re-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus [re-, back,
   + iaciō, hurl], hurl back; throw away
re-linquō, -ere, -liquī, -lictus [re-, be-
   hind, + linquō, leave], leave behind,
   leave, abandon
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

reliquus
reliquus, -a, -um, adj. [cf. relinquō, leave], left over, remaining. As a noun, plur. the rest

remōtus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of removeō, remove], remote, distant
re-moveō, -ēre, -mōvi, -mōtus [re-, back, + moveō, move], remove
rēmus, -i, m. oar
re-perīō, -īre, repperī, repertus, find
re-portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [re-, back, + portō, carry], carry back, bring back, win, gain
rēs, rei, f. thing, business, matter, deed, event, circumstance (§ 467). quam ob rem, for this reason. rēs adversae, adversity. rēs frumentaria, grain supplies. rēs gestae, exploits. rēs militāris, science of war. rēs pública, the commonwealth. rēs secundae, prosperity
re-scindō, -ēre, -scidi, -scissus [re-, back, + scindō, cut], cut off, cut down
re-sistō, -ēre, -stiti, — [re-, back, + sistō, cause to stand], oppose, resist, with dat. (§ 501. 14)
re-spondeō, -ēre, -spondī, -spōnsus [re-, in return, + spondeō, promise], answer, reply (§ 420. a)
re-vertō, -ēre, -ī, —, or dep. verb re-vertor, -ī, -sus sum [re-, back, + vertō, turn], turn back, return. Usually active in the perf. system
re-vincīō, -īre, -vīnxi, -vīctus [re-, back, + vincīō, bind], fasten
rēx, rēgis, m. [cf. regō, rule], king
Rhēnus, -i, m. the Rhine, a river of Germany
ripa, -ae, f. bank
rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, ask. Cf. petō, postulō, quaerō

sapiēns
Rōma, -ae, f. Rome. See map
Rōmānus, -a, -um, adj. [Rōma, Rome], Roman, follows its noun. As a noun, m. and f. a Roman
rosa, -ae, f. rose
rōstrum, -ī, n. beak of a ship. In plur., the rostra, the speaker’s stand in the Roman Forum
rota, -ae, f. wheel
Rubīcō, -onis, m. the Rubicon, a river in northern Italy. See map
rūmor, -ōris, m. report, rumor
rūrsus, adv. [for reversus, turned back], again, in turn
rūs, rūris (locative abl. rūri, no gen., dat., or abl. plur.), n. the country (§ 501. 36. 1). Cf. ager, patria, terra

S
Sabīnus, -a, -um, adj. Sabine. As a noun, m. and f. a Sabine. The Sabines were an ancient people of central Italy. See map
sacrum, -ī, n. [sacer, consecrated], something consecrated, sacrifice; usually in plur., religious rites
saepe, adv., compared saepius, saepissimē, often, frequently
saevus, -a, -um, adj. cruel, savage
sagitta, -ae, f. arrow
saliō, -īre, -uī, saltus, jump
salūs, -ūtis, f. safety; health. salūtem dicere, send greetings
salūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [salūs, health], greet, salute
salvē, inv. of salveō, hail, greetings
sanguis, -inis, m. blood (§ 247. 2 a)
sānitās, -ātis, f. [sānus, sound], health, sanity
sapiēns, -entis, adj. [part. of sapiō, be wise], wise, sensible
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

satis
satis, adv. and indecl. noun, enough, sufficient, sufficiently
saxum, -i, n. rock, stone
scellus, -eris, n. crime, sin
scenitrum, -i, n. specter
schola, -ae, f. school, the higher grades. Cf. lūdus
scientia, -ae, f. [sciēns, knowing], skill, knowledge, science
scindō, -ere, scidi, scissus, cut, tear
sciō, -ire, -ivi, -itūs, know (§ 420. b).
   Cf. cognōscō
scribō, -ere, scripūs, scriptus, write
scūtum, -i, n. shield, buckler
sē, see sūi
sēcum = sē + cum
secundus, -a, -um, adj. [sequor, follow], following, next, second; favorable, successful. rēs secundae, prosperity
sed, conj. but, on the contrary. nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam, not only . . . but also
sēdecim, indecl. numeral adj. sixteen
sedeō, -ere, sēdi, sessus, sit
semper, adv. always, forever
senātus, -ūs, m. [cf. senex, old], council of elders, senate
sentiō, -ire, sēnsā, sēnsus, feel, know, perceive (§ 420. d). Cf. intellegō, videō
septem, indecl. numeral adj. seven
septimus, -a, -um, numeral adj. seventh
sequor, -i, secūtus sum, dep. verb, follow (§ 493)
serpēns, -entis, f. [serpō, crawl], serpent, snake
serptae, -ārum, f. plur. wreaths, garlands
servitūs, -ūtis, f. [servus, slave], slavery, servitude
servī, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, save, rescue, keep

solvō
servus, -i, m. slave
sēsē, emphatic for sē
sex, indecl. numeral adj. six
Sextus, -i, m. Sextus, a Roman first name
sī, conj. if
sic, adv. thus, in this way. Cf. ita, tam
Sicilia, -ae, f. Sicily. See map
sic-ut, just as, as if
signifer, -erī, m. [signum, standard; + fārō, bear], standard bearer (p. 224)
signum, -i, n. ensign, standard; signal
sīlva, -ae, f. wood, forest
similis, -e, adj., compared similior, simillimus, like, similar (§ 307)
simul, adv. at the same time
simul ac or simul atque, conj. as soon as
sine, prep. with abl. without (§ 209)
singuli, -ae, -a, distributive numeral adj. one at a time, single (§ 334)
sinister, -tra, -trum, adj. left
Sinuessa, -ae, f. Sinuës'sa, a town in Campania. See map
sītis, -is (acc. -im, abl. -i, no plur.), f. thirst
situs, -a, -um, adj. [part. of sinō, set], situated, placed, lying
socius, soci, m. comrade, ally
sōl, sōlis (no gen. plur.), m. sun
soleō, -ēre, solitus sum, semi-dep. verb, be wont, be accustomed
sollicitus, -a, -um, adj. disturbed, anxious
sōlum, adv. [sōlus, alone], alone, only. nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam, not only . . . but also
sōlus, -a, -um (gen. -ius, dat. -i), adj. alone, only (§ 108)
solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtus, loosen, unbind. nāvem solvere, set sail
somnus, -i, m. sleep
soror, -orris, f. sister
spatium, spatii, n. space, distance; time; opportunity
spectaculum, -i, n. [specto, look at], show, spectacle
specto, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, look at, witness
spērō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [spēs, hope], hope, expect (§ 420. c)
spēs, spei, f. hope (§ 273. 2)
splendidē, adv. [splendidus], compared splendidius, splendidissimē, splendidly, handsomely
splendidus, -a, -um, adj. brilliant, gorgeous, splendid
Stabianus, -a, -um, Stabian
stabulum, -i, n. [cf. stō, stand], standing place, stable, stall
statim, adv. [cf. stō, stand], on the spot, at once, instantly
statua, -ae, f. [sistō, place, set], statue
statuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus [status, station], decide, determine
stilus, -ī, m. iron pencil, style (p. 210)
stō, -āre, steti, status, stand
strātus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of sternō, spread], paved (of streets)
strepitus, -ūs, m. [strepō, make a noise], noise, din
stringō, -ere, strinxī, strictus, bind tight; draw, unsheathe
studeō, -ēre, -uī, —, give attention to, be eager, with dat. (§ 501. 14)
studiō, studi, n. [cf. studeō, be eager for], eagerness, desire, zeal, devotion
stultus, -a, -um, adj. foolish, stupid
Stymphālis, -īdis, adj. f. Stymphalian, of Stymphalus, a lake in southern Greece

super-sum

Stymphalus, -i, m. Stymphalus, a district of southern Greece with a town, mountain, and lake, all of the same name
suādeo, -ēre, -sī, -sus, advise, recommend, with subjv. of purpose (§ 501. 41)
sub, prep. with acc. and abl. under, below, up to; at or to the foot of
sub-igō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctus [sub, under, + agō, drive], subdue, reduce
subītō, adv. [subitus, sudden], suddenly
sub-sequor, -ī, -secūtus sum, dep. verb [sub, below, + sequor, follow], follow close after, follow up
suc-cēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessus [sub, below, + cēdō, go], follow, succeed
sui, reflexive pron. of himself (herself, itself, themselves) (§ 480). secum = sé + cum. sēsē, emphatic form of sé
sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, irreg. verb, be; exist (§ 494)
summus, -a, -um, adj. in superl. degree, compared superus, superior, supremus or summus (§ 312), supreme, highest; best, greatest. in summō colle, on the top of the hill
sūmō, -ere, sūmpsi, sūmptus, take up; assume, put on. sūmere supplicium dē, inflict punishment on
super, prep. with acc. and abl. over, above
superbia, -ae, f. [superbus, prōud], pride, arrogance
superbus, -a, -um, adj. prōud, haughty
superior, comp. of superus
superō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [superus, above], go over; subdue, overcome; surpass, excel
super-sum, -esse, -fuī, —, be over, survive, with dat. (§ 501. 15)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>superus</th>
<th>timeō</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>superus, -a, -um, adj., compared superior, suprēmus or summus, above, upper (§ 312)</td>
<td>Tarracina, -ae, f. Tarraci'na, a town in Latium. See map</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>supplicium, suppli'cī, n. [supplex, kneeling in entreaty], punishment, torture. supplicium sūmere dē, in-flict punishment on. supplicium dare, suffer punishment</td>
<td>taurus, -i, m. bull</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>surgō, -ere, surrēxi, — [sub, from below, + regō, straighten], rise</td>
<td>tectus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of tegō, cover], covered, protected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sus-cipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptus [sub, under, + capiō, take], undertake, assume, begin</td>
<td>tēlum, -i, n. weapon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sus-tineō, -ere, -tinui, -tentus [sub, under, + teneō, hold], hold up, bear, sustain, withstand</td>
<td>temerē, adv. rashly, heedlessly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suus, -a, -um, reflexive possessive adj. and pron., his, her, hers, its, their, theirs (§ 98)</td>
<td>tempestās, -ātis, f. [tempus, time]. storm, tempest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T., abbreviation of Titus</td>
<td>templum, -i, n. temple, shrine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>taberna, -ae, f. shop, stall</td>
<td>temptō,-āre, -āvi, -ātus, try, test; make trial of; attempt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tabula, -ae, f. tablet for writing</td>
<td>tempus, -oris, n. time (§ 464. 2. b). in reliquum tempus, for the future</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tālis, -e, adj. such. tālis . . . quālis, such . . . as</td>
<td>teneō, -ere, tenuī, —, hold, keep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tam, adv. so, such. Cf. ita, sic</td>
<td>tertium, -āre, -ārum, numeral adj. third</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tamen, adv. yet, however, nevertheless</td>
<td>Teutonēs, -um, m. the Teutons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tandem, adv. at length, finally</td>
<td>theātrum, -i, n. theater</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tangō, -ere, tetigī, tāctus, touch</td>
<td>Thēbae, -ārum, f. Thebes, a city of Greece</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tantum, adv. [tactus], only</td>
<td>Thēbānī, -ōrum, m. Thebans, the people of Thebes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tantus, -a, -um, adj. so great, such. tantus . . . quantus, as large as</td>
<td>thermae, -ārum, f. plur. baths</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tardus, -a, -um, adj. slow, late; lazy</td>
<td>Thessalia, -ae, f. Thessaly, a district of northern Greece</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tarpēia, -ae, f. Tarpeia (pronounced Tar-pē'ya), the maiden who opened the citadel to the Sabines</td>
<td>Thrācia, -ae, f. Thrace, a district north of Greece</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tarquinius, Tarqui'nī, Tarquin, a Roman king. With the surname Superbus, Tarquin the Proud</td>
<td>Tiberius, Tibe'ri, m. Tiberius, a Roman first name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tibicen, -inis, m. [cf. tibia, pipe], piper, flute player</td>
<td>timeō, -ēre, -ui, —, fear, be afraid of. Cf. vereor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
timor, -ōris, m. [cf. timō, fear], fear, dread, alarm. Cf. metus

Tiryns, Tirynthi, f. T'iryns, an ancient town in southern Greece, where Hercules served Eurystheus
toga, -ae, f. [cf. tegō, cover], toga
tortentum, -i, n. engine of war
totiēns, adv. so often, so many times
tōtus, -a, -um (gen. -ius, dat. -i), adj. all, the whole, entire (§108)
trā-dō, -ere, -dīdī, -ditus [trāns, across, + dō, deliver], give up, hand over, surrender, betray
trā-dūcō, -ere, -düxī, -ductus [trāns, across, + dūcō, lead], lead across
trahō, -ere, trāxi, trāctus, draw, pull, drag. multum trahere, protract, prolong much
trā-iacō, -ere, -iēci, -iectus [trāns, across, + iācō, hurl], throw across; transfix
trā-nō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [trāns, across, + nō, swim], swim across
trāns, prep. with acc. across, over (§340)
trāns-eō, -ēre, -ēi, -ēitus [trāns, across, + eō, go], go across, cross (§413)
trāns-fīgō, -ere, -fīxi, -fīxus [trāns, through, + fīgō, drive], transfix
trānsītus, — (acc. -um, abl. -ū), m.
[cf. trānseō, cross over], passage across
trēs, tria, numeral adj. three (§479)
trīduum, trīduī, n. [trēs, three, + diēs, days], three days' time, three days
trigintā, indecl. numeral adj. thirty
triplēx, -icis, adj. threefold, triple
tristis, -e, adj. sad; severe, terrible
tristitia, -ae, f. [tristis, sad], sadness, sorrow
triumphō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [triumphus, triumph], celebrate a triumph

triumphus, -i, m. triumphal procession, triumph. triumphum agere, celebrate a triumph
trucīdō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, cut to pieces, slaughter. Cf. interficiō, necō, occīdō
tū, tui (plur. vōs), pers. pron. thou, you (§480)
tuba, -ae, f. trumpet
Tullia, -ae, f. Tullia, a Roman name
tum, adv. then, at that time
turris, -is, f. tower (§465.2)
tūtus, -a, -um, adj. safe
tuus, -a, -um, possessive adj. and pron.
your, yours (§98)

ubi, rel. and interrog. adv. where, when
ubique, adv. everywhere
ullus, -a, -um (gen. -ius, dat. -i), adj. any (§108)
ulterior,-ius,-ōris, adj. in comp., superl.
ultimus, farther, more remote (§315)
ultimus, -a, -um, adj. in superl. degree (see ulterior), farthest (§315)
umbra, -ae, f. shade
umerus, -ī, m. shoulder
umquam, adv. ever, at any time
ūnā, adv. [ūnus, one], in the same place, at the same time
ūndecimus,-a,-um, numeral adj. [ūnus, one; + decimus, tenth], eleventh
undique, adv. from every quarter, on all sides, everywhere
ūnus, -a, -um (gen. -ius, dat. -i), numeral adj. one; alone (§108)
urbs, -is, f. city (§465.2)
urgeō, -ēre, ursī, —, press upon, crowd, hem in
ūrus, -ī, m. wild ox, urus
ūsus, -ūs, m. use, advantage
LATIN–ENGLISH VOCABULARY

ut

ut, conj. with the subjv. that, in order that, that not (with verbs of fearing), so that, to (§ 350. 1)

uter, -tra, -trum (gen. -ius, dat. -i), interroig. pron. which of two? which? (§ 108)

uterque, utraque, utrumque, indef. pron. each of two, both. ab utrāque parte, on both sides

ūtilis, -e, adj. [ūtor, use], useful

utraque, adv. [uterque, each of two], on each side, on either hand

ūva, -ae, f. grape, bunch of grapes

uxor, -ōris, f. wife

V

vāgīna, -ae, sheath, scabbard

vagor, -āri, -ātus sum, dep. verb, wander

valeō, -ere, -uī, -itūrus, be powerful, be well; in the imperative as a greeting, farewell. plurimum valēre, have the most power

valētūdō, -inis, f. [valeō, be well], health

validus, -a, -um, adj. [cf. valeō, be strong], strong, able, well

vallēs, -īs, f. valley

vāllum, -ī, n. rampart, earthworks

variōs, -a, -um, adj. bright-colored

vāstō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [vāstus, empty], (make empty), devastate, lay waste

vectīgal, -ālis, n. tax, tribute

vehementer, adv. [vehemēns, eager], compared vehemensius, vehementissimē, eagerly, vehemently

vehō, -ere, vexī, vectus, convey, carry.

In the passive often in the sense of ride, sail

vel, conj. or. vel ... vel, either ... or.

Cf. aut

via

vēlōcitās, -ātis, f. [vēlōx, swift], swiftness

vēlōx, -ōcis, adj. swift, fleet

vēlum, -ī, n. sail

vēndō, -ere, vēndīdī, vēnditus, sell

venīō, -ēre, vēnī, ventus, come, go

ventus, -ī, m. wind

verbum, -ī, n. word. verba facere prō, speak in behalf of

vereor, -ēri, -ētus sum, dep. verb, fear; reverence, respect (§ 493). Cf. timeō

Vergilius, Vergi’lii, m. Vergil, the poet

vergō, -ere, -ēre, turn, lie

vērō, adv. [vērus, true], in truth, surely; conj. but, however. tum vērō, then you may be sure, introducing the climax of a story

vertō, -ere, -ī, -sus, turn, change.

tergum vertere, retreat, flee

vērus, -a, -um, true, actual

vesper, -ēri, m. evening

vester, -tra, -trum, possessive adj. and pron. your, yours (§ 98)

vestīgium, vestī’gī, n. [cf. vestīgō, track], footstep, track, trace

vestīmentum, -i, n. [vestis, clothing], garment

vestīō, -ire, -īvi, -ītus [vestis, clothing], clothe, dress

vestis, -is, f. clothing, attire, garment, robe

vestītus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of vestīō, clothe], clothed

Vesuvius, Vesu’vi, m. Vesuvius, the volcano near Pompeii. See map

veterānus, -a, -um, adj. old, veteran

vetō, -ere, -uī, -itus, forbid, prohibit

vexō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trouble, annoy

via, -ae, f. way, road, street; way, manner. Cf. iter
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

viātor

viātor, -ōris, m. [via], traveler

victor, -ōris, m. [vincō, conquer], conqueror, victor. In apposition, with adj. force, victorious

victōria, -ae, f. [victor, victor], victory

vīcus, -ī, m. village

vīdeō, -ēre, vidi, visus, see, perceive.

Pass. be seen; seem (§ 420. d)

vigilīa, -ae, f. [vigil, awake], watch. dē tertiā vigilīā, about the third watch

vilicus, -ī, m. [villa, farm], steward, overseer of a farm

vīlla, -ae, f. farm, villa

vincō, -ire, vinxī, vinctus, bind, tie, fetter

vincō, -ere, vici, victus, conquer, defeat, overcome. Cf. subiguō, superō

vīnea, -ae, f. shed (p. 219)

vīnum, -i, n. wine

violenter, adv. [violentus, violent], compared violentius, violentissē, violently, furiously

vir, virī, m. man, husband; hero (§ 462. c)

virīlis, -e, adj. [vir, man], manly

virtūs, -ūtis, f. [vir, man], manliness; courage, valor; virtue (§ 464. 1)

vis, (vis), f. strength, power, might, violence (§ 468)

vīta, -ae, f. [cf. vivō, live], life. vītam agere, spend or pass life

vītō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, shun, avoid

vīvō, -ere, vīxi, —, live. Cf. habitō, incolō

vīvus, -a, -um, adj. [cf. vivō, live], alive, living

vix, adv. scarcely, hardly

vocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, call, summon, invite. Cf. appellō, nōminō

volō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, fly

volō, velle, voluī, —, irreg. verb, will, be willing, wish (§ 497). Cf. cupidō

volumen, -inis, n. roll, book

Vorēnus, -ī, m. Vorē'num, a centurion

vōs, pers. pron. you (see tū) (§ 480)

vōtum, -i, n. [neut. part. of voveō, vow], vow, pledge, prayer

vōx, vōcis, f. [cf. vocō, call], voice, cry; word

vulnerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [vulnus, wound], wound, hurt

vulnus, -eris, n. wound, injury

vulpēs, -is, f. fox
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

This vocabulary contains only the words used in the English-Latin exercises. For details not given here, reference may be made to the Latin-English vocabulary. The figures 1, 2, 3, 4, after verbs indicate the conjugation.

A

a, an, commonly not translated
able (be), possum, posse, potui, —— (§ 495)
abode, domicilium, domicilii, n.
about (adv.), circiter
about (prep.), dē, with abl.
about to, expressed by fut. act. part.
abundance, cōpia, -ae, f.
across, trāns, with acc.
active; ācer, ācīris, ācre
advance, prōgredior, 3
advantage, āsus, -ās, m.
advise, moneō, 2
after (conj.), postquam; often expressed by the perf. part.
after (prep.), post, with acc.
against, in, contrā, with acc.
aid; axillum, axiīli, n.
al, omnis, -e; tōtus, -a, -um (§ 108)
allow, patior, 3
ally, socius, soci, m.
amost, paene; ferē
alone, ūnus, -a, -um; sōlūs, -a, -um (§ 108)
already, iam
also, quoque
always, semper
ambassador, lēgātus, -ī, m.
among, apud, with acc.
ancient, antiquus, -a, -um
and; et; atque (ac); -que

and so, itaque
Andromeda, Andromeda, -ae, f.
angry, irātus, -a, -um
animal, animal, -ālis, n.
announce, nūntiō, 1
annoying, molestus, -a, -um
another, alius, -a, -um (§ 109)
any, ūllum, -a, -um (§ 108)
any one, anything, quisquam, quicquam or quidquam (§ 486)
appearance, fōrma, -ae, f.
appoint, creō, 1
approach, adpropinquo, 1, with dat.
are, used as auxiliary, not translated; as a copula, sum (§ 494)
arise, orior, 4
arm, bracchium, bracci, n.
armed, armātus, -a, -um
arms, arma, -ōrum, n. plur.
army, exercitus, -ūs, m.
around, circum, with acc.
arrival, adventus, -ūs, m.
arow, sagitta, -ae, f.
art of war, res militāris
as possible, expressed by quam and superl.
ask, petō, 3; quaerō, 3; rogō, 1
assail, oppugnō, 1
at, in, with acc. or abl.; with names of towns, locative case or abl., without a preposition (§ 268); time when, abl.
at once

at once, statim

at the beginning of summer, initā aestāte

Athens, Athēnae, -ārum, f.

attack, impetus, -ūs, m.

attempt, cōnōr, i; temptō, i

away from, ā or ab, with abl.

B

bad, malus, -a, -um

baggage, impedimenta, -ōrum, n.plur.

bank, ripa, -ae, f.

barbarians, barbarī, -ōrum, m.plur.

battle, proelium, proeli, n.; pugna, -ae, f.

be, sum (§ 494)

be absent, be far, absum (§ 494)

be afraid, timeō, 2; vereor, 2

be away, absum (§ 494)

be in command of, praesum, with dat. (§§ 494, 426)

be informed, certior fiō

be off, be distant, absum (§ 494)

be without, egeō, with abl. (§ 180)

beast (wild), fera, -ae, f.

beautiful, pulcher, -chra, -chrum

because, quia; quod

because of, propter, with acc.; or abl. of cause

before, heretofore (adv.), anteā

before (prep.), ante, with acc.; prō, with abl.

begin, incipiō, 3

believe, crēdō, 3, with dat. (§ 153)

belong to, predicate genitive (§ 409)

best, optimus, superl. of bonus

betray, trādō, 3

better, melior, comp. of bonus

between, inter, with acc.

billow, fluctus, -ī, m.

bird, avis, -īs, f. (§ 243. 1)

blood, sanguis, -inis, m.

carry

boat, nāvigium, nāvī’gī, n.

body, corpus, -oris, n.

bold, audāx, -ācis; fortis, -e

boldly, audācter; fortiter

boldness, audācia, -ae, f.

booty, praeda, -ae, f.

both, each (of two), uterque, utraque, both . . . and, et . . . et

boy, puer, -erī, m.

brave, fortis, -e

bravely, fortiter

bridge, pōns, pontis, m.

bright, clārus, -a, -um

bring back, reportō, i

bring upon, ūnferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, with acc. and dat. (§ 426)

brother, frāter, -tris, m.

building, aedificium, aedīfī’cī, n.

burn, cremō, i; incendō, 3

business, negotium, negō’tī, n.

but, however, autem, sed

by, ā, ab, with abl.; denoting means, abl. alone; sometimes implied in a participle

by night, noctū

C

Caesar, Caesar, -aris, m.

calamity, calamītās, -ātis, f.

call, vocō, i; appellō, i; nōminō, i

call together, convocō, i

camp, castra, -ōrum, n.plur.

can, could, possum, posse, potui, — (§ 495)

capture, capiō, 3; occupō, i

care, cūra, -ae, f.

care for, cūrō, -rō

careful, attentus, -a, -um

carefulness, diligentia, -ae, f.

carry, ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus (§ 498); portō, i
carry on, gerō, 3
cart, carrus, -i, m.
cause, causa, -ae, f.
cavalry, equitātus, -ūs, m.
cease, cessō, 1
Cepheus, Cēpheus, -i, m.
certain (a), quidam, quaedam, quoddam
(chquiddam) ($485)
choose, deīligō, 3
choose, elect, creō, 1
citizen, cīvis, -is, m. and f. ($243. i)
city, urbs, urbīs, /.
clear; clārus, -a, -um
cohort, cohors, -rtis, /.
come, venīō, 4
command, imperō, 1, with dat.
($45); iubeō, 2; praesum, with
dat. ($426)
commit, committō, 3
commonwealth, rēs pública, rei públicae
cconcerning, dē, with abl.
conquer, superō, 1; vincō, 3
construct (a ditch), perdūcō, 3
consul, cōnsul, -ulis, m.
contrary to, contrā, with acc.
Corinth, Corinthus; -i, f.
Cornelia, Cornēlia, -ae, f.
Cornelius, Cornēlius, Cornēlii, m.
corselet, lōrica, -ae, f.
cottage, casa, -ae, f.
country, as distinguished from the city,
rūs, rūris, n.; as territory, finēs, -ium,
m., plur. of finis

courage, virtūs, -ūtis, f.
crime, scelus, -eris, n.
cross, trānseō, 4 ($499)
crown, corōna, -ae, f.
daily, cotīdiē
danger, periculum, -ī, n.
daughter, filiā, -ae, f. ($67)
day, diēs, -ēī, m.
daybreak, prīma lūx
dear, cārus, -a, -um
death, mors, mortis, f.
deed, rēs, rei, f.
deep, altus, -a, -um
defeat, calamītās, -ātis, f.
defend, défendō, 3
delay (noun), mora, -ae, f.
delay (verb), moror, 1
demand, postulō, 1
dense, dēnus, -a, -um
depart, discēdō, 3; exeō, 4; proficiscor, 3
dependent, cliēns, -entis, m.
design, cōnsilium, consīlī, n.
desire, cupiō, 3
destroy, déleō, 2
Diana, Dīāna, -ae, f.
differ, differō, differre, distulī, dilātus
($498)
different, dissimilis, -e
difficult, difficilis, -e
difficulty, difficulītās, -ātis, f.
diligence, diligentia, -ae, f.
dinner, cēna, -ae, f.
disaster, calamītās, -ātis, f.
distant (be), absum, -esē, āfuī, āfūtūrus ($494)
ditch, fossa, -ae, f.
do, agō, 3; faciō, 3; when used as auxiliary, not translated
down from, dē, with abl.
drag, trahō, 3
drive, agō, 3
dwell, habitō, 1; incolō, 3; vīvō, 3
dwelling, aedificium, aedīficī, n.
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

full

find, reperiō, 4
finish, cōnficiō, 3
fire, ignis, -is, m. (§ 243.1)
firmness, cōnstantia, -ae, f.
first, prīmus, -a, -um
flee, fugiō, 3
flight, fuga, -ae, f.
fly, volō, 1
foe, see enemy
follow close after, subsequor, 3
food, cibus, -i, m.
foot, pēs, pedis, m.
foot-soldier, pedes, -itis, m.
for (conj.), enim, nam
for (prep.), sign of dat.; dē, prō, with abl.; to express purpose, ad, with gerundive; implied in acc. of time and of extent of space
for a long time, diū
forbid, vētō, 1
forces, cōpiae, -ārum, f., plur. of cōpia
forest, silva, -ae, f.
fort, castellum, -i, n.; castrum, -i, n.
fortification, mūnītiō, -onis, f.
fortify, mūniō, 4
fortune, fortūna, -ae, f.
fourth, quārtus, -a, -um
free, liber, -era, -erum
free, liberate, liberō, 1
frequent, crēber, -bra, -brum
friend, amīcus, -i, m.
friendly (adj.), amīcus, -a, -um
friendly (adv.), amīcē
friendship, amīcitia, -ae, f.
frighten, perterreo, 2
from, ā or ab, dē, ē, ex, with abl. Often expressed by the separative ablative without a prep.
from each other, inter, with acc. of a reflexive pron.
full, plēnus, -a, -um

each

E

each, quīsque, quaeque, quidque (quodque) (§ 484)
each of two, uterque, utraque, utrumque
each other, inter with acc. of a reflexive
eager, āer, ācris, ācre; alacer, alacris, alacre
eager (be), studeō, 2
eagerness, studium, studi, n.
eagle, aquīla, -ae, f.
easily, facē

F

faithless, perfidus, -a, -um
famous, clārus, -a, -um
far, longē
farmer, agricola, -ae, m.
farther, ulterior, -ius
father, pater, patris, m.
fatherland, patria, -ae, f.
favor, faveō, 2
favorable, idōneus, -a, -um; secundus, -a, -um
fear, metus, -ūs, m.; timor, -ōris, m.
fear, be afraid, timeō, 2
few, pauci, -ae, -a
field, ager, agrī, m.
fifteen, quīndecim
fight, contendō, 3; pugnō, 1

enough, satis
ten, tōtus, -a, -um (§ 108)
expectation, opinio, -onis, f.
eye, oculus, -i, m.

faithful, amīcē

from, ā or ab, dē, ē, ex, with abl. Often expressed by the separative ablative without a prep.

from each other, inter, with acc. of a reflexive pron.

full, plēnus, -a, -um
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Galba, Galba, -ae, m.</td>
<td>Garland, corona, -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Garrison, praesidium, praesi’dii, n.</td>
<td>Gate, porta, -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gaul, Gallia, -ae, f.</td>
<td>Gaul (a), Gallus, -i, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General, imperator, -oris, m.</td>
<td>Geneva, Genava, -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gentle, lenis, -e</td>
<td>German, Germanus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Germans (the), Germani, -orum, m. plur.</td>
<td>Germany, Germania, -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Get (dinner), paro, i</td>
<td>Girl, puella, -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Give, dō, dare, dēdi, datus</td>
<td>Give over, surrender, dēdō, 3; trādō, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Give up, omitto, 3</td>
<td>Go, eō, 4 (§ 499)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Go forth, prōgressio, 3</td>
<td>God, deus, -i, m. (§ 468)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goddess, dea, -ae, f. (§ 67)</td>
<td>Gold, aurum, -i, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Good, bonus, -a, -um</td>
<td>Grain, frumentum, -i, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grain supply, rēs frumentāria</td>
<td>Great, ingēns, -entis; magnus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greatest, maximus, -a, -um; summus, -a, -um</td>
<td>Guard, praesidium, praesi’dii, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hand, manus, -ūs, f.</td>
<td>Happy, laetus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Harbor, portus, -ūs, m.</td>
<td>Hasten, contendor, 3; māturō, 1; progressō, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hateful, invisus, -a, -um</td>
<td>Haughty, superbus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Have, habeō, 2</td>
<td>Have no power, nihil possum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He, is; hic; iste; ille; or not expressed</td>
<td>Head, caput, -itis, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hear, audiō, 4</td>
<td>Heart, animus, -i, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heavy, gravis, -e</td>
<td>Helvetti (the), Helvētii, -orum, m. plur.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hem in, contineō, 2</td>
<td>Hen, gallina, -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Himself, sui. See self</td>
<td>Hindrance, impedimentum, -i, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hide, abdō, 3</td>
<td>His, eius; huius; istūs; illūs; reflexive, suus, -a, -um (§ 116)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High, altus, -a, -um</td>
<td>Highest, summus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hill, collis, -is, m.</td>
<td>Himself, sui. See self</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hold, tendō, 2</td>
<td>Home, domus, -ūs, f. (§ 468). at home, domī (§ 267)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hope (noun), spēs, spei, f.</td>
<td>Hope (verb), sperō, i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Horse, equus, -i, m.</td>
<td>Horseman, eques, -itis, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hostage, obsequies, -idis, m. and f.</td>
<td>Hostile, inimicus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hour, hōra, -ae, f.</td>
<td>House, domicilium, domici’li, n.; domus, -ūs, f. (§ 468)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hurl, iacio, 3</td>
<td>I, ego (§ 280); or not expressed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If, si. if not, nisi</td>
<td>Ill, aeger, -gra, -grum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Immediately, statim</td>
<td>In (of place), in, with abl.; (of time or of specification) abl. without prep.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Latin</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in order that, ut, <em>with subj.</em></td>
<td>in order that, <em>not, lest, nē,</em> <em>with subj.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in vain, frūstrā</td>
<td>in vain, <em>nē,</em> <em>with subj.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>industry, æ, <em>f.</em></td>
<td>industry, <em>æ, f.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inflict injuries upon, injūriās inferō <em>with dat.</em> (§ 426)</td>
<td>inflict injuries upon, <em>injūria, -ae,</em> <em>f.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inflict punishment on, supplicium</td>
<td>inflict punishment on, <em>supplicium</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inform some one, aliquem certiōrem faciō</td>
<td>inform some one, <em>aliquem,</em> <em>certiōrem</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>injure, noceō, <em>with dat.</em> (§ 153)</td>
<td>injure, <em>noceō,</em> <em>with dat.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>into, in, <em>with acc.</em></td>
<td>into, in, <em>with acc.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intrust, committō, 3; mandō, 1</td>
<td>intrust, <em>committō,</em> <em>3; mandō,</em> <em>1</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>invite, vocō, 1</td>
<td>invite, <em>vocō,</em> <em>1</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is, <em>used as auxiliary,</em> not translated; as a copula, sum (§ 494)</td>
<td>is, <em>used as auxiliary,</em> not translated; as a copula, <em>sum</em> (§ 494)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>island, insula, <em>ae, f.</em></td>
<td>island, <em>insula, -ae,</em> <em>f.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it, is; hie; iste; ille; or not expressed</td>
<td>it, <em>is; hie; iste; ille; or not expressed</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>its, eius; huius; istūs; illūs; reflexive, suus, -a, -um (§ 116)</td>
<td>its, <em>eius; huius; istūs; illūs; reflexive,</em> suus, <em>-a, -um</em> (§ 116)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>itself, sui. See self</td>
<td>itself, <em>sui.</em> See self</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>join battle, proelium committō</td>
<td>join battle, <em>proelium committō</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>journey, iter, itineris, <em>n.</em> (§ 468)</td>
<td>journey, <em>iter, itineris, n.</em> (§ 468)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>judge (noun), iūdex, -icis, <em>m.</em></td>
<td>judge (noun), <em>iūdex,</em> <em>-icis,</em> <em>m.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>judge (verb), iūdicō, 1</td>
<td>judge (verb), <em>iūdicō,</em> <em>1</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>just now, nüpēr</td>
<td>just now, <em>nüpēr</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keep, contineō, 2; prohibēō, 2; teneō, 2</td>
<td>keep, <em>contineō,</em> <em>2; prohibēō,</em> <em>2; teneō,</em> <em>2</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keep on doing something, expressed by the impf. indic.</td>
<td>keep on doing something, expressed by the impf. indic.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kill, interficīō, 3; necō, 1; occidō, 3</td>
<td>kill, <em>interficīō,</em> <em>3; necō,</em> <em>1; occidō,</em> <em>3</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>king, rēx, rēgis, <em>m.</em></td>
<td>king, <em>rēx,</em> <em>rēgis,</em> <em>m.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kingdom, rēgnum, -i, <em>n.</em></td>
<td>kingdom, <em>rēgnum, -i, n.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>know, cognōscō, 3, <em>in perf.; scio,</em> 4</td>
<td>know, <em>cognōscō,</em> <em>3, in perf.; scio,</em> <em>4</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>love</td>
<td>love</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>labor (noun), labor, -ōris, <em>m.</em></td>
<td>labor (noun), <em>labor, -ōris,</em> <em>m.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>labor (verb), labōrō, 1</td>
<td>labor (verb), <em>labōrō,</em> <em>1</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lack (noun), inopia, -ae, <em>f.</em></td>
<td>lack (noun), <em>inopia,</em> <em>-ae,</em> <em>f.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lack (verb), egeō, 2, <em>with abl.</em> (§ 180)</td>
<td>lack (verb), <em>egēō,</em> <em>2, with abl.</em> (§ 180)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lady, domina, -ae, <em>f.</em></td>
<td>lady, <em>domina, -ae,</em> <em>f.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lake, lacus, -ūs, <em>m.</em> (§ 260. 2)</td>
<td>lake, <em>lacus,</em> <em>-ūs, m.</em> (§ 260. 2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>land, terra, -ae, <em>f.</em></td>
<td>land, <em>terra, -ae,</em> <em>f.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>language, lingua, -ae, <em>f.</em></td>
<td>language, <em>lingua, -ae,</em> <em>f.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>large, ingēns, -entis; magnus, -a, -um</td>
<td>large, <em>ingēns,</em> -entis; <em>magnus,</em> <em>-a,</em> <em>-um</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>larger, maior, <em>maius</em></td>
<td>larger, <em>maior,</em> <em>maius</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lately, nüpēr</td>
<td>lately, <em>nüpēr</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Latona, Lātōna, -ae, <em>f.</em></td>
<td>Latona, <em>Lātōna, -ae,</em> <em>f.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>law, lēx, légis, <em>f.</em></td>
<td>law, <em>lēx, légis,</em> <em>f.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lay waste, vāstō, 1</td>
<td>lay waste, <em>vāstō,</em> <em>1</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lead, dūcō, 3</td>
<td>lead, <em>dūcō,</em> <em>3</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leader, dux, ducis, <em>m. and f.</em></td>
<td>leader, <em>dux,</em> <em>ducis, m. and f.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>learn, know, cognōscō, 3</td>
<td>learn, <em>know,</em> <em>cognōscō,</em> <em>3</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leave, depart from, discēdō, 3</td>
<td>leave, <em>depart from,</em> <em>discēdō,</em> <em>3</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leave behind, abandon, relinquō, 3</td>
<td>leave behind, <em>abandon,</em> <em>relinquō,</em> <em>3</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>left, sinister, -tra, -trum</td>
<td>left, <em>sinister, -tra, -trum</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>legionaries, legiōnāriī, -ōrum, <em>m. plur.</em></td>
<td>legionaries, <em>legiōnāriī,</em> -ōrum, <em>m. plur.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>letter (of the alphabet), littera, -ae, <em>f.</em>; (an epistle) litterae, -arum, <em>f. plur.</em></td>
<td>letter (of the alphabet), <em>littera,</em> <em>-ae,</em> <em>f.</em>; (an epistle) <em>litterae,</em> -arum, <em>f. plur.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>like (adj.), similis, -e</td>
<td>like (adj.), <em>similis,</em> <em>-e</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>like, love, amō, 1</td>
<td>like, <em>love, amō,</em> <em>1</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>line of battle, acīēs, acīēī, <em>f.</em></td>
<td>line of battle, <em>acīēs, acīēī,</em> <em>f.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>little, parvus, -a, -um</td>
<td>little, <em>parvus,</em> -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>live, habitō, 1; incolō, 3; vivō, 3</td>
<td>live, <em>habitō,</em> <em>1; incolō,</em> <em>3; vivō,</em> <em>3</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long, longus, -a, -um</td>
<td>long, <em>longus,</em> -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long, for a long time, diū</td>
<td>long, <em>for, diū</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long for, désiderō, 1</td>
<td>long for, <em>désiderō,</em> <em>1</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look after, currō, 1</td>
<td>look after, <em>currō,</em> <em>1</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>love, amō, 1</td>
<td>love, <em>amō,</em> <em>1</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Maid

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>maid</td>
<td>ancilla, -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>servant</td>
<td>ancilla, -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Make

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>make</td>
<td>faciō, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>war</td>
<td>bellum inferō with dat. (§ 426)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Man

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>man</td>
<td>homō, -inis, m. and f.; vir, viri, m.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Man-of-war

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>man-of-war</td>
<td>nāvis longa</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### MANY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>many</td>
<td>multi, -ae, -a, plur. of multus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### March

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>march</td>
<td>itineris, n. (§ 468)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Mark

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mark</td>
<td>Marcus, -i, m.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Marriage

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>marriage</td>
<td>mātrimōniwm, mātrimōniwm, -i, n.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Master

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>master</td>
<td>dominus, -i, m.; magister, -tri, m.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Matter

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>matter</td>
<td>negotium, negō'ti, n.; rēs, rēi, f.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Means

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>means</td>
<td>by means of, the abl.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Messenger

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>messenger</td>
<td>nūntius, nūntī, m.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Midnight

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>midnight</td>
<td>media nox</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Mile

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mile</td>
<td>mille passuum (§ 331. b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miles</td>
<td>milia passuum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Mind

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mind</td>
<td>animus, -i, m.; mēns, mentis, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mine</td>
<td>meus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Mistress

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mistress</td>
<td>domina, -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Money

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>money</td>
<td>pecūnia, -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Monster

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monster</td>
<td>mōnstrum, -i, n.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Month

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>month</td>
<td>mēnsis, -is, m.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Moon

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>moon</td>
<td>lūna, -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### More

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>more</td>
<td>plūs, plūris (§ 313); or a comparative. Adverb, magis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Most

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>most</td>
<td>plūrimus, -a, -um; superl. degree. Adverb, maximē; plūrimum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Mother

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mother</td>
<td>māter, mātris, f.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Mountain

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mountain</td>
<td>mōns, montis, m.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Move

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>move</td>
<td>moveō, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moved</td>
<td>commōtus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Much

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>much</td>
<td>multō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Multitude

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>multitude</td>
<td>multitudō, -inis, f.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Myself

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>myself</td>
<td>mē, reflexive. See self</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Once

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>once</td>
<td>name, nōmen, -inis, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nation, gēns, gentis, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>near, propīnqus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nearest, proximus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nearly, ferē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>neighbor, finitimus, -i, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>neighboring, finitimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>neither, neque or nec; neither ... nor, neque (nec) ... neque (nec)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>never, numquam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nevertheless, tamen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>new, novus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>next day, postrīdiē eius dieī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>next to, proximus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>night, nox, noctis, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nine, novem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>no, minimē; or repeat verb with a negative (§ 210)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>no, none, nullus, -a, -um (§ 109)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>no one; nēmō, nullīus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nor, neque or nec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>not, nōn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>not even, nē ... quidem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>not only ... but also, nōn sōlum sed etiam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nothing, nihil or nihilum, -i, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>now, nunc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>number, numerus, -i, m.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### O

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>obey</td>
<td>pāreō, 2, with dat. (§ 153)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of, sign of gen.; dē, with abl.; out of, ē or ex, with abl.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>often</td>
<td>saepe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on (of place), in, with abl.; (of time) abl. without prep.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on account of, propter, with acc.; or abl. of cause</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on all sides, undique</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>once (upon a time), ōlim</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
one, ūnus, -a, -um (§ 108)
one ... another, alius ... alius (§ 110)
only (adv.), sōlum; tantum
opportune, opportūnus, -a, -um
opposite, adversus, -a, -um
oracle, ērāculum, -i, n.
orator, ērātor, -ōris, m.
order, ēmpērō, 1; iūbeō, 2
ornament, ērnāmentum, -i, n.
other, alius, -a, -ud (§ 109)
others (the), reliquī, -ōrum, m. plur.
ought, dēbeō, 2
our, nostēr, -tra, -trum
ourselves, nōs, as reflexive object. See self
overcome, superō, 1; vincō, 3
own (his, her, its, their), suus, -a, -um

P
part, pars, partis, f.
peace, pāx, pācis, f.
people, populus, -i, m.
Perseus, Perseus, -i, m.
persuade, persuādeō, 2, with dat. (§ 153)
pitch camp, castra pōnō
place (noun), locus, -i, m.
place, arrange, conlocō, 1
place, put, pōnō, 3
place in command, praeficio, 3, with acc. and dat. (§ 426)
plan (a), cōnsilium, cōnsīliī, n.
please, placeō, 2, with dat. (§ 154)
pleasing, grātus, -a, -um
plow, arō, 1
Pompeii, Pompēii, -ōrum, m. plur.
possible (as), expressed by quam and superl.
powerful (be), valeō, 2
praise, laudō, 1

rest
prefer, mālō, mālle, māluī,—(§ 497)
prepare for, parō, 1, with acc.
press hard, premō, 3
protection, fīdēs, fīdeī, f.
province, prōvincia, -ae, f.
public, públicus, -a, -um
Publius, Pūblius, Pūbliī, m.
punishment, poena, -ae, f.; suppli-
cium, supplīcī, n.
purpose, for the purpose of, ut, qui, or quō, with subjv.; ad, with ger-
und or gerundive; causā, following the genitive of a gerund or gerun-
dive
pursue, insequor, 3
Q
queen, rēgīna, -ae, f.
quickly, celeriter
quite, expressed by the comp. degree
R
rampart, vālum, -i, n.
rear, novissimum agmen
reason, causa, -ae, f.
receive, accipiō, 3; excipiō, 3
recent, recēns, -entis
recently, nūper
redoubt, castellum, -i, n.
refuse, recūsō, 1
remain, manēō, 2
remaining, reliquus, -a, -um
reply, respondeō, 2
report (noun), fāma, -ae, f.; rūmor,
-ōris, m.
report (verb), adferō; déferō; referō
(§ 498)
republic, rēs pūblica
require, postulō, 1
resist, resistō, 3, with dat. (§ 154)
rest (the), reliquī, -ōrum, m. plur.
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

restrain
restrain, contineō, 2
retainer, cliēns, -entis, m.
retreat, pedem referō; terga vertō
return, redeō, 4; revertor, 3
revolution, rēs novae
Rhine, Rhēnus, -i, m.
right, dexter, -tra, -trum
river, flēmen, -inis, n.; fluvius, fluviī, m.
road, via, -ae, f.
Roman, Rōmānus, -a, -um
row, ārdō, -inis, m.
rule, regō, 3
rumor, fāma, -ae, f.; rūmor, -ōris, m.
run, currō, 3
S
sacrifice, sacrum, -ī, n.
safety, salus, -ūtis, f.
sail, nāvigō, 1
sailor, nauta, -ae, m.
sake, for the sake of, causā, following
same, idem, eadem, idem (§ 287)
savages, barbarī, -orum, m. plur.
save, servō, 1
say, dico, 3
school, lūdus, -ī, m.; schola, -ae, f.
scout, explōrātor, -ōris, m.
sea, mare, -is, n.
second, secundus, -a, -um
see, videō, 2
seek, petō, 3
seem, videor, 2, passive of videō
seize, occupō, 1; rapīō, 3
self, ipse, -a, -um (§ 286); suī (§ 281)
send, mittō, 3
set fire to, incendō, 3
set out, proficīscor, 3
seven, septem
Sextus, Sextus, -i, m.
stand, sto, 1
she, ea; haec; ista; illa (§ 115); or not expressed
ship, nāvis, -is, f. (§ 243. 1); nāvigium, short, brevis, -e
shout, clāmor, -ōris, m.
show, dēmōnstrō, 1
Sicily, Sīcilia, -ae, f.
sick, aeger, -gra, -grum
side, latus, -eris, n.
siege, obsidiō, -ōnis, f.
since, cum, with subjv. (§ 396); the abl. abs. (§ 381)
sing, canō, 3; cantō, 1
sister, sorōr, -ōris, f.
sit, sedēō, 2
size, magnitūdō, -inis, f.
skillful, perītus, -a, -um
slave, servus, -i, m.
slavery, servitūs, -ūtis, f.
slow, tardus, -a, -um
small, parvus, -a, -um
snatch, rapīō, 3
so, ita; sic; tam
so great, tantus, -a, -um
so that, ut; so that not, ut nōn
soldier, miles, -itis, m.
some, often not expressed; quis (qui), qua (quae), quid (quod); aliquī, alīqua, alīquod
some one, quis; alīquis (§ 487)
some ... others, alī ... alīi (§ 110)
something, quid; alīquid (§ 487)
son, filius, filī, m.
soon, mox
space, spatium, spatiī, n.
spear, pilum, -ī, n.
spirited, acer, acris, acre; alacer, alacris, alacre
spring, fōns, fontis, m.
spur, calcar, -aris, n.
stand, stō, 1
state, cīvītas, -ātis, f.
station, conlocō, i
steadiness, cōnstantia, -ae, f.
stone, lapis, -idis, m.
storm, fābula, -ae, f.
story, via, -ae, f.
strength, vis, (vis),/ strength, fortis, -e; validus, -a, -um
sturdy, validus, -a, -um
such, tālis, -e
suddenly, subitō
suffer punishment, supplicium dō
sufficiently, satis
suitable, idōneus, -a, -um
summer, aestas, -ātis, f.
sun, sol, solis, m.
supplies, commeātus, -ūs, m.
surrender, trādō, 3
suspect, suspicor, i
swift, celer, -eris, -ere; vēlōx, -ōcis
sword, gladius, gladi, m.

T
take, capture, capiō, 3
take part in, intersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, with dat. (§ 426)
take possession of, occupō, i
tall, altus, -a, -um
task, opus, operis, n.
teach, doceō, 2
teacher, magister, -trī, m.
tear (noun), lacrima, -ae, f.
tell, dicō, 3; nārrō, i
ten, decem
terrified, perterrēitus, -a, -um
terrify, perterreō, 2
than, quam
that (conj. after verbs of saying and the like), not expressed
that (pron.), is; iste; ille
tree, in order that, in purpose clauses, ut; after verbs of fearing, nē (§§ 349, 366, 372)
that not, lest, in purpose clauses, nē; after verbs of fearing, ut (§§ 349, 366, 372)
the, not expressed
their, gen. plur. of is; reflexive, suus, -a, -um (§ 116)
their own, suus, -a, -um (§ 116)
then, at that time, tum
then, in the next place, deinde, tum
there, as expletive, not expressed
there, in that place, ibi
therefore, itaque
they, iī; hi; istī; illī; or not expressed
think, arbitror, 1; existimo, 1; putō, 1
third, tertius, -a, -um
this, hic, haec, hoc; is, ea, id
though, cum, with subjv. (§ 396)
thousand, mille (§ 479)
three, trēs, tria (§ 479)
through, per, with acc.
thy, tuus, -a, -um
time, tempus, -oris, n.
to, sign of dat.; ad, in, with acc.; expressing purpose, ut, quī, with subjv.; ad, with gerund or gerundive
to each other, inter, with acc. of a reflexive pron.
to-day, hodie
toilsome, dūrus, -a, -um
tooth, dēns, dentis, m.
top of, summus, -a, -um
tower, turris, -is, f. (§ 243. 2)
town, oppidum, -i, n.
townsman, oppidanus, -i, m.
trace, vestigium, vestīgium, n.
trader, mercātor, -ōris, m.
train, exercēō, 2
tree, arbītrī, -oris, f.
tribe

tribe, gēn̂s, gentis, f.

troops, cópiae, -ārum, f. plur.

true, vēr̂us, -a, -um

trumpet, tuba, -ae, f.

try, cōnor, i; temptō, i

twelve, duodecim

two, duo, duae, duo (§ 479)

under, sub, with acc. or abl.

undertake, suscipio, 3

unharmed, incol̄̄mis, -e

unless, nisi

unlike, dissimilis, -e

unwilling (be), nōłō, nōlle, nōlui, ——— (§ 497)

up to, sub, with acc.

us, nōs, acc. plur. of ego

very, superl. degree; maximē; ipse,-a, -um (§ 285)

victor, victor, -ōris, m.

victory, victoria, -ae, f.

village, vicus, -i, m.

violence, vīs, (vīs), f.

violently, vehementer

voice, vōx, vocis, f.

wage, gerō, 3

wagon, carrus, -i, m.

wall, mūrus, -i, m.

want; inopia, -ae, f.

war, bellum, -i, n.

watch, vigilia, -ae, f.

water, aqua, -ae, f.

wave, fluctus, -ūs, m.

way, iter, itineris, n. (§ 468); via, -ae, f.

way, manner, modus, -i, m.

we, nōs, plur. of ego; or not expressed

woman

weak, ōn̄̄firmus, -a, -um

weapons, arma, -ōrum, n. plur.; tēla, -ōrum, n. plur.

wear, gerō, 3

weary, dēfessus, -a, -um

what, quis (qui), quae, quid (quod) (§ 483)

when, ubi; cum (§ 396); often expressed by a participle

where, ubi

which, qui, quae, quod (§ 482); which of two, uter, utra, utrum (§ 108)

while, expressed by a participle

whither, quō

who (rel.), qui, quae (§ 482); (interrog.) quis (§ 483)

whole, tōtus, -a, -um (§ 108)

whose, cuius, quōrum, quārum, quōrum, gen. of qui, quae, quod, rel.; or of quis, quid, interrog.

why, cūr

wicked, malus, -a, -um

wide, lātus, -a, -um

width, lātitūdō, -inis, f.

wild beast, fera, -ae, f.

willing (be), volō, velle, volui, ——— (§ 497)

win (a victory), reportō, i

wind, ventus, -i, m.

wine, vīnum, -i, n.

wing, cornū, -ūs, n.

winter, hiems, -emis, f.

wisdom, consilium, consilium, n.

wish, cupiō, 3; volō, velle, volui, ——— (§ 497); wish not, nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, ——— (§ 497)

with, cum, with abl.; sometimes abl. alone

withdraw, sē recipere

without, sine, with abl.

woman, fēmina, -ae, f.; mulier, -eris, f.
wonderful

wonderful, mīrus, -a, -um
word, verbum, -i, n.
work, labor, -ōris, m.; opus, -eris, n.
worse, peior, peius, comp. of malus
worst, pessimus, -a, -um, superl. of malus
wound (noun), vulnus, -eris, n.
wound (verb), vulnerō, i
wreath, corōna, -ae, f.
wretched, miser, -era, -erum
wrong, iniūria, -ae, f.

zeal

year, annus, -i, m.
yes, certē; ita; vērō; or, more usually,
repeat the verb (§ 210)
yonder (that), ille, -a, -ud
you, sing. tū; plur. vōs (§ 480); or not expressed
your, sing. tuus, -a, -um; plur. vester,
-tra, -trum (§ 98. b)

zeal, studium, studī, n.
INDEX

The numbers in all cases refer to sections.

ā-declension of nouns, 57, 461
ā-verbs, conjugation of, 488
ablative case, 48, 50
absolute, 381
after a comparative, 309
of accompaniment, 104
of agent, 181
of cause, 102
of description, 444, 445
of manner, 105
of means or instrument, 103
of measure of difference, 317
of place from which, 179, 264
of place where, 265
of separation, 180
of specification, 398
of time, 275
accent, 14–16
accompanyment, abl. of, 104
accusative case, 33
as subject of the infinitive, 214
object, 37
of duration and extent, 336
of place to which, 263, 266
predicate, 392
with prepositions, 340
adjectives, 54, 55
agreement, 65
comparison, regular, 301; by adverbs, 302; irregular, 307, 311, 312, 315
decision of comparatives, 303
of first and second declensions, 83, 93, 469
of third declension, 250–257, 471
with the dative, 143
adverbs, 319
comparison, 320, 323
formation, regular, 320, 321; irregular, 322, 323
agent, expressed by the abl. with ā or ab, 181
agreement
of adjectives, 65, 215: a
of appositives, 81
of predicate nouns, 76
of relative pronouns, 224
of verbs, 28
aliquis, 487
alius, 108, 110, 470
alphabet, 1–3
alter, 108, 110
antepenult, 9. 3; accent of, 15
apposition, 80, 81
article, not used in Latin, 22. a
base, 58
cardinal numerals, 327–329, 478
case, 32. 2
causal clauses with cum, 395, 396
cause, expressed by the abl., 102
characteristic, subjv. of, 389, 390
comparative, declension of, 303
comparison
abl. of, 309
degrees of, 300
of adjectives, 300–315; irregular, 311–315, 473, 475
of adverbs, regular, 320, 475; irregular, 323, 477
positive wanting, 315
six adjectives in -lis, 307
complementary infinitive, 215
compound verbs, with the dative, 425, 426

344
INDEX

concessive clauses with cum, 395, 396
conjugation stems, 184
conjugations, the four regular, 126.
488-491; irregular, 494-500
consonants, 2
copula, 21
cum, conjunction, 395
cum, preposition, 209
dative case, 43
of indirect object, 44, 45
of purpose, or end for which, 437
with adjectives, 143
with compound verbs, 426
with special verbs, 153
da, declension of, 67
decentration, 23, 32
degree of difference, expressed by the abl., 317
demonstrative adjectives and pronouns, 112-115, 290-292; 481
deponent verbs, 338, 339, 493
descriptive ablative and genitive, 441-445
descriptive relative clause, with the subjv., 389, 390
daus, declension of, 468
difference, measure of, 316, 317
diphthongs, 6
direct statements, 414
distributive numerals, 327.3, 334
domi, locative, 267
domus, declension of, 468
duo, declension of, 479
duration of time, expressed by the acc., 336

d-declension of nouns, 272, 273, 467
d-verbs, conjugation of, 489
d-verbs, conjugation of, 490
dego, declension of, 280, 480
dclitics, 16
de, conjugation of, 499
extent of space, expressed by the acc., 336
fearing, subjv. after verbs of, 370-372
fero, conjugation of, 498
fifth or e-declension, 272, 273, 467
filia, declension of, 67
filius, declension of, 87-89
finite verb, defined, 173
fio, conjugation of, 500
first conjugation, 488
first or a-declension, 57, 461
fourth conjugation, 491
fourth or u-declension, 259, 260, 466
from, how expressed, 178-181
future participle, formation of, 374-375
future perfect, formation of, active, 187.3; passive, 202
future tense, formation of, 137, 156
gender
in English and in Latin, 60
in the first declension, 61
in the second declension, 72
in the third declension, 247
in the fourth declension, 260
in the fifth declension, 272
general observations on declension, 74
genitive case
English equivalents of, 33
of description, 443, 445
of nouns in -ius and -ium, 87
partitive, 331
possessive, 38, 409
gerund, a verbal noun, 402, 403
gerundive, a verbal adjective, 404;
with ad to express purpose, 407
hic, declension and use of, 290, 291
how to read Latin, 17
i, consonant, 3
i-stems of nouns, 231, 241-244
i-verbs, conjugation of, 491
idem, declension of, 287, 481
iensa, declension of, 472
ille, declension and use of, 290-293, 481
imperative, formation of 161, 175; irregular, 161.2 · in commands, 161
imperfect indicative, formation and use of, 133, 134, 165.1
imperfect subjunctive, 354
indefinite pronouns and adjectives, 296, 297, 484-487
independent clauses, 219
indirect object, 44, 45
indirect questions, 430-432
indirect statements, 414-419
infinitive
as object, 213
as subject, 216
complementary, 215
definition of, 173
does not express purpose, 352
formation of, 126, 174, 205, 206
in indirect statements, 415-419
used as in English, 213-216
inflection, defined, 23
instrument, abl. of, 100. a, 103
intensive pronoun, ipse, declension and use of, 285, 286, 481
interrogative pronouns and adjectives, 225-227, 483
intransitive verbs, defined, 20. a; with the dative, 153
ô-verbs of the third conj., 492
ipse, declension and use of, 285, 481
irregular adjectives, 108
irregular comparison, of adjectives, 307, 311, 312; of adverbs, 323
irregular nouns, 67, 246, 468
irregular verbs, 494-500
is, declension and use of, 113-116
iste, declension and use of, 290, 292, 481
iter, declension of, 468
Latin word order, 68
locative case, 267
magis and maximê, comparison by, 302
malô, conjugation of, 497
manner, abl. of, 105
means, abl. of, 103
measure of difference, abl. of, 316, 317
mille, declension of, 479; construction with, 331. a, b
moods, defined, 121
-ne, enclitic, in questions, 210
nê, conj., that not, lest, with negative clauses of purpose, 350. II; with verbs of fearing, 370
nine irregular adjectives, 108-110
nöîô, conjugation of, 497
nominative case, 35, 36
nönne, in questions, 210
nös, declension of, 280, 480
nouns, 19.2
first declension, 57, 461
second declension, 71-74, 87-92, 462
third declension, 230-247, 463-465
fourth declension, 259, 260, 466
fifth declension, 272, 273, 467
num, in questions, 210
number, 24
numerals, 327-334, 478, 479
o-declension of nouns, 71-74, 87-92, 462
object, 20; direct, 37; indirect, 44, 45
order of words, 68
ordinal numerals, 327.2, 478
participial stem, 201.2
participles, defined, 203
agreement of, 204
formation of present, 374. b; of perfect, 201; of future, 374. c, d
of deponent verbs, 375
tenses of, 376
translated by a clause, 377
partitive genitive, 330, 331
passive voice, defined, 330; formation of, 164, 202
penult, 9.3; accent of, 15
perfect indicative
formation, in the active, 185, 186;
in the passive, 202
meaning of, 190
definite, 190
indefinite, 190
distinguished from the imperfect, 190
perfect infinitive, active, 195; passive, 205
perfect passive participle, 201
perfect stem, 185
perfect subjunctive, active, 361; passive, 362
person, 122
personal endings, active, 122; passive, 164
personal pronouns, 280, 480
place, where, whither, whence, 263–265;
names of towns and domus and rūs, 266–268
pluperfect indicative, active, 187.2; passive, 202
pluperfect subjunctive, active, 361; passive, 363
plūs, declension of, 313
possessive pronouns, 97, 98
possum, conjugation of, 495
predicate, defined, 19
predicate adjective, defined, 55
predicate noun, 75, 76
prepositions, with the abl., 209; with the acc., 340
present indicative, 128, 130, 147
present stem, 126. a
present subjunctive, 344
primary tenses, 356
principal parts, 183
pronouns
classification of, 278
defined, 19. 2. a
demonstrative, 481
indefinite, 297, 484–487
intensive, 285, 286, 481
interrogative, 483
personal, 480
possessive, 97, 98
reflexive, 281
relative, 220, 221
pronunciation, 4–7
prōsum, conjugation of, 496
purpose
dative of, 436, 437
expressed by the gerund or gerundive with ad, 407
not expressed by the infinitive, 352
subjunctive of, 348–350, 365–367
quality, gen. or abl. of, 441–445
quam, with a comparative, 308
quantity, 11–13
questions, direct, 210; indirect, 430–432
qui, declension and use of, 220, 221, 482
quidam, declension of, 485
quis, declension and use of, 225–227, 483
quisquam, declension of, 486
quisque, declension of, 484
reflexive pronouns, 281
relative clauses of characteristic or description, 389, 390
relative clauses of purpose, 348, 349
relative pronouns, 220, 221
result clauses, 384–387
reviews, 502–528
rūs, constructions of, 266
sē, distinguished from ipse, 285. a
second conjugation, 489
second or o-declension, 71–93, 462
sentences, simple, complex compound, 219
separation, abl. of, 180
separative ablative, 178–181
sequence of tenses, 356–358
space, extent of, expressed by the acc., 336
specification, abl. of, 398
stems, of nouns, 230; of verbs, 184
subject, defined, 19. 2; of the infinitive, 213, 214
subjunctive, formation of the present, 344
of the imperfect, 354
of the perfect, 361, 362
of the pluperfect, 361–3
subjunctive constructions
characteristic or description, 389, 390
indirect questions, 430–432
purpose, 349, 366, 372
result, 385, 386
time, cause, or concession, with cum, 395, 396
subjunctive ideas, 346
subjunctive tenses, 342, 343
subordinate clauses, 219
suī, declension of, 281, 480
sum, conjugation of, 494
suus, use of, 98–c, 116
syllables, 8; division of, 9; quantity of, 13
syntax, rules of, 501
temporal clauses with cum, 395, 396
tense, defined, 120
tense signs
imperfect, 133
future, 137, 156
pluperfect active, 187.2
future perfect active, 187.3
tenses, primary and secondary, 356;
sequence of, 357, 358
third conjugation, 490, 492
third declension of nouns
classes, 231, 463
consonant stems, 232–238, 464
gender, 247
i-stems, 241–244, 465
irregular nouns, 246
time, abl. of, 275
time, acc. of, 336
towns, rules for names of, 266, 267, 268
transitive verb, 20. a
trés, declension of, 479
tū, declension of, 280, 480
tuus, compared with vester, 98. b
u-declension of nouns, 259, 260, 466
ultima, 9.3
verbs
agreement of, 28
conjugation of, 126, 488–491
derponent, 338, 339, 493
irregular, 494–500
personal endings of, 122, 164
principal parts of, 183
vester, compared with tuus, 98. b
vis, declension of, 468
vocabularies
English-Latin, pp. 332–343
Latin-English, pp. 299–331
special, pp. 283–298
vocative case, 56. a
of nouns in -us of the second declension, 73. b
of proper nouns in -ius and of filius, 88
voice, defined, 163
volo, conjugation of, 497
vōs, declension of, 280, 480
vowels, sounds of, 5, 6; quantity of, 12
Second Declension
(nouns ending in a, eu, or um)
--- | --- | --- | --- | ---
a | a | a | a | a
al | al | al | al | al
arum | is | as | as | as

Third Declension
(nouns ending in a, i, o, -ium)
--- | --- | --- | --- | ---
i | i | i | i | i
mis | mis | mis | mis | mis
libris | es | es | es | es
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DATE DUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SEP 01, 1986</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAR 8, 1986</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APR 14, 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APR 11, 2003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOV 03, 2010</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

DEMCO 38-297
The subjunctive is used as dependent clauses to express the purpose of the action in principal clauses.